GS2210 Series

Intelligent Layer 2 GbE Switch

Version 4.10
Edition 3, 05/2014

User's Guide

Default Login Details	
LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
User Name	admin
Password	1234

IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

This is a User's Guide for a series of products. Not all products support all firmware features. Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from your product due to differences in your product firmware or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

- CLI Reference Guide

  The CLI Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) to configure the Switch.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Switch.

Contents Overview

Table of Contents

PART I
User's Guide

1

Getting to Know Your Switch

1.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the Switch. The GS2210 Series consist of the four following models:

- GS2210-24
- GS2210-24HP
- GS2210-48
- GS2210-48HP

Referring to PoE model(s) in this User's Guide only applies for GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP.

The Switch is a layer-2 standalone Ethernet switch with additional layer-2, layer-3, and layer-4 features suitable for Ethernets.

With its built-in web configurator, including the ZyXEL One Network (ZON) Neighbor Management feature (Section 7.3 on page 53), viewing, managing and configuring the Switch and its neighboring devices is easy. The Switch can also be managed via Telnet, any terminal emulator program on the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

In addition, ZyXEL offers a proprietary software program called ZyXEL One Network (ZON) Utility, it is a utility tool that assists you to set up and maintain network devices in a more simple and efficient way. You can download the ZON Utility at www.zyxel.com and install it on a PC. For more information on ZON Utility see (Section 7.2 on page 52).

The following table describes the port features of the Switch by model.

Table 1 Models and Port Features

SWITCH MODEL	PORT FEATURES
GS2210-24 and GS2210-24HP	• 24 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet ports • 4 GbE dual personality interfaces
GS2210-48 and GS2210-48HP	• 44 100/1000 Mbps Ethernet ports • 4 GbE dual personality interfaces • 2 SFP interfaces

The GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP comes with a Power-over-Ethernet (PoE) feature. The GS2210-24HP and 48HP supports the IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet (PoE) standard and IEEE 802.3af PoE standard.

Key feature differences between Switch models are as follows. Other features are common to all models

The following table describes the PoE features of the Switch by model.

Table 2 Models and PoE Features

SWITCH MODEL	POE FEATURES
GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP	IEEE 802.3af PoE
GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP	IEEE 802.3 at High Power over Ethernet (PoE)
GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP	Power management mode - Classification
GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP	Power management mode - Consumption

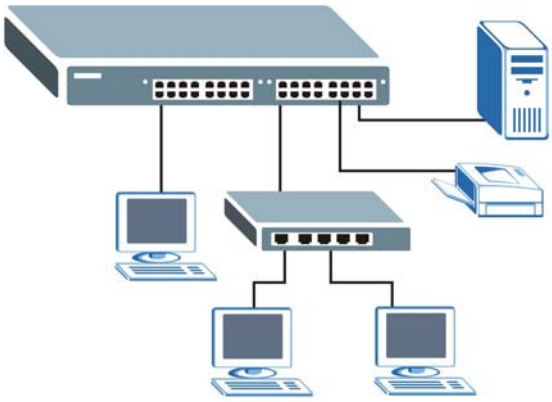
This section shows a few examples of using the Switch in various network environments.

1.1.1 Backbone Application

The Switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future. The Switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers and servers directly to the Switch's port or connect other switches to the Switch.

In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers etc.

Figure 1 Backbone Application

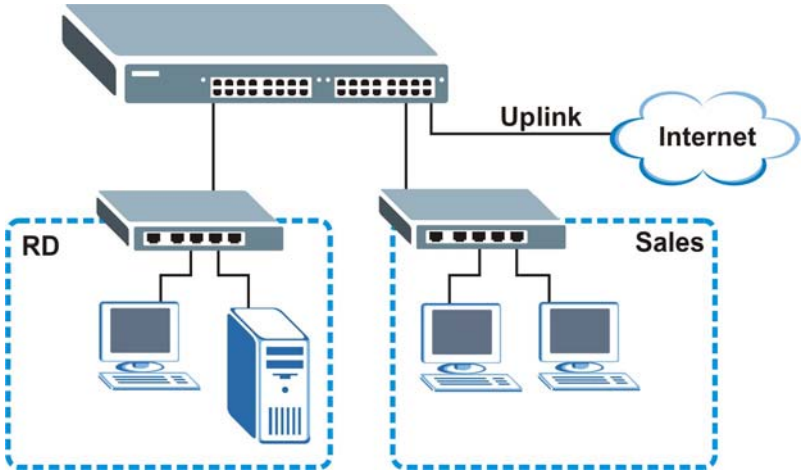


1.1.2 Bridging Example

In this example, the Switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the Switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by using a Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC port on the Switch.

Moreover, the Switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

Figure 2 Bridging Application

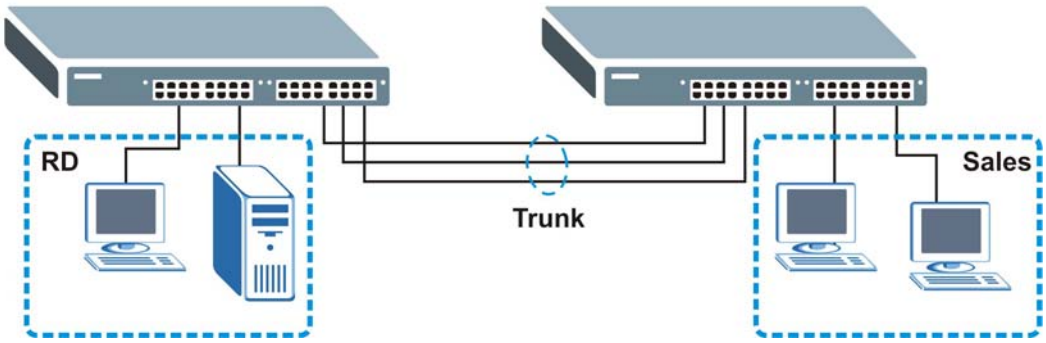


1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example

The Switch is ideal for connecting two networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two networks.

Switching to higher-speed LANs such as ATM (Asynchronous Transmission Mode) is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance. The Switch can provide the same bandwidth as ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

Figure 3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Application



1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

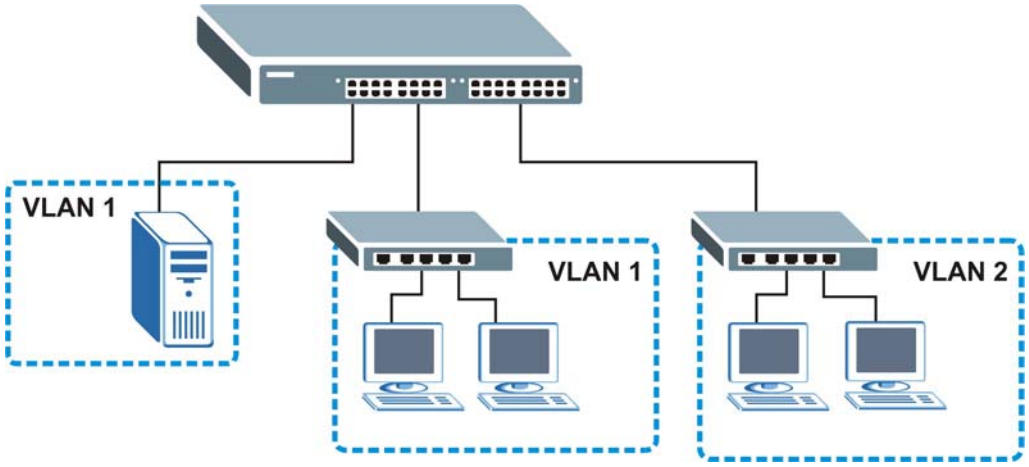
For more information on VLANs, refer to Chapter 9 on page 86.

1.1.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. In the following figure only ports that need access to the server need to be part of VLAN 1. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too.

Figure 4 Shared Server Using VLAN Example



1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch

Use any of the following methods to manage the Switch.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Switch using a (supported) web browser. See Chapter 4 on page 32.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands offer an alternative to the web configurator and in some cases are necessary to configure advanced features. See the CLI Reference Guide.
- FTP. Use FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore. See Section 37.7.1 on page 307.
- SNMP. The Switch can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See Section 37.5 on page 305.
- Cluster Management. Cluster Management allows you to manage multiple switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. See Chapter 40 on page 335.

1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch

Do the following things regularly to make the Switch more secure and to manage the Switch more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.

- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Switch to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Switch. You could simply restore your last configuration.

2

Hardware Installation and Connection

2.1 Installation Scenarios

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the Switch.

The Switch can be placed on a desktop or rack-mounted on a standard EIA rack. Use the rubber feet in a desktop installation and the brackets in a rack-mounted installation.

Note: For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the Switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure

1 Make sure the Switch is clean and dry.

2 Set the Switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the Switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.

3 Make sure there is enough clearance around the Switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.

2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

The Switch can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your Switch on a standard EIA rack using a rack-mounting kit.

2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

2.3.1.1 Precautions

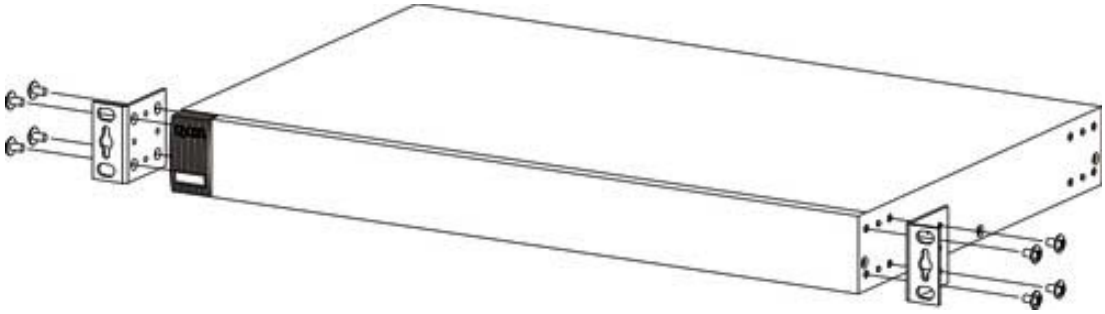
- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.

- Make sure the position of the Switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the Switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the Switch.

Figure 5 Attaching the Mounting Brackets



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the Switch.

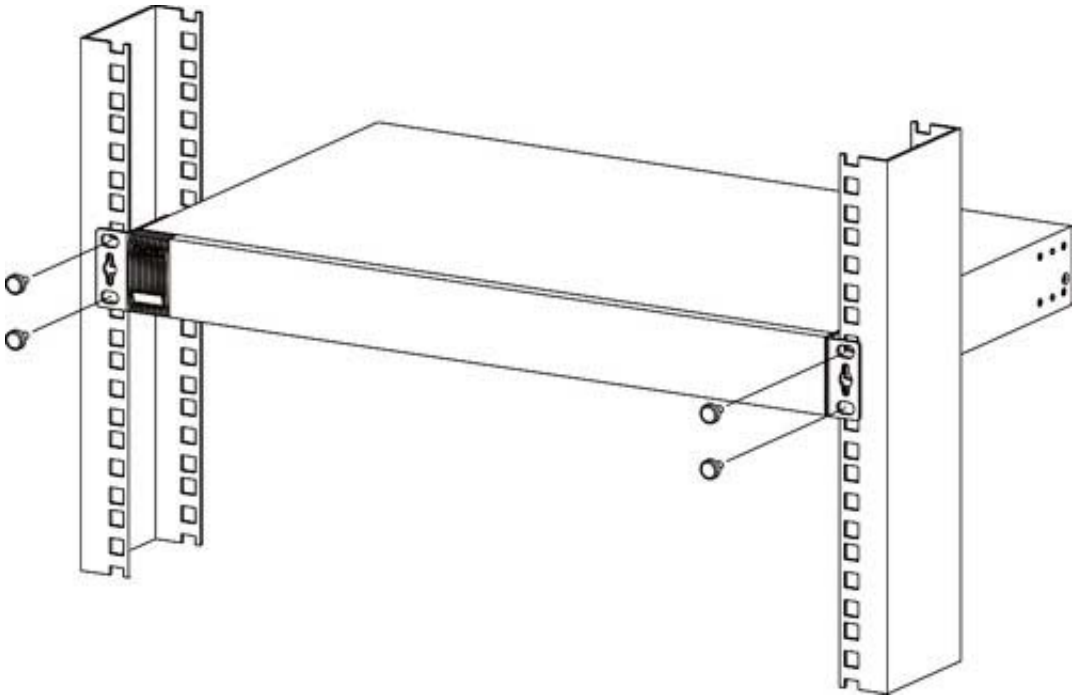
3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the Switch.

4 You may now mount the Switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the Switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

Figure 6 Mounting the Switch on a Rack



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

3

Hardware Panels

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the Switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

3.1 Front Panel

The following figures show the front panels of the Switch.

Figure 7 Front Panel: GS2210-24

Figure 8 Front Panel: GS2210-24HP

Figure 9 Front Panel: GS2210-48

Figure 10 Front Panel: GS2210-48HP

3.1.1 Gigabit Ethernet Ports

The Switch has 1000Base-T auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports. In 10/100/1000 Mbps Gigabit, the speed can be 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex.

An auto-negotiating port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (10/100/1000 Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

Four 1000Base-T Ethernet ports are paired with a mini-GBIC slot to create a dual personality interface. The Switch uses up to one connection for each mini-GBIC and 1000Base-T Ethernet pair. The mini-GBIC slots have priority over the Gigabit ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC slot and the corresponding GbE port are connected at the same time, the GbE port will be disabled.

Note: The dual personality ports change to fiber mode directly when inserting the fiber module.

When auto-negotiation is turned on, an Ethernet port negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, an Ethernet port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.

3.1.1.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the Switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

3.1.1.2 Auto-crossover

All ports are auto-crossover, that is auto-MDIX ports (Media Dependent Interface Crossover), so you may use either a straight-through Ethernet cable or crossover Ethernet cable for all Gigabit port connections. Auto-crossover ports automatically sense whether they need to function as crossover or straight ports, so crossover cables can connect both computers and switches/hubs.

3.1.2 Mini-GBIC Slots

These are slots for mini-GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The Switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the Switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic or even copper cable connectors.

To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

3.1.2.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

1. Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
2. Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.

3 The Switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.

4 Close the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

5 Connect the fiber optic cables to the transceiver.

Figure 11 Transceiver Installation Example

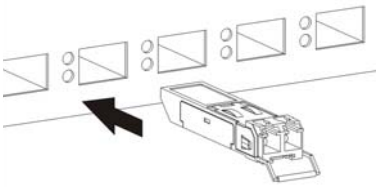
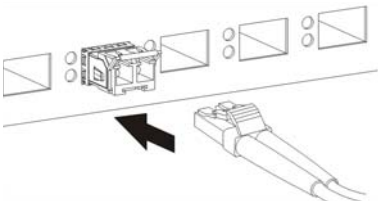


Figure 12 Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables



3.1.2.2 Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

1 Remove the fiber optic cables from the transceiver.

2 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

3 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

Figure 13 Removing the Fiber Optic Cables

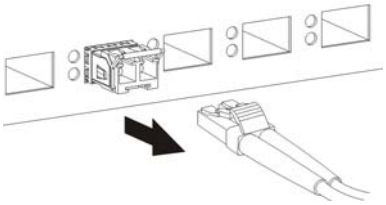


Figure 14 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example

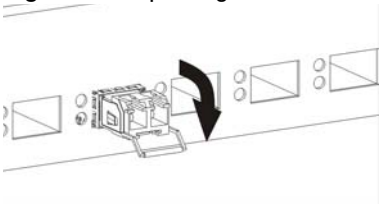
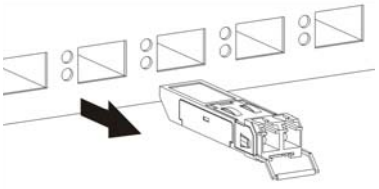


Figure 15 Transceiver Removal Example



3.1.3 LED Mode (only available for GS2210-48HP)

After you push this button (see Section Figure 10 on page 26) to active PoE on the Switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the Switch and as an aid in troubleshooting (see Section 3.3 on page 30).

3.2 Rear Panel

The following figures show the rear panels of the Switch.

Figure 16 Rear Panel: GS2210-24

Figure 17 Rear Panel: GS2210-24HP

Figure 18 Rear Panel: GS2210-48

Figure 19 Rear Panel: GS2210-48HP

3.2.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100
- Terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the Switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

3.2.2 Power Connector

Note: Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel.

To connect power to the Switch, insert the female end of the power cord to the AC power receptacle on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the supplied power cord to a power outlet. Make sure that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans (located on the side of the unit).

See Chapter 47 on page 355 for information on the Switch's power supply requirements.

3.3 LEDs

After you connect the power to the Switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the Switch and as an aid in troubleshooting.

Table 3 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PoE (GS2210 48HP only)	Green	On	Each Ethernet port's LED is changed to act as a PoE LED by using the **LED MODE** button on the front panel.
		Off	Each Ethernet port's LED is changed back to act as a LNK/ACT LED by releasing the **LED MODE** button on the front panel.
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off or has failed.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
LOCATOR	Blue	Blinking	Shows the actual location of the Switch between several devices in a rack.
Ethernet Ports			
1-24 (GS2210-24/24HP) and 1-48 (GS2210-48/48HP) LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
PoE (GS2210-24HP and GS2210-48HP only)	Green	On	Power supplied to all PoE Ethernet ports meets the IEEE 802.3at standard.
	Amber	On	Power supplied to all PoE Ethernet ports meets the IEEE 802.3af standard.
		Off	There is no power supplied.
Mini-GBIC Slots			
25-28 (GS1920-24/24HP) and 45-50 (GS1920-48/48HP) SFP	Green	On	The uplink port is linking at 1000 Mbps.
		Blinking	The system activity is transmitting/receiving data 1000 Mbps.
	Amber	On	The uplink port is linking at 100 Mbps.
		Blinking	The system activity is transmitting/receiving data 100 Mbps.
		Off	There is no link or port, the uplink port is shut down.

PART II
Technical Reference

4

The Web Configurator

4.1 Overview

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy Switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later, Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later, Mozilla Firefox 3.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

4.2 System Login

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type “http://” and the IP address of the Switch (for example, the default management IP address is 192.168.1.1) in the **Location** or **Address** field. Press [ENTER].
3. The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

Figure 20 Web Configurator: Login

4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

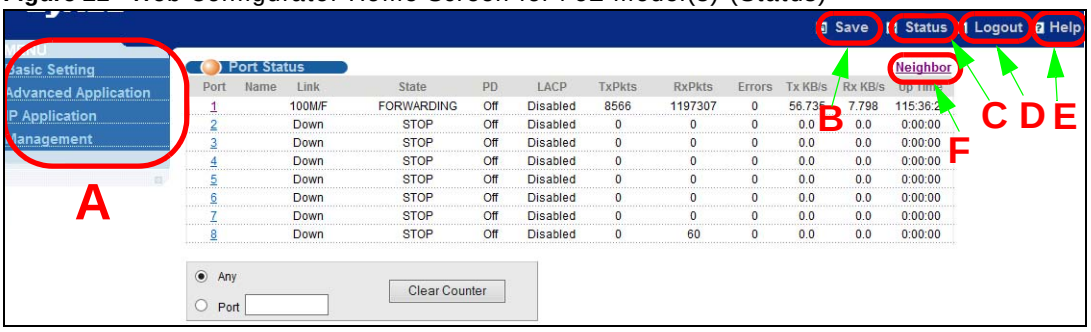
4.3 The Status Screen

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator.

This guide uses PoE model(s) screens as an example. The screens may very slightly for different models.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

Figure 21 Web Configurator Home Screen for PoE model(s) (Status)



A - Click the menu items to open submenu links, and then click on a submenu link to open the screen in the main window.

B, **C**, **D**, **E** - These are quick links which allow you to perform certain tasks no matter which screen you are currently working in.

B - Click this link to save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory is the configuration of your Switch that stays the same even if the Switch's power is turned off.

C - Click this link to go to the status page of the Switch.

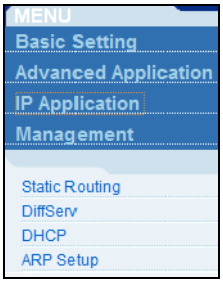
D - Click this link to logout of the web configurator.

E - Click this link to display web help pages. The help pages provide descriptions for all of the configuration screens.

F - Click this link to go to the ZON Neighbor Management screen where you can see and manage neighbor devices learned by the Switch.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

Table 4 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
			

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information about the Switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global Switch parameters such as VLAN type, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IP address, subnet mask (necessary for Switch management) and DNS (domain name server) and set up to 64 IP routing domains.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Port Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure settings for individual Switch ports.
PoE Setup	For PoE model(s) This link takes you to a screen where you can set priorities so that the Switch is able to reserve and allocate power to certain PDs.
Interface Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure settings for individual interface type and ID.
IPv6	This link takes you to a screen where you can view IPv6 status and configure IPv6 settings.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the Switch Setup menu). You can also configure a protocol based VLAN or a subnet based VLAN in these screens.
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Static Multicast Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static multicast MAC addresses for port(s). These static multicast MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the RSTP/MRSTP/MSTP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure bandwidth limits on the Switch.
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference.
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to screens where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure IEEE 802.1x port authentication for clients communicating via the Switch.
Port Security	This link takes you to screens where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.
Multicast	This link takes you to screens where you can configure various multicast features, IGMP snooping and create multicast VLANs.
AAA	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure authentication, authorization services via external servers. The external servers can be either RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) or TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus).
IP Source Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can configure filtering of unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Loop Guard	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure protection against network loops that occur on the edge of your network.
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure L2PT (Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling) settings on the Switch.

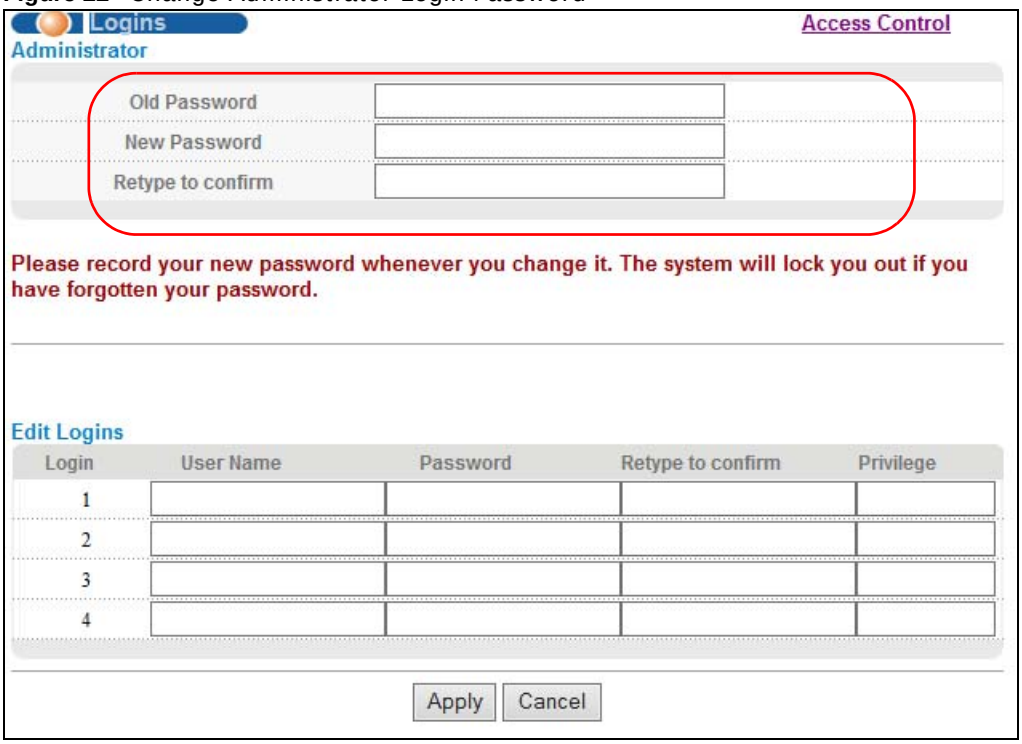
Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
PPPoE	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure intermediate agent settings in port, VLAN, and PPPoE.
Errdisable	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure errdisable settings in CPU protection, errdisable detect, and errdisable recovery.
Private VLAN	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure private VLANs.
Green Ethernet	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure green ethernet settings in EEE, auto power down, abd short reach for each port.
LLDP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure LLDP settings.
IP Application	
Static Routing	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the Switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, configure marking rules and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the DHCP settings.
ARP Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the ARP learning settings for each port.
Management	
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to a screen where you can view system logs and test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to screens where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses (and types) of devices attached to what ports and VLAN IDs.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses – IP address resolution table.
Path MTU Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the path MTU aging time, index, destination address, MTU, and expire settings.
Configure Clone	This link takes you to a screen where you can copy attributes of one port to other ports.
Neighbor Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the IPv6 neighbor table which includes index, interface, neighbor address, MAC address, status and type.

4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **Logins** to display the next screen.

Figure 22 Change Administrator Login Password



4.4 Saving Your Configuration

When you are done modifying the settings in a screen, click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Click the **Save** link in the upper right hand corner of the web configurator to save your configuration to nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory refers to the Switch's storage that remains even if the Switch's power is turned off.

Note: Use the **Save** link when you are done with a configuration session.

4.5 Switch Lockout

You could block yourself (and all others) from managing the Switch if you do one of the following:

1. Delete the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).
2. Delete all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The "CPU port" is the management port of the Switch.
3. Filter all traffic to the CPU port.
4. Disable all ports.

5 Misconfigure the text configuration file.

6 Forget the password and/or IP address.

7 Prevent all services from accessing the Switch.

8 Change a service port number but forget it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the Switch.

4.6 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the Switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600 bps with 8 data bits, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to "1234" and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

1 Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software.

2 Disconnect and reconnect the Switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the Switch's power, you will see the initial screen.

3 When you see the message "`Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds...`" press any key to enter debug mode.

4 Type `atlc` after the "`Enter Debug Mode`" message.

5 Wait for the "`Starting XMODEM upload`" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.

6 After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the Switch.

The Switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of "1234".

4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

Figure 23 Web Configurator: Logout Screen

4.8 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

5

Initial Setup Example

5.1 Overview

This chapter shows how to set up the Switch for an example network.

The following lists the configuration steps for the initial setup:

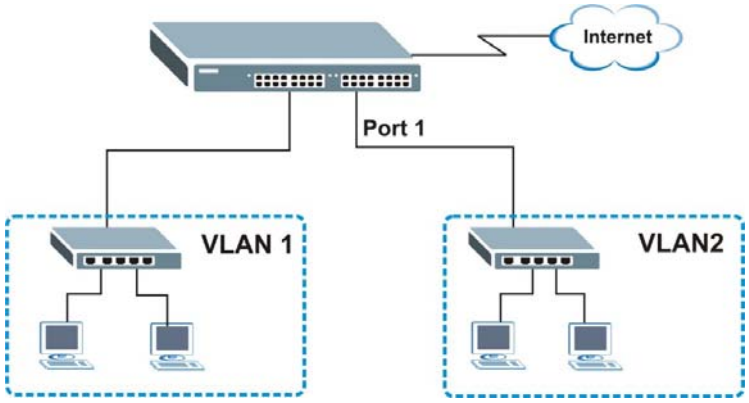
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Configure the Switch IP management address

5.1.1 Creating a VLAN

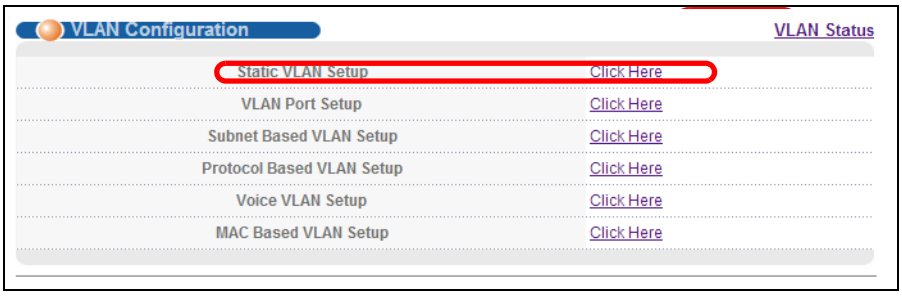
VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 1 as a member of VLAN 2.

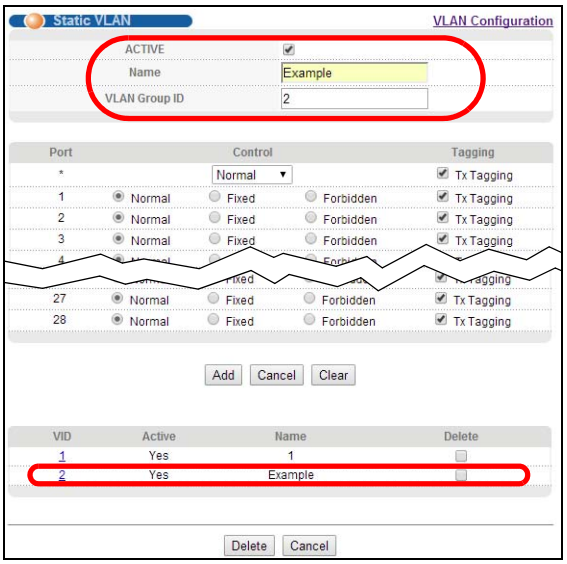
Figure 24 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



1 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN Setup** link.



2 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **VLAN2** network.



Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

3 Since the **VLAN2** network is connected to port 1 on the Switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 1 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.

4 To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

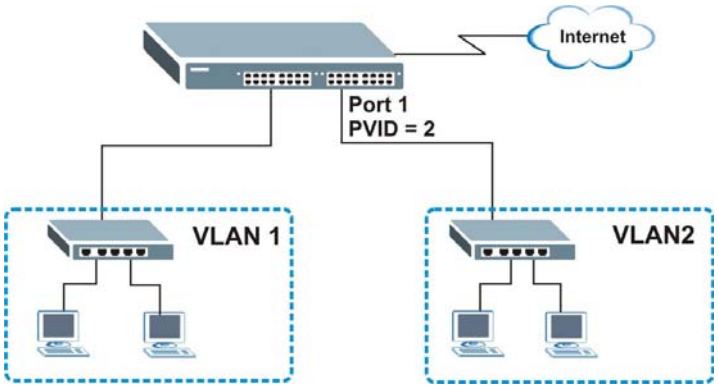
5 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

5.1.2 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

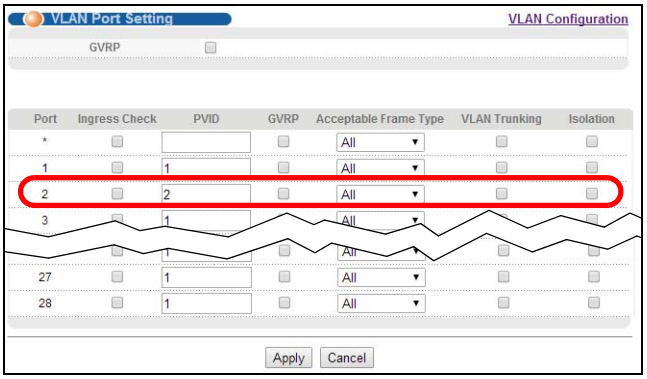
In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 1 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

Figure 25 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID



1 Click **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setup** link.

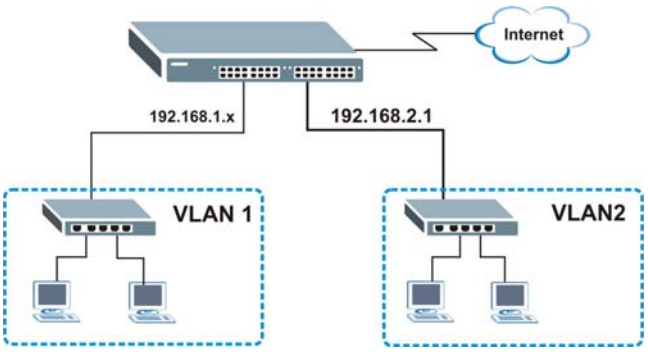
2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 2 and click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address

The default management IP address of the Switch is 192.168.1.1. You can configure another IP address in a different subnet for management purposes. The following figure shows an example.

Figure 26 Initial Setup Example: Management IP Address



1 Connect your computer to any Ethernet port on the Switch. Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch.

2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.1.1 (the default IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See Section 4.2 on page 32 for more information.

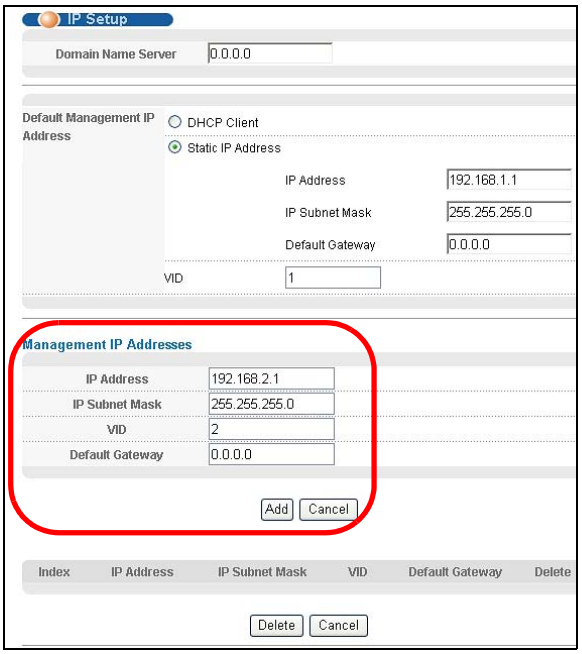
3 Click **Basic Setting** > **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.

4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.

5 For the **VLAN2** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.

6 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this management IP address to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.

7 Click **Add** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



6

Tutorials

6.1 Overview

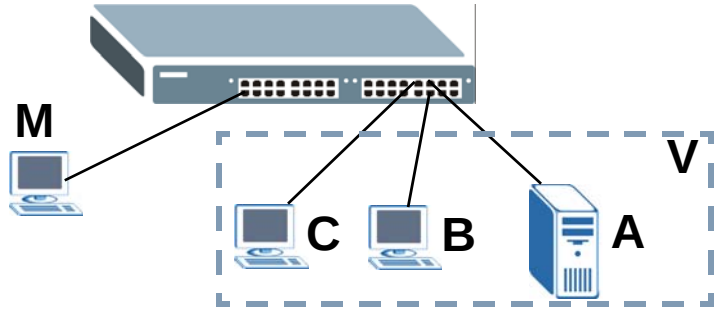
This chapter provides some examples of using the web configurator to set up and use the Switch. The tutorials include:

- How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch
- How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

6.2 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch

You only want DHCP server **A** connected to port 5 to assign IP addresses to all devices in VLAN network (**V**). Create a VLAN containing ports 5, 6 and 7. Connect a computer **M** to the Switch for management.

Figure 27 Tutorial: DHCP Snooping Tutorial Overview



Note: For related information about DHCP snooping, seeSection 25.1 on page 203.

The settings in this tutorial are as the following.

Table 6 Tutorial: Settings in this Tutorial

HOST	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	PVID	DHCP SNOOPING PORT TRUSTED
DHCP Server (**A**)	5	1 and 100	100	Yes
DHCP Client (**B**)	6	1 and 100	100	No
DHCP Client (**C**)	7	1 and 100	100	No

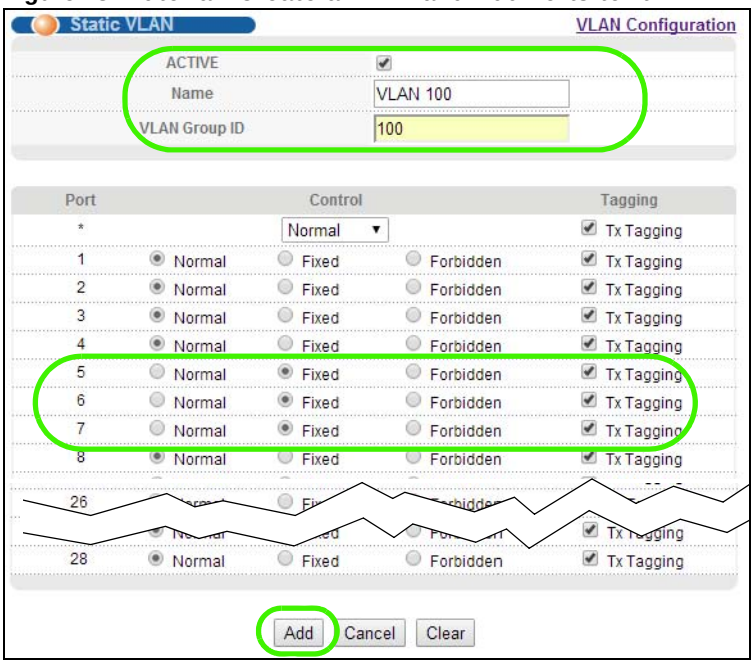
1 Access the Switch through **http://192.168.1.1** by default. Log into the Switch by entering the username (default: **admin**) and password (default: **1234**).

2 Go to **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** > **Static VLAN Setup**, and create a VLAN with ID of 100. Add ports 5, 6 and 7 in the VLAN by selecting **Fixed** in the **Control** field as shown.

Deselect **Tx Tagging** because you don't want outgoing traffic to contain this VLAN tag.

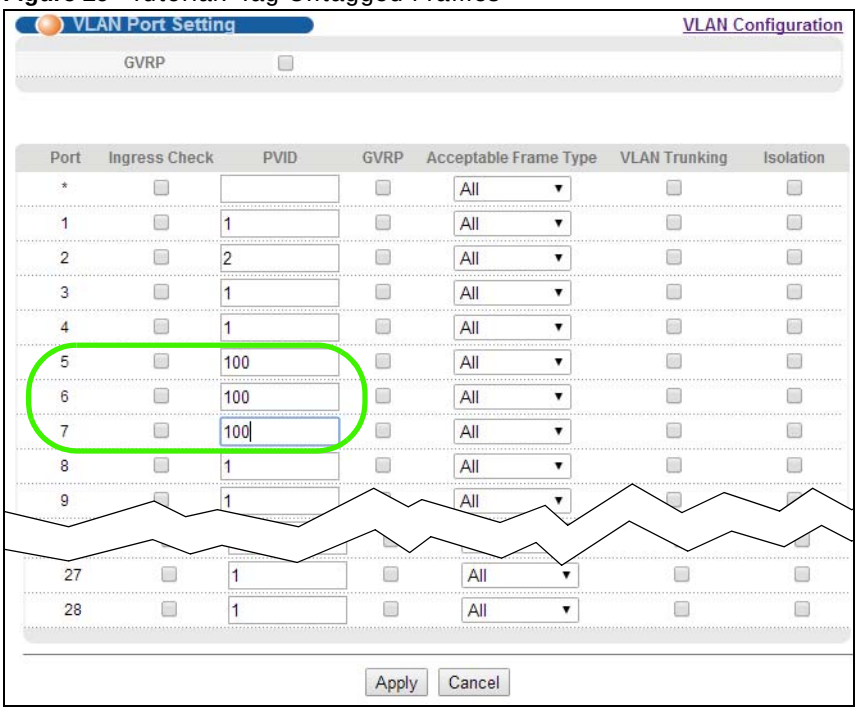
Click **Add**.

Figure 28 Tutorial: Create a VLAN and Add Ports to It



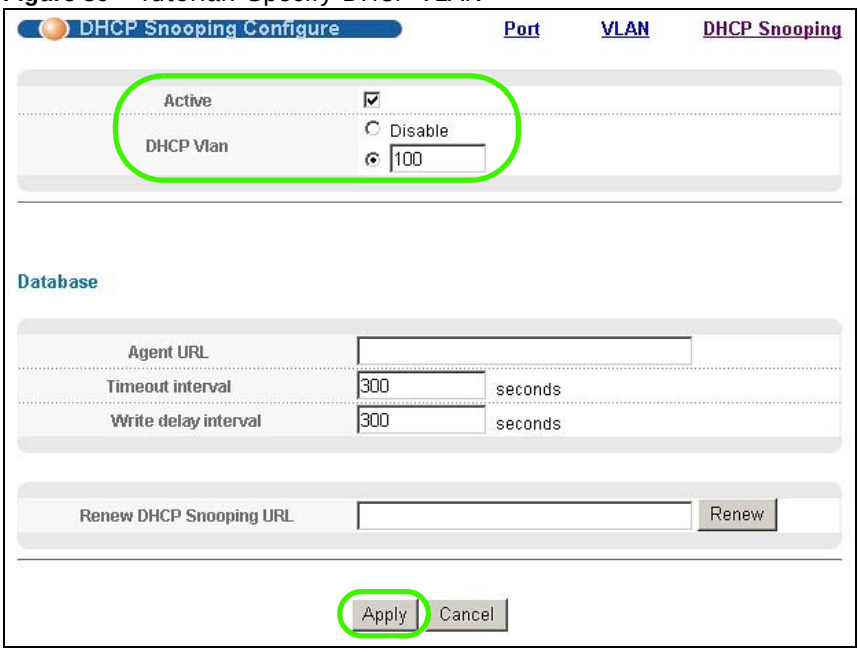
3 Go to **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** > **VLAN Port Setup**, and set the PVID of the ports 5, 6 and 7 to 100. This tags untagged incoming frames on ports 5, 6 and 7 with the tag 100.

Figure 29 Tutorial: Tag Untagged Frames



4 Go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard** > **DHCP snooping** > **Configure**, activate and specify VLAN 100 as the DHCP VLAN as shown. Click **Apply**.

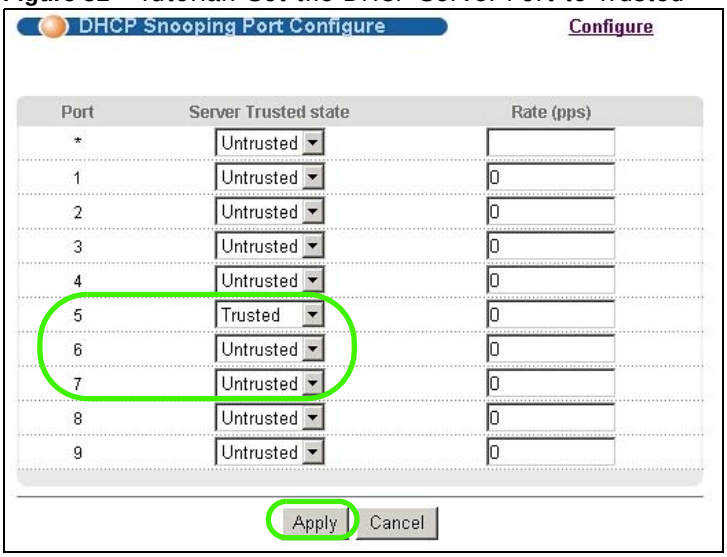
Figure 30 Tutorial: Specify DHCP VLAN



5 Click the **Port** link at the top right corner.

6 The **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen appears. Select **Trusted** in the **Server Trusted state** field for port 5 because the DHCP server is connected to port 5. Keep ports 6 and 7 **Untrusted** because they are connected to DHCP clients. Click **Apply**.

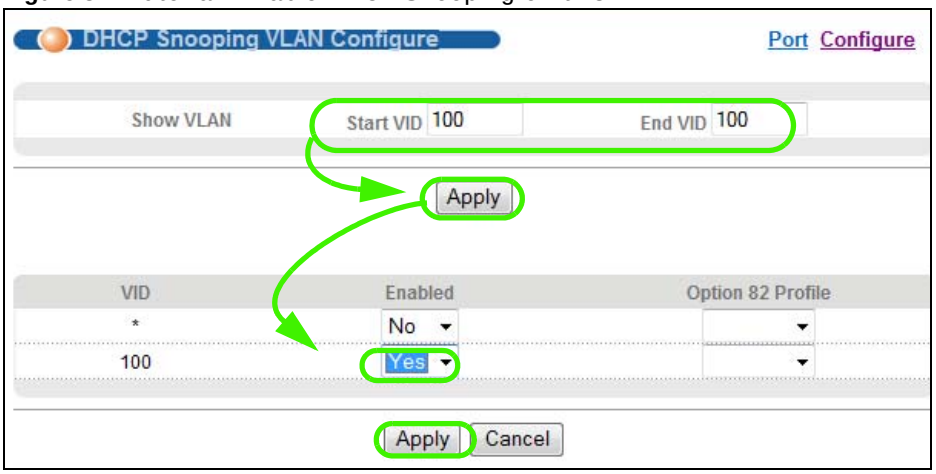
Figure 31 Tutorial: Set the DHCP Server Port to Trusted



7 Go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard** > **DHCP snooping** > **Configure** > **VLAN**, show VLAN 100 by entering 100 in the **Start VID** and **End VID** fields and click **Apply**. Then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field of the VLAN 100 entry shown at the bottom section of the screen.

If you want to add more information in the DHCP request packets such as source VLAN ID or system name, you can also select the **Option82 Profile** field in the entry. SeeSection 25.10.1.3 on page 223.

Figure 32 Tutorial: Enable DHCP Snooping on this VLAN

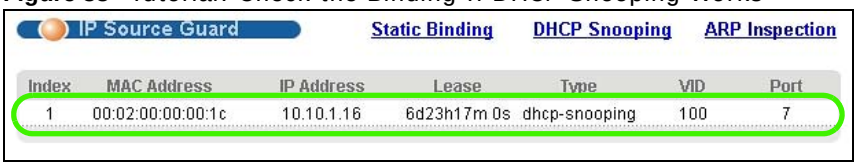


8 Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently.

9 Connect your DHCP server to port 5 and a computer (as DHCP client) to either port 6 or 7. The computer should be able to get an IP address from the DHCP server. If you put the DHCP server on port 6 or 7, the computer will not able to get an IP address.

10 To check if DHCP snooping works, go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard**, you should see an IP assignment with the type **DHCP-Snooping** as shown.

Figure 33 Tutorial: Check the Binding If DHCP Snooping Works



You can also telnet or log into the Switch's console. Use the command "show dhcp snooping binding" to see the DHCP snooping binding table as shown next.

```
sysname# show dhcp snooping binding
         MacAddress        IpAddress         Lease           Type  VLAN   Port
  ----------------  ---------------  ------------  -------------  ----  -----
  00:02:00:00:00:1c       10.10.1.16   6d23h59m20s  dhcp-snooping   100      7
  Total number of bindings: 1
```

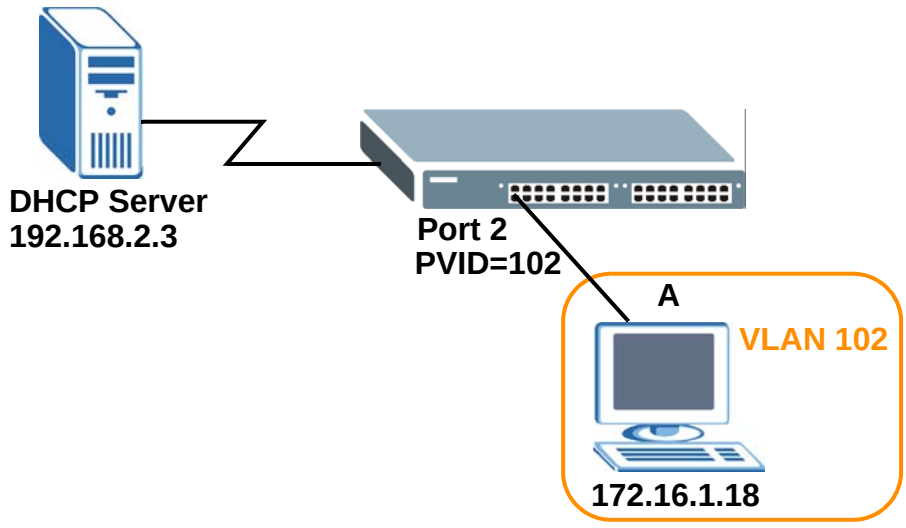
6.3 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

This tutorial describes how to configure your Switch to forward DHCP client requests to a specific DHCP server. The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the information in the DHCP requests.

6.3.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction

In this example, you have configured your DHCP server (192.168.2.3) and want to have it assign a specific IP address (say 172.16.1.18) to DHCP client **A** based on the system name, VLAN ID and port number in the DHCP request. Client **A** connects to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.

Figure 34 Tutorial: DHCP Relay Scenario



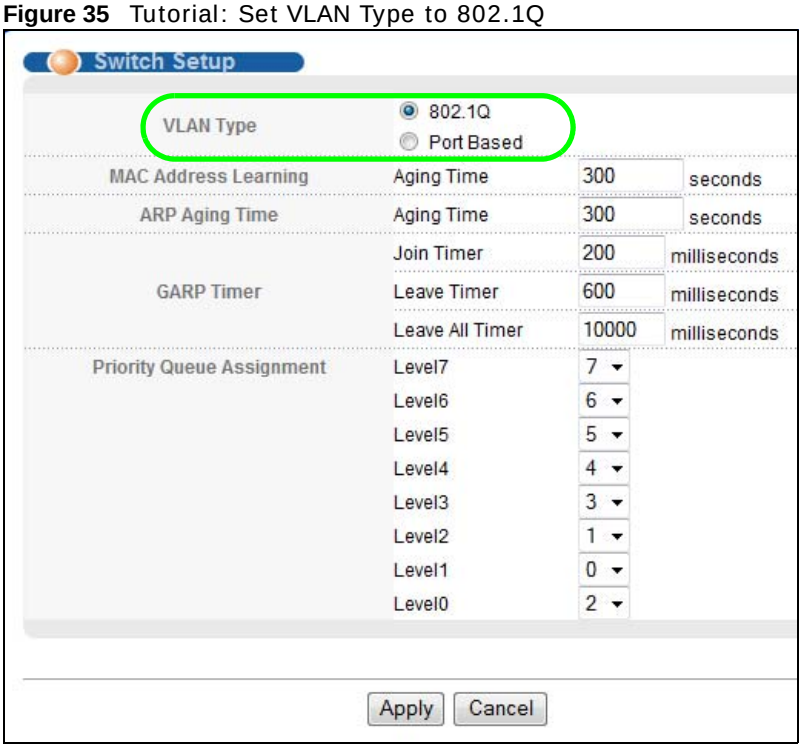
6.3.2 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2 as a member of VLAN 102.

1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's management port.

2 Go to **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

Figure 35 Tutorial: Set VLAN Type to 802.1Q



3 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** > **Static VLAN Setup**.

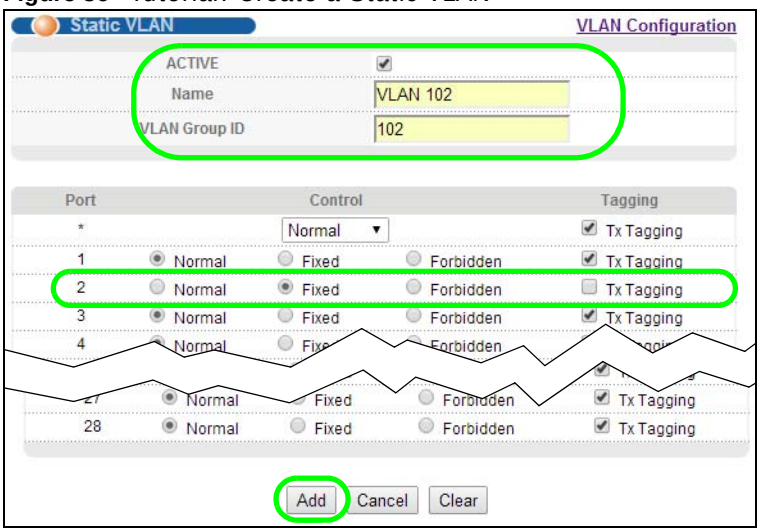
4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 102 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 102 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.

5 Select **Fixed** to configure port 2 to be a permanent member of this VLAN.

6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

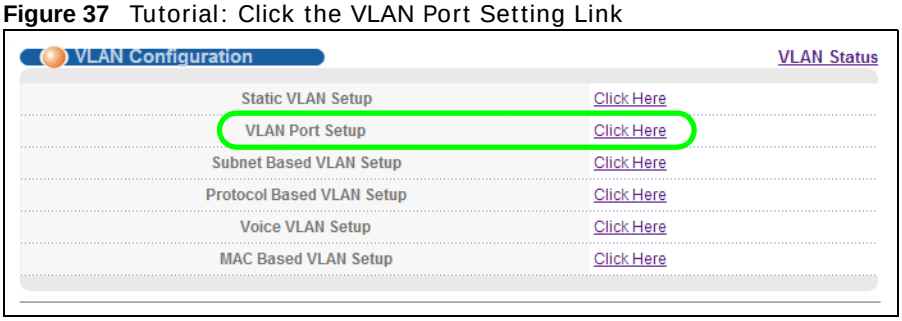
7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Figure 36 Tutorial: Create a Static VLAN



8 Click the **VLAN Configuration** link in the **Static VLAN Setup** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setup** link in the **VLAN Configuration** screen.

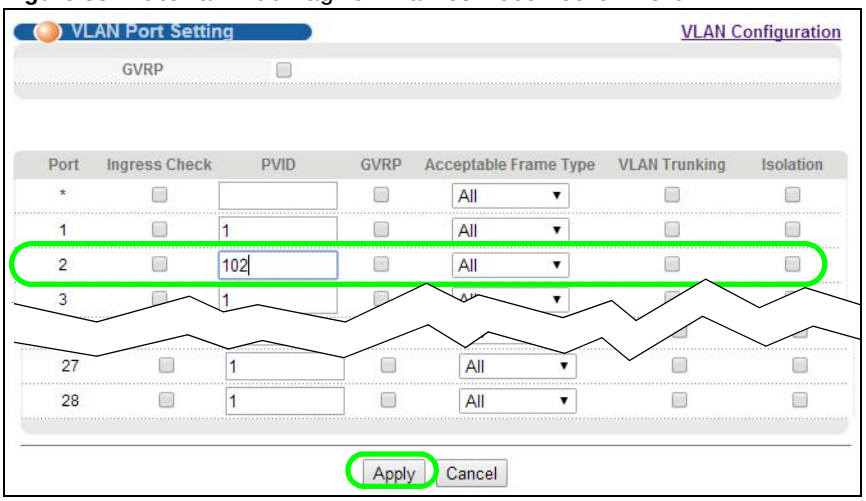
Figure 37 Tutorial: Click the VLAN Port Setting Link



9 Enter 102 in the **PVID** field for port 2 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Figure 38 Tutorial: Add Tag for Frames Received on Port 2



11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

6.3.3 Configuring DHCP Relay

Follow the steps below to enable DHCP relay on the Switch and allow the Switch to add relay agent information (such as the VLAN ID) to DHCP requests.

1 Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** and then the **Global** link to open the **DHCP Relay** screen.

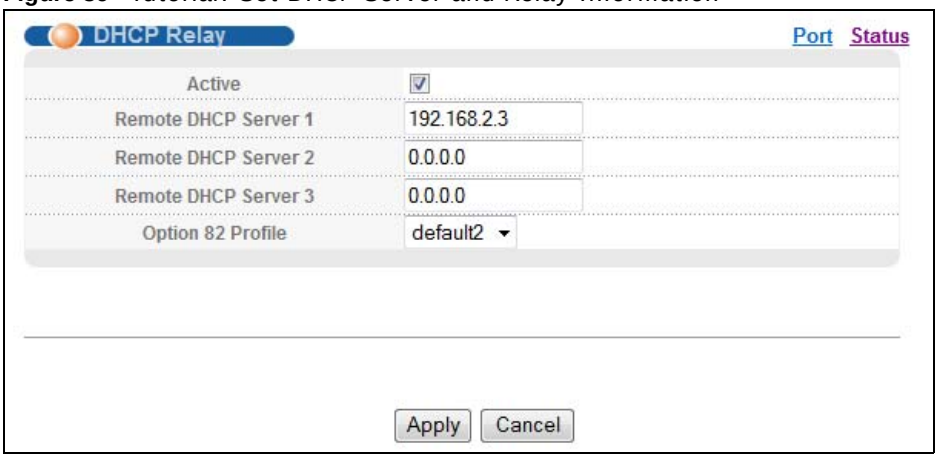
2 Select the **Active** check box.

3 Enter the DHCP server's IP address (192.168.2.3 in this example) in the **Remote DHCP Server 1** field.

4 Select **default1** or **default2** in the **Option 82 Profile** field.

5 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Figure 39 Tutorial: Set DHCP Server and Relay Information



6 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

7 The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the DHCP request.

6.3.4 Troubleshooting

Check the client **A**'s IP address. If it did not receive the IP address 172.16.1.18, make sure:

1 Client **A** is connected to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.

2 You configured the correct VLAN ID, port number and system name for DHCP relay on both the DHCP server and the Switch.

3 You clicked the **Save** link on the Switch to have your settings take effect.

7

ZON Utility, ZON Neighbor Management and Port Status

7.1 Overview

This chapter describes the screens for ZON Utility, ZON Neighbor Management, Port Status, Port Details, and PoE status.

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

7.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **ZON Utility** screen (Section 7.2 on page 52) to deploy and manage network devices.
- Use **Neighbor** screen (Section 7.3 on page 53) to view and manage Switch's neighbor devices.
- Use the **Port Status Summary** screen (Section 7.4 on page 55) to view the port statistics.
- Use the **Port Details** screen (Section 7.4.1 on page 56) to display individual port statistics.

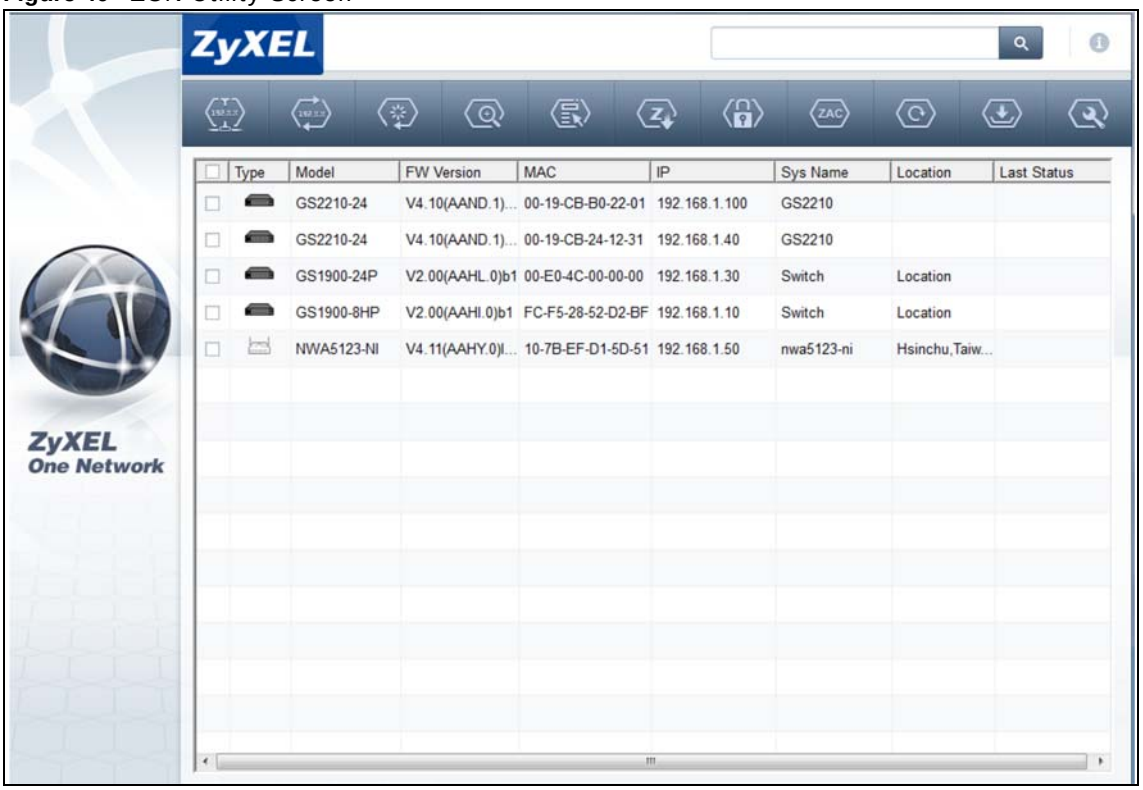
7.2 ZyXEL One Network (ZON) Utility Screen

ZON Utility is a program designed to help you deploy and manage a network more efficiently. It detects devices automatically and allows you to do basic settings on devices in the network without having to be near it.

The ZON Utility issues requests via ZyXEL Discovery Protocol (ZDP) and in response to the query, the device responds back with basic information including IP address, firmware version, location, system and model name in the same broadcast domain. The information is then displayed in the ZON Utility screen and you can perform tasks like basic configuration of the devices and batch firmware upgrade in it. You can download the ZON Utility at www.zyxel.com and install it on a PC.

The following figure shows the ZON Utility screen.

Figure 40 ZON Utility Screen

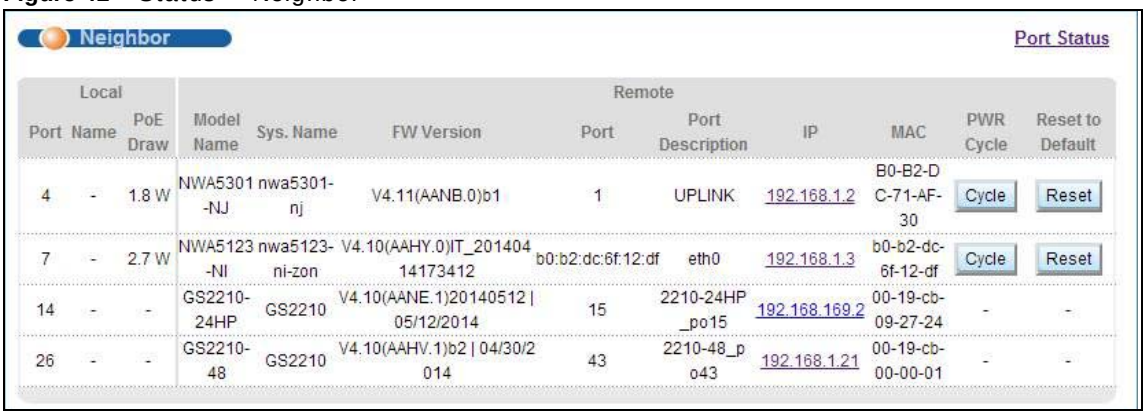


7.3 ZON Neighbor Management Screen

The ZON Neighbor Management screen allows you to view and manage the Switch's neighboring devices more conveniently. It uses Layer Link Discovery Protocol (LLDP) to discover all neighbor devices connected to the Switch including non-ZyXEL devices. You can perform tasks on the neighboring devices like login, reboot (turn the power off and then back on again), and reset to factory default settings in the Neighbor Management screen. For more information on LLDP, see (Section 32.2 on page 252).

Click **Status** > **Neighbor** to see the following screen

Figure 41 Status > Neighbor



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 7 Status > Neighbor

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Local	
Port	This shows the port number of the local device in the network.
Name	This shows the name of the local device in the network.
PoE Draw	This shows the consumption that the local device in the network draws from the Switch. This allows you to plan and use within the power budget of the Switch.
Remote	
Model Name	This shows the model name of the neighbor device in the remote network. This field will show "**-**" for non-ZyXEL devices.
Sys. Name	This shows the system name of the neighbor device in the remote network.
FW Version	This shows the firmware version of the neighbor device in the remote network. This field will show "**-**" for non-ZyXEL devices.
Port	This show the port number of the neighbor device in the remote network.
Port Description	This shows the port description of the neighbor device in the remote network.
IP	This shows the IP address of the neighbor device in the remote network. The IP address is a **hyper link** that you can click and login the remote device. This field will show "**-**" for non-ZyXEL devices.
MAC	This shows the MAC address of the neighbor device in the remote network. This field will show "**-**" for non-ZyXEL devices.

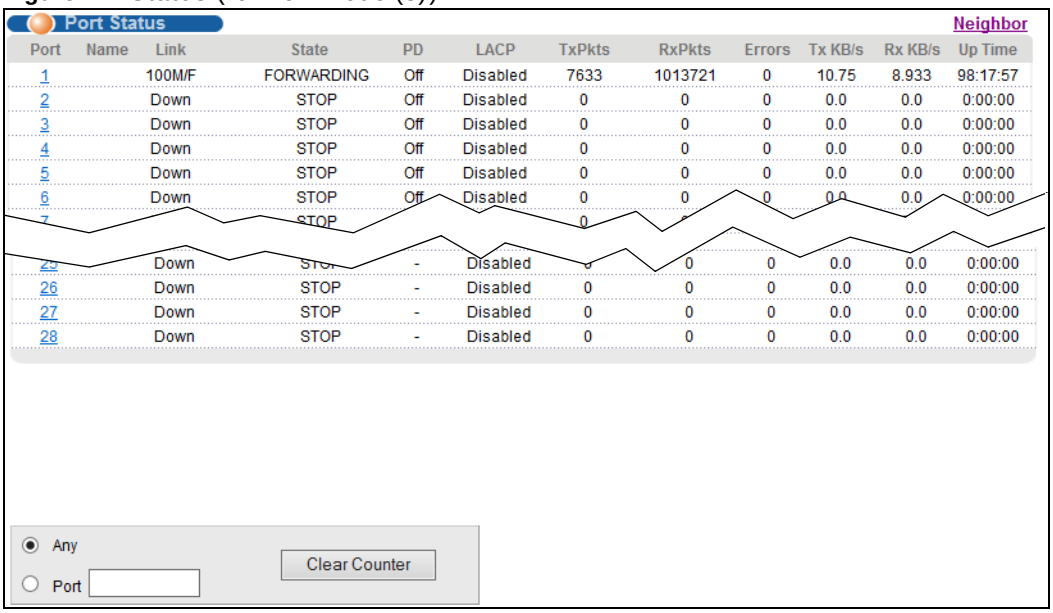
Table 7 Status > Neighbor

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PWR Cycle	Click the **Cycle** button to turn OFF the power of the neighbor device in the remote network and turn it back ON again. A count down button (from 5 to 0) starts. Note: • The Switch must support power sourcing (PSE) or the network device is a powered device (PD). • If multiple neighbor devices use the same port, the **Cycle** button is displayed only on the first device, others will show "**-**" instead.
Reset to Default	Click the **Reset** button to reset the neighbor device in the remote network to its factory default settings. A warning message "**Are you sure you want to load factory default?**" appears prompting you to confirm the action. After confirming the action a count down button (from 5 to 0) starts. Note: • The Switch must support power sourcing (PSE) or the network device is a powered device (PD). • If multiple neighbor devices use the same port, the **Reset** button is not available and will show "**-**" instead. • You can only reset ZyXEL products.

7.4 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 42 Status (for PoE model(s))



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

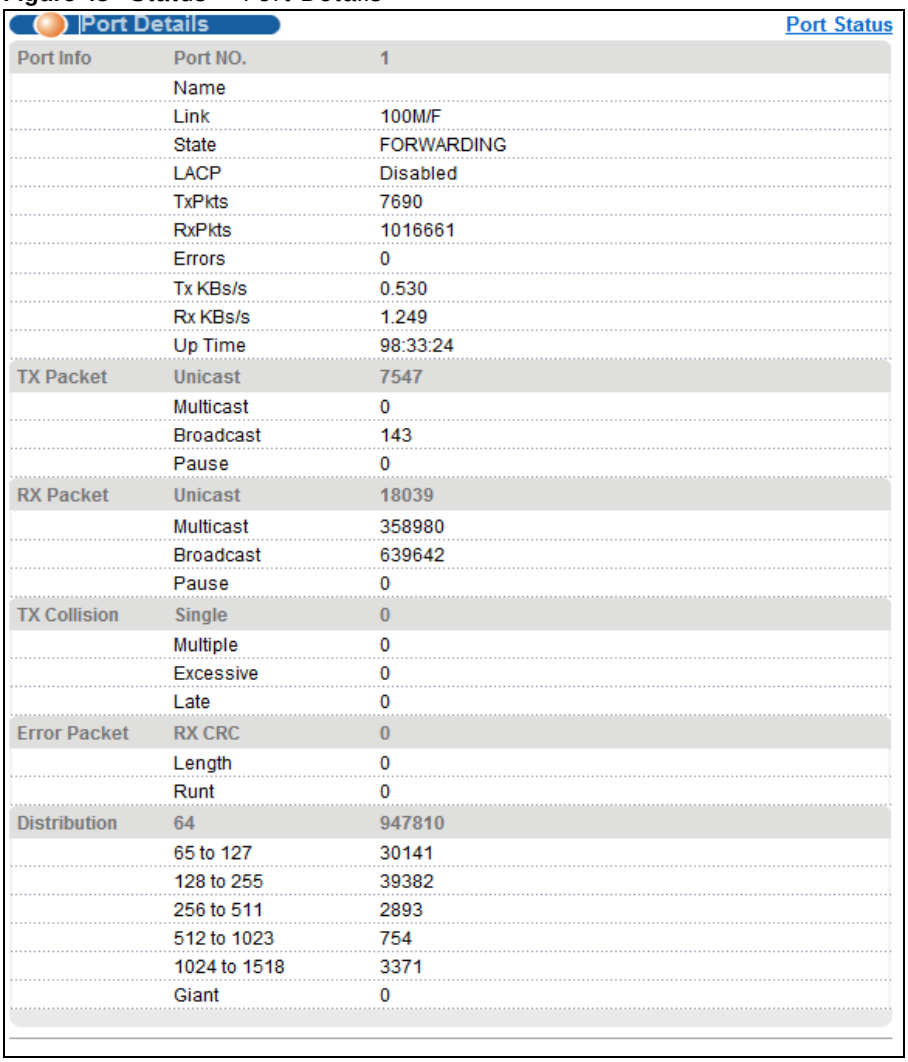
Table 8 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the **Port Details** screen (refer to Figure 43 on page 57).
Name	This is the name you assigned to this port in the **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** screen.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10Mbps, **100M** for 100Mbps or **1000M** for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**) for the combo ports.
State	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port. See (Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information) If STP is disabled, this field displays **FORWARDING** if the link is up, otherwise, it displays **STOP**.
PD	For PoE model(s) only This field displays whether or not a powered device (PD) is allowed to receive power from the Switch on this port.
LACP	This fields displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Clear Counter	Enter a port number and then click **Clear Counter** to erase the recorded statistical information for that port, or select **Any** to clear statistics for all ports.

7.4.1 Status: Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the Switch.

Figure 43 Status > Port Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field displays the port number you are viewing.
Name	This field displays the name of the port.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10Mbps, **100M** for 100Mbps or **1000M** for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**).
Status	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port. See (Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays **FORWARDING** if the link is up, otherwise, it displays **STOP**.
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port

Table 9 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Rx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
TX Collision The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	The following fields display detailed information about packets received that were in error.
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.

Table 9 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1519 octets and the maximum frame size. The maximum frame size varies depending on your switch model.

8

Basic Setting

8.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info, General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup**, **Port Setup**, **PoE, Interface Setup** and **IPv6** screens.

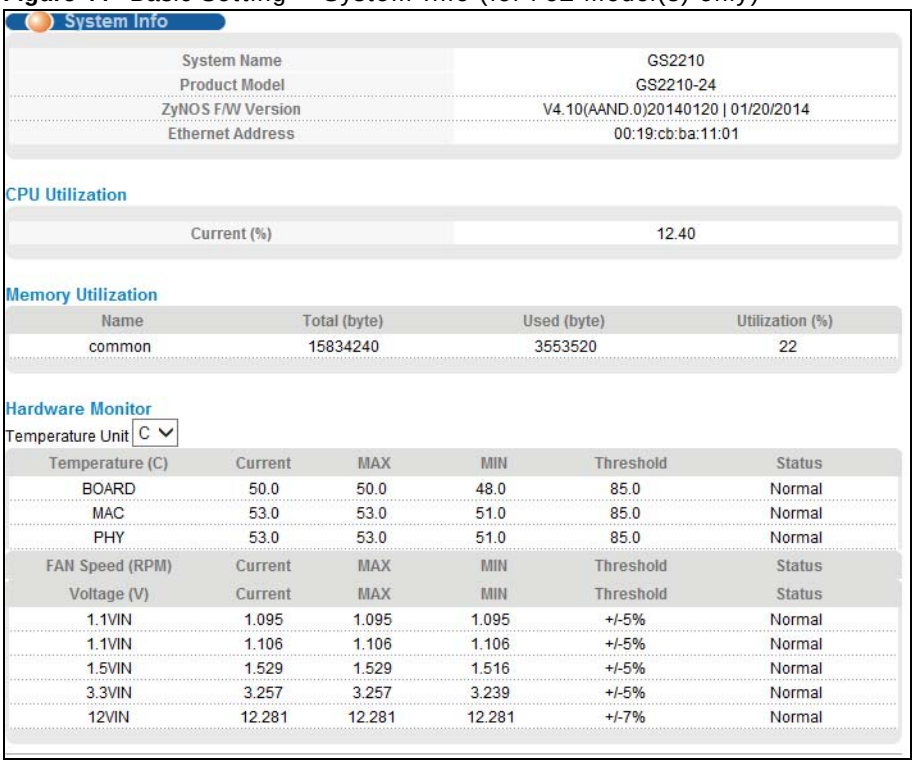
8.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **System Info** screen (Section 8.8 on page 70) to check the firmware version number.
- Use the **General Setup** screen (Section 8.3 on page 62) to configure general settings such as the system name and time.
- Use the **Switch Setup** screen (Section 8.5 on page 64) to choose your VLAN type, set the GARP timers and assign priorities to queues.
- Use the **IP Setup** screen (Section 8.6.1 on page 66) to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID.
- Use the **Port Setup** screen (Section 8.7 on page 68) to configure Switch port settings.
- Use the **PoE Status** screens (Section 8.8.1 on page 72) to view the current amount of power that PDs are receiving from the Switch and set the priority levels for the Switch in distributing power to PDs. This screen is available for PoE model(s) only.
- Use the **Interface Setup** screens (Section 8.8 on page 70) to configure Switch interface type and interface ID settings.
- Use the **IPv6** screens (Section 8.8 on page 70) to view IPv6 status and IPv6 configuration.

8.2 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** > **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number.

Figure 44 Basic Setting > System Info (for PoE model(s) only)



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the Switch for identification purposes.
Product Model	This field displays the product model of the Switch. Use this information when searching for firmware upgrade or looking for other support information in the website.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the Switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
CPU Utilization	CPU utilization quantifies how busy the system is. **Current (%)** displays the current percentage of CPU utilization.
Memory Utilization	Memory Utilization shows how much DRAM memory is available and in use. It also displays the current percentage of memory utilization.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The Switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature	**BOARD**, **MAC** and **PHY** refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the Switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays **Normal** for temperatures below the threshold and **Error** for those above.

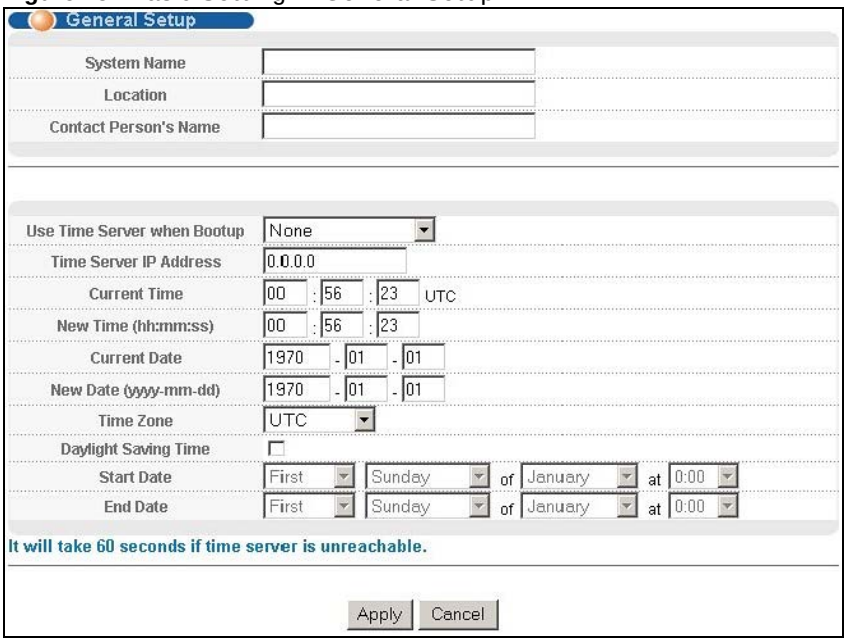
Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Fan Speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure (under 2000 RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	**Normal** indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. **Error** indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage(V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the Switch still works.
Status	**Normal** indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise **Error** is displayed.

8.3 General Setup

Use this screen to configure general settings such as the system name and time. Click **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 45 Basic Setting > General Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location of your Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name of the person in charge of this Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Use Time Server when Bootup	Enter the time service protocol that your timeserver uses. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format. When you select the **Daytime (RFC 867)** format, the Switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone. **Time (RFC-868)** format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. **NTP (RFC-1305)** is similar to **Time (RFC-868)**. **None** is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the Switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0:0.
Time Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your timeserver. The Switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the **Current Time** field after you click **Apply**.
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the **Current Date** field after you click **Apply**.
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Daylight Saving Time	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening. Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **Second**, **Sunday**, **March** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **March** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **First**, **Sunday**, **November** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **October** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.4 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

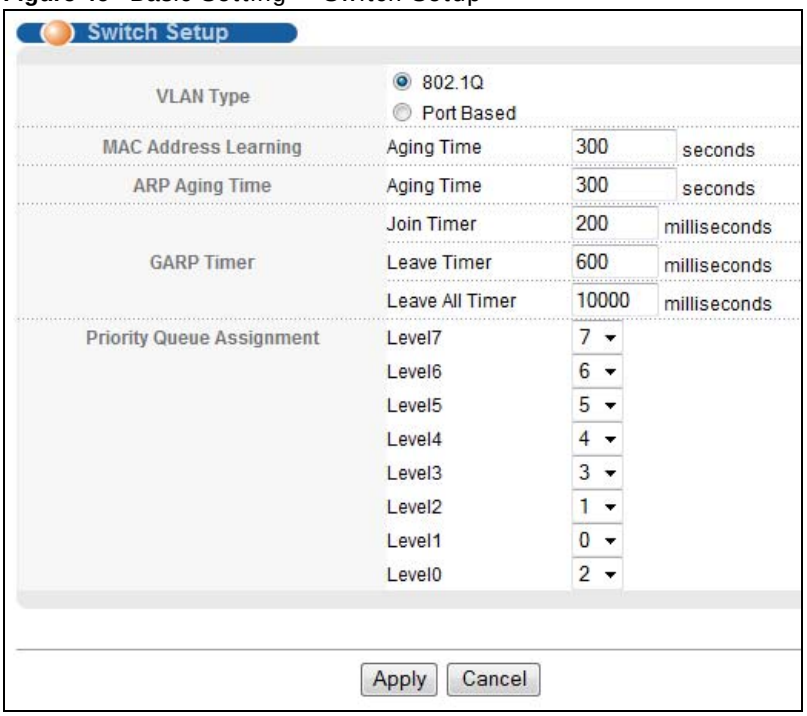
Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See Chapter 9 on page 86 for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

8.5 Switch Setup Screen

Click **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to Chapter 9 on page 86 for more information on VLAN.

Figure 46 Basic Setting > Switch Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based**. The **VLAN Setup** screen changes depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** VLAN type or **Port Based** VLAN type in this screen. See Chapter 9 on page 86 for more information.
MAC Address Learning: MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic.	
Aging Time	Set the duration of time interval (from 30 to 65536) in seconds; the default is 300 seconds.
ARP Aging Time	
Aging Time	Set the duration of time interval (from 30 to 65536) in seconds; the default is 300 seconds.
GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a **Join** message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a **Leave** message. A **Leave All** message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.	
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a **Join Period** timer. The allowed **Join Time** range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the **Leave Period** timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single **Leave Period** timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than **Join Timer**; the default is 600 milliseconds.
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Priority Queue Assignment IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping. The Switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the Switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.	
Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for “excellent effort” or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for “spare bandwidth”.
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical “background” traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

8.6 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID. The default gateway specifies the IP address of the default gateway (next hop) for outgoing traffic.

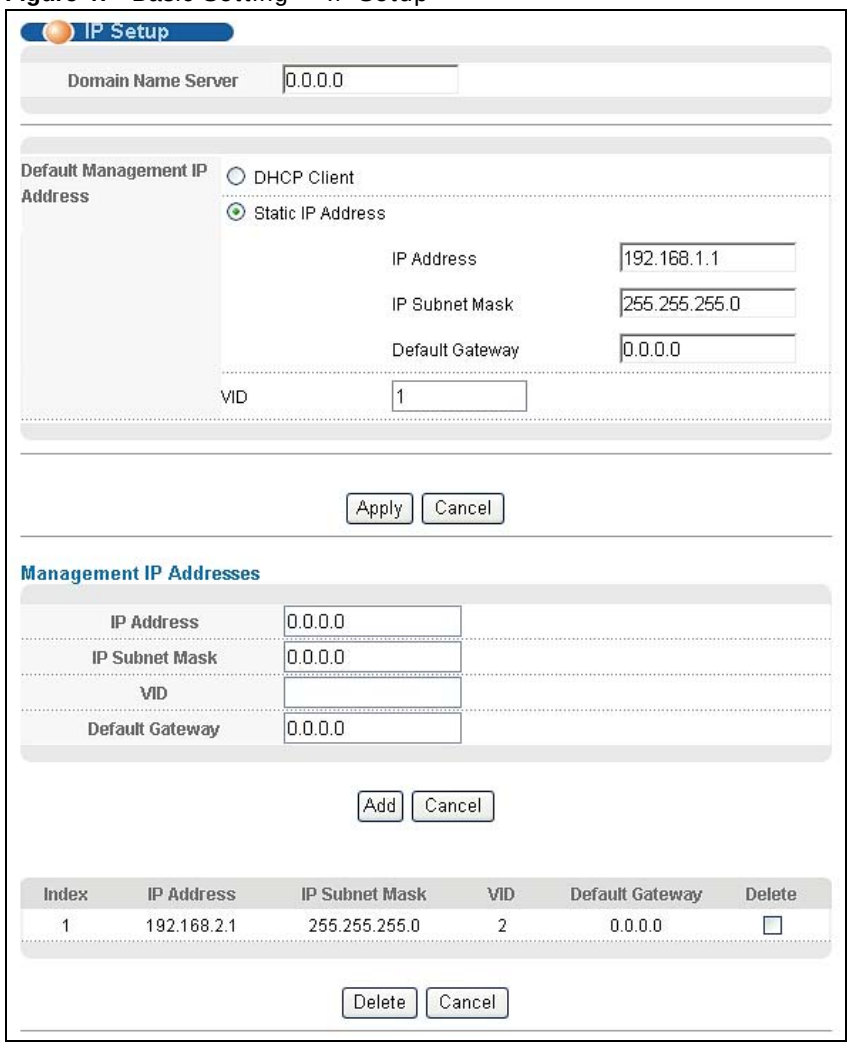
8.6.1 Management IP Addresses

The Switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

You can configure up to 64 IP addresses which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s).

Note: You must configure a VLAN first.

Figure 47 Basic Setting > IP Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 Basic Setting > IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management IP Address	
DHCP Client	Select this option if you have a DHCP server that can assign the Switch an IP address, subnet mask, a default gateway IP address and a domain name server IP address automatically.
Static IP Address	Select this option if you don't have a DHCP server or if you wish to assign static IP address information to the Switch. You need to fill in the following fields when you select this option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.

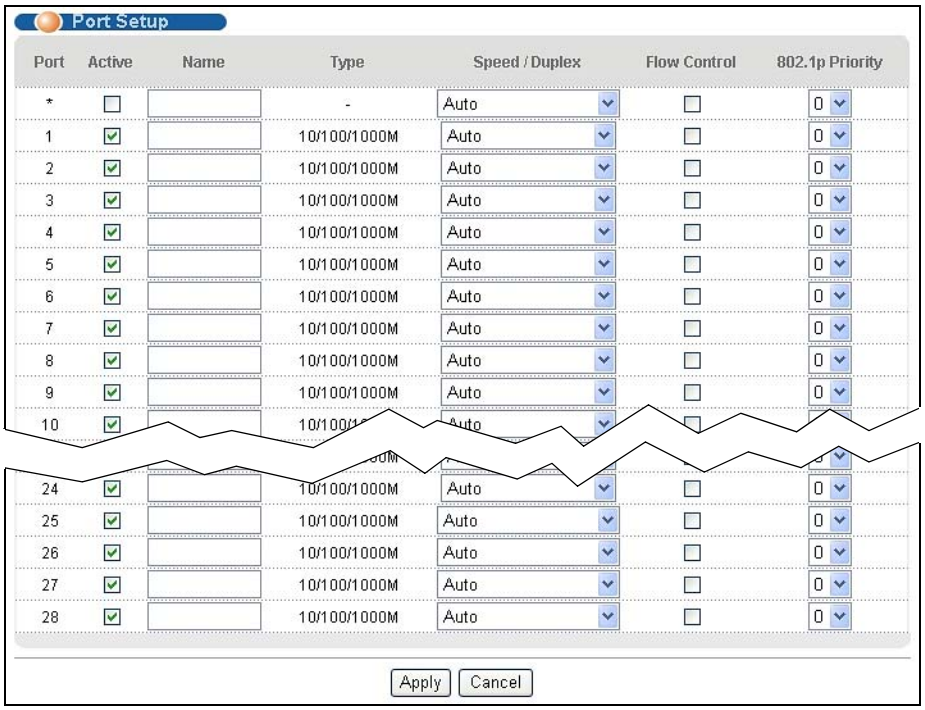
Table 13 Basic Setting > IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the Switch IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the Switch make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
Management IP Addresses You can create up to 64 IP addresses, which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s). You must configure a VLAN first.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address for managing the Switch by the members of the VLAN specified in the **VID** field below.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Default Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the default gateway.
Delete	Check the management IP addresses that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected check boxes in the **Delete** column.

8.7 Port Setup

Use this screen to configure Switch port settings. Click **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 48 Basic Setting > Port Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 Basic Setting > Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Enter a descriptive name that identifies this port. You can enter up to 64 alpha-numerical characters. Note: Due to space limitation, the port name may be truncated in some web configurator screens.
Type	This field displays the capacity that the port can support.
Speed/Duplex	Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on this port. Choices are **Auto**, **10M/Half Duplex**, **10M/Full Duplex**, **100M/Half Duplex**, **100M/Full Duplex** and **1000M/Full Duplex** (Gigabit connections only). Selecting **Auto** (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.

Table 14 Basic Setting > Port Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Flow Control	A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. **Flow Control** is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port. The Switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode. IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill. Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select **Flow Control** to enable it.
802.1p Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See **Priority Queue Assignment** in Table 12 on page 65 for more information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.8 PoE Status

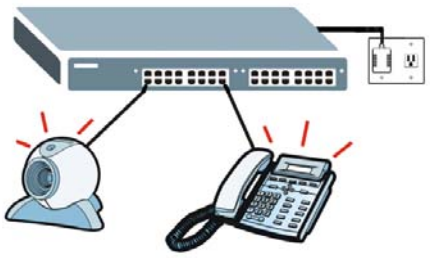
Note: The following screens are available for the PoE model(s) only. Some features are only available for the Ethernet ports (1 to 24 for GS2210-24HP and 1 to 48 for GS2210-48HP).

The PoE model(s) supports the IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet (PoE) standard.

A powered device (PD) is a device such as an access point or a switch, that supports PoE (Power over Ethernet) so that it can receive power from another device through an Ethernet port.

In the figure below, the IP camera and IP phone get their power directly from the Switch. Aside from minimizing the need for cables and wires, PoE removes the hassle of trying to find a nearby electric outlet to power up devices.

Figure 49 Powered Device Examples

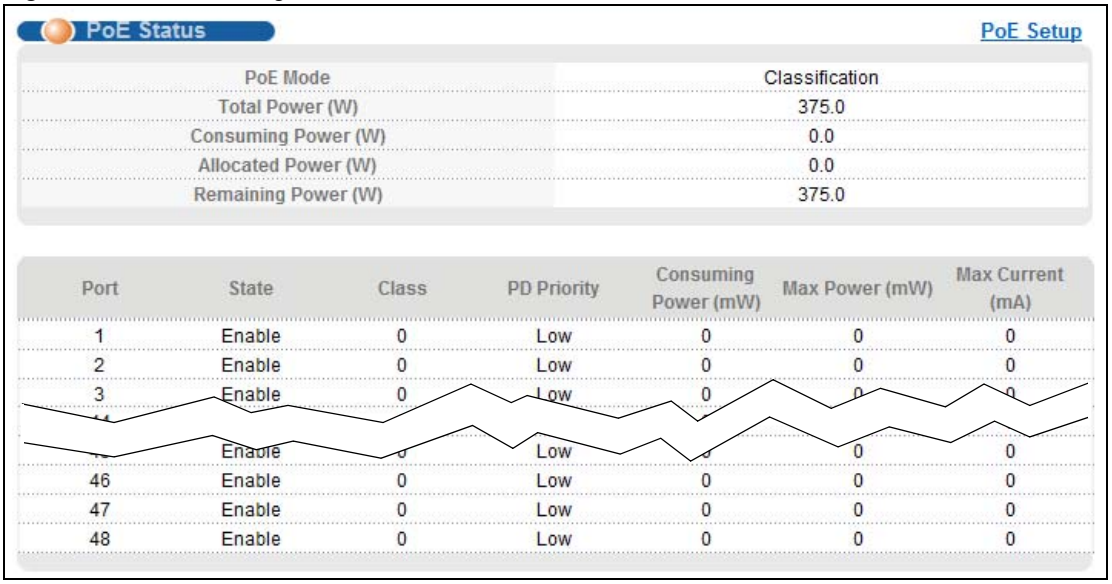


You can also set priorities so that the Switch is able to reserve and allocate power to certain PDs.

Note: The POE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.

To view the current amount of power that PDs are receiving from the Switch, click **Basic Setting** > **PoE Setup**.

Figure 50 Basic Setting > PoE Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 15 Basic Setting > PoE Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PoE Status	
PoE Mode	This field displays the power management mode used by the Switch, whether it is in Classification or Consumption mode.
Total Power	This field displays the total power the Switch can provide to the connected PoE-enabled devices on the PoE ports.
Consuming Power (W)	This field displays the amount of power the Switch is currently supplying to the connected PoE-enabled devices.
Allocated Power (W)	This field displays the total amount of power the Switch has reserved for PoE after negotiating with the connected PoE device(s). **Consuming Power (W)** can be less than or equal but not more than the **Allocated Power (W)**.
Remaining Power (W)	This field displays the amount of power the Switch can still provide for PoE. Note: The Switch must have at least 16 W of remaining power in order to supply power to a PoE device, even if the PoE device needs less than 16W.
Port	This is the port index number.
State	This field shows which ports can receive power from the Switch. You can set this in Section 8.8.1 on page 72. • **Disable** - The PD connected to this port cannot get power supply. • **Enable** - The PD connected to this port can receive power.

Table 15 Basic Setting > PoE Status (continued)

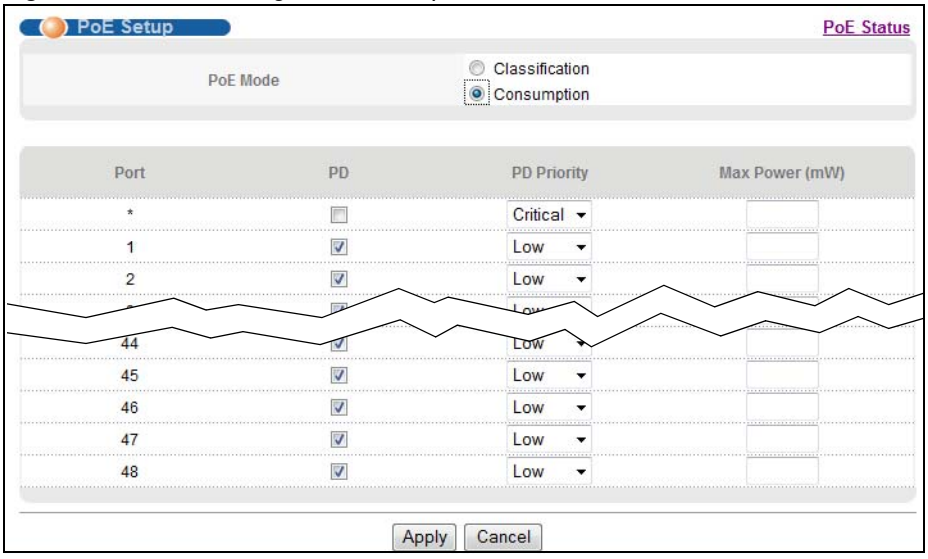
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Class	This shows the power classification of the PD. This is a number from 0 to 4, where each value represents a range of power (W) and power current (mA) that the PD requires to function. The ranges are as follows. • **Class 0** - Default, 0.44 to 12.94 • **Class 1** - Optional, 0.44 to 3.84 • **Class 2** - Optional, 3.84 to 6.49 • **Class 3** - Optional, 6.49 to 12.95 • **Class 4** - Reserved (PSEs classify as Class 0) in a Switch that supports IEEE 802.3af only. Optional, 12.95 to 25.50 in a Switch that supports IEEE 802.3at.
PD Priority	When the total power requested by the PDs exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch, you can set the PD priority to allow the Switch to provide power to ports with higher priority first. • **Critical** has the highest priority. • **High** has the Switch assign power to the port after all critical priority ports are served. • **Low** has the Switch assign power to the port after all critical and high priority ports are served.
Consuming Power (mW)	This field displays the current amount of power consumed by the PD from the Switch on this port.
Max Power (mW)	This field displays the maximum amount of power the PD could use from the Switch on this port.
Max Current (mA)	This field displays the maximum amount of current drawn by the PD from the Switch on this port.

8.8.1 PoE Setup

Use this screen to set the priority levels for the Switch in distributing power to PDs.

Click the **PoE Setup** link in the **Basic Setting > PoE Status** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 51 Basic Setting > PoE Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 Basic Setting > PoE Setup

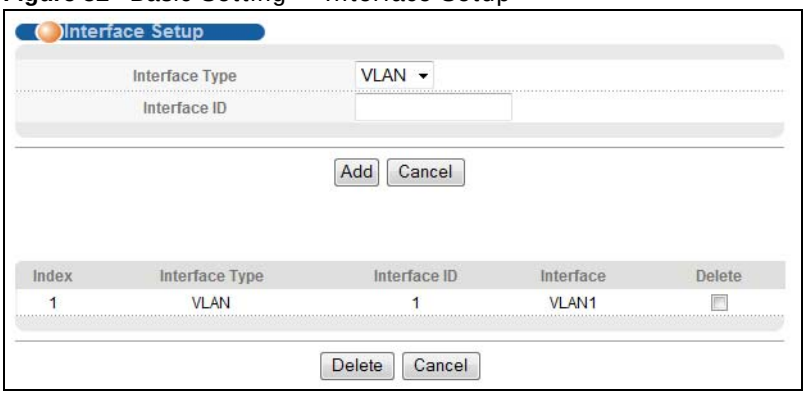
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PoE Mode	*Select the power management mode you want the Switch to use.* • **Classification** - Select this if you want the Switch to reserve the Max Power (mW) to each PD according to the priority level. If the total power supply runs out, PDs with lower priority do not get power to function. • **Consumption** - Select this if you want the Switch to manage the total power supply so that each connected PD gets a resource. However, the power allocated by the Switch may be less than the Max Power (mW) of the PD. PDs with higher priority also get more power than those with lower priority levels.
Port	This is the port index number.
PD	Select this to provide power to a PD connected to the port. If left unchecked, the PD connected to the port cannot receive power from the Switch.
PD Priority	When the total power requested by the PDs exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch, you can set the PD priority to allow the Switch to provide power to ports with higher priority. Select **Critical** to give the highest PD priority on the port. Select **High** to set the Switch to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical priority ports are served. Select **Low** to set the Switch to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical and high priority ports are served.
Max Power (mW)	This field displays the maximum amount of power the PD could use from the Switch on this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.9 Interface Setup

An IPv6 address is configured on a per-interface basis. The interface can support virtual interface (for example, a VLAN). The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.

Use this screen to set IPv6 interfaces on which you can configure an IPv6 address to access and manage the Switch. Click **Basic Setting > Interface Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 52 Basic Setting > Interface Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 Basic Setting > Interface Setup

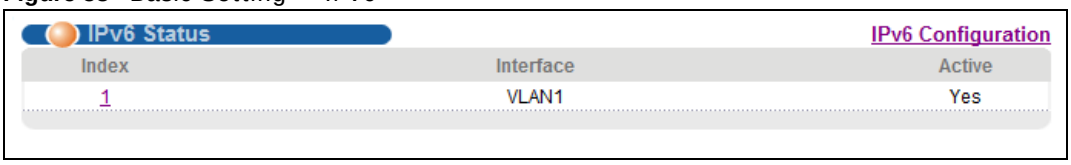
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Type	Select the type of IPv6 interface for which you want to configure. The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.
Interface ID	Specify a unique identification number (from 1 to 4094) for the interface. To have IPv6 function properly, you should configure a static VLAN with the same ID number in the **Advanced Application > VLAN** screens.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Interface Type	This field displays the type of interface.
Interface ID	This field displays the identification number of the interface.
Interface	This field displays the interface's descriptive name which is generated automatically by the Switch. The name is from a combination of the interface type and ID number.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

8.10 IPv6

Use this screen to view the IPv6 interface status and configure Switch's management IPv6 addresses.

Click **Basic Setting** > **IPv6** in the navigation panel to display the IPv6 status screen as shown next.

Figure 53 Basic Setting > IPv6



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

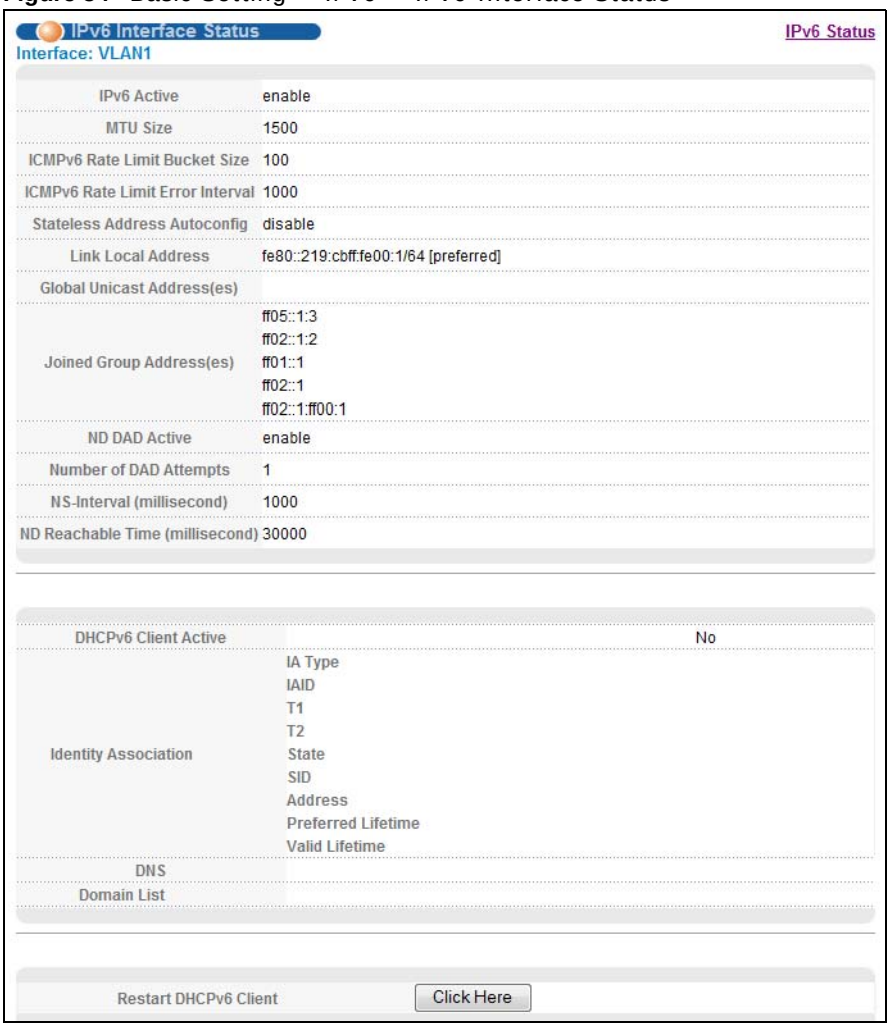
Table 18 Basic Setting > IPv6

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an IPv6 interface. Click on an index number to view more interface details.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.
Index	This field displays the index number of an IPv6 interface. Click on an index number to view more interface details.

8.10.1 IPv6 Interface Status

Use this screen to view a specific IPv6 interface status and detailed information. Click an interface index number in the **Basic Setting** > **IPv6** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 54 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Interface Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Interface Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.
MTU Size	This field displays the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size for IPv6 packets on this interface.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Bucket Size	This field displays the maximum number of ICMPv6 error messages which are allowed to transmit in a given time interval. If the bucket is full, subsequent error messages are suppressed.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Error Interval	This field displays the time period (in milliseconds) during which ICMPv6 error messages of up to the bucket size can be transmitted. 0 means no limit.
Stateless Address Autoconfig	This field displays whether the Switch's interface can automatically generate a link-local address via stateless autoconfiguration.
Link Local Address	This field displays the Switch's link-local IP address and prefix generated by the interface. It also shows whether the IP address is preferred, which means it is a valid address and can be used as a sender or receiver address.

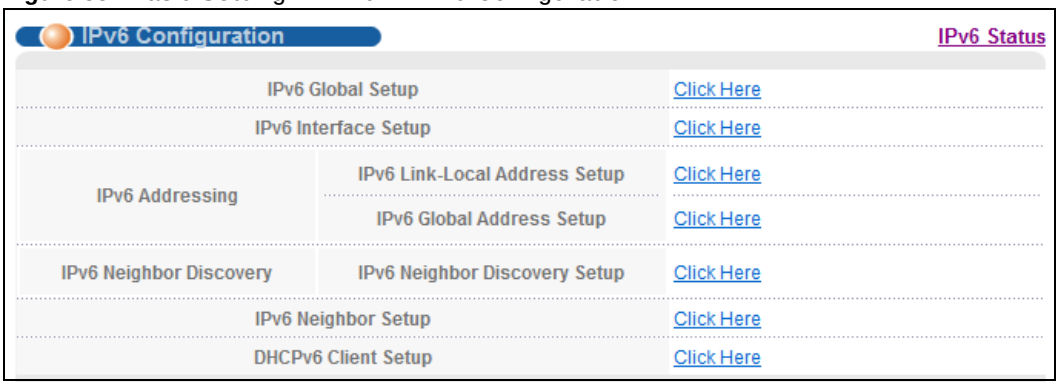
Table 19 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Interface Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Global Unicast Address(es)	This field displays the Switch's global unicast address to identify this interface.
Joined Group Address(es)	This field displays the IPv6 multicast addresses of groups the Switch's interface joins.
ND DAD Active	This field displays whether Neighbor Discovery (ND) Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) is enabled on the interface.
Number of DAD Attempts	This field displays the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations the Switch sends for this interface.
NS-Interval (millisecond)	This field displays the time interval (in milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
ND Reachable Time (millisecond)	This field displays how long (in milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.
DHCPv6 Client Active	This field displays whether the Switch acts as a DHCPv6 client to get an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.
Identity Association	An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface.
IA Type	The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. **IA_NA** means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and **IA_TA** is an identity association for temporary addresses.
IAID	Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.
T1	This field displays the DHCPv6 T1 timer. After T1, the Switch sends the DHCPv6 server a Renew message. An IA_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA_NA before the lifetimes expire.
T2	This field displays the DHCPv6 T2 timer. If the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the Switch sends a Rebind message to any available server.
State	This field displays the state of the TA. It shows **Active** when the Switch obtains addresses from a DHCpv6 server and the TA is created. **Renew** when the TA's address lifetime expires and the Switch sends out a Renew message. **Rebind** when the Switch doesn't receive a response from the original DHCPv6 server and sends out a Rebind message to another DHCPv6 server.
SID	This field displays the DHCPv6 server's unique ID.
Address	This field displays the Switch's global address which is assigned by the DHCPv6 server.
Preferred Lifetime	This field displays how long (in seconds) that the global address remains preferred.
Valid Lifetime	This field displays how long (in seconds) that the global address is valid.
DNS	This field displays the DNS server address assigned by the DHCPv6 server.
Domain List	This field displays the address record when the Switch queries the DNS server to resolve domain names.
Restart DHCPv6 Client	Click **Click Here** to send a new DHCP request to the DHCPv6 server and update the IPv6 address and DNS information for this interface.

8.10.2 IPv6 Configuration

Use this screen to configure IPv6 settings on the Switch. Click the **IPv6 Configuration** link in the **Basic Setting** > **IPv6** screen. The following screen opens.

Figure 55 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Global Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the global IPv6 settings on the Switch.
IPv6 Interface Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can enable an IPv6 interface on the Switch.
IPv6 Addressing	
IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 link-local address for an interface.
IPv6 Global Address Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 global address for an interface.
IPv6 Neighbor Discovery	
IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the IPv6 neighbor discovery settings.
IPv6 Neighbor Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can create a static IPv6 neighbor entry in the Switch's IPv6 neighbor table.
DHCPv6 Client Setup	Click the link to go to a screen where you can configure the Switch DHCP settings.

8.10.3 IPv6 Global Setup

Use this screen to configure the global IPv6 settings. Click the link next to **IPv6 Global Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 56 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

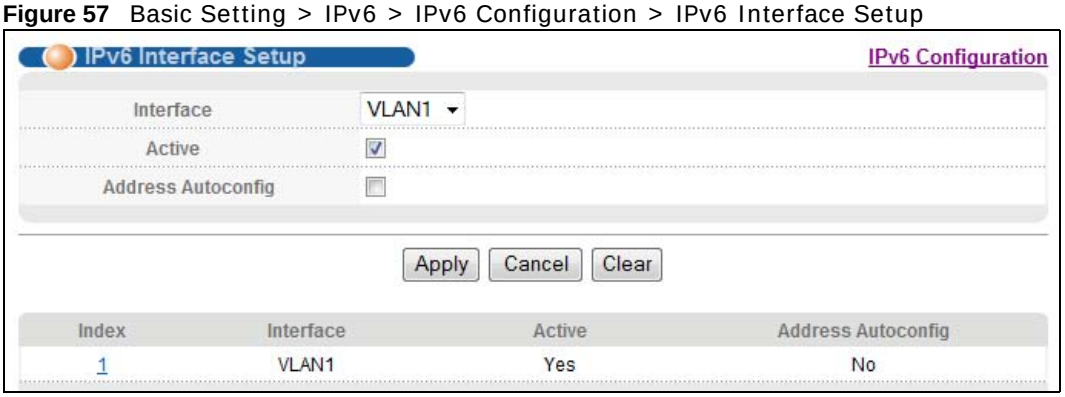
Table 21 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Hop Limit	Specify the maximum number of hops (from 1 to 255) in router advertisements. This is the maximum number of hops on which an IPv6 packet is allowed to transmit before it is discarded by an IPv6 router, which is similar to the TTL field in IPv4.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Bucket Size	Specify the maximum number of ICMPv6 error messages (from 1 to 200) which are allowed to transmit in a given time interval. If the bucket is full, subsequent error messages are suppressed.
ICMPv6 Rate Limit Error Interval	Specify the time period (from 0 to 2147483647 milliseconds) during which ICMPv6 error messages of up to the bucket size can be transmitted. 0 means no limit.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.

8.10.4 IPv6 Interface Setup

Use this screen to turn on or off an IPv6 interface and enable stateless autoconfiguration on it. Click the link next to **IPv6 Interface Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 57 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Interface Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Interface Setup

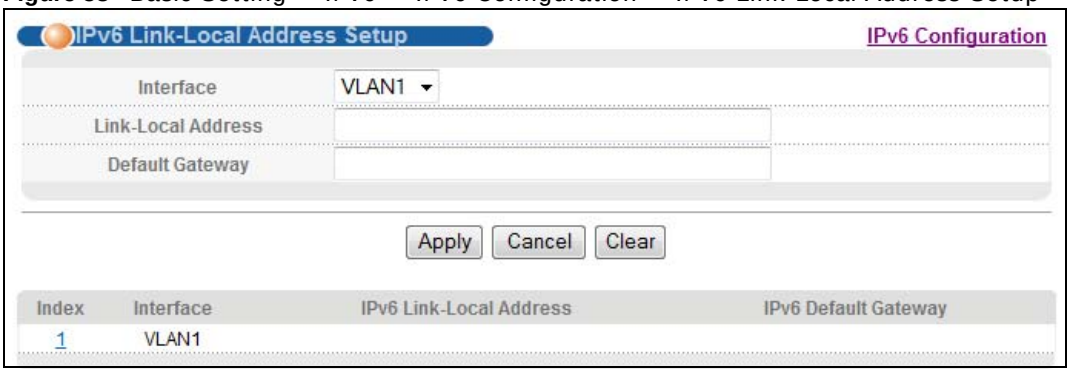
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
Active	Select this option to enable the interface.
Address Autoconfig	Select this option to allow the interface to automatically generate a link-local address via stateless autoconfiguration.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Active	This field displays whether the IPv6 interface is activated or not.
Address Autoconfig	This field displays whether stateless autoconfiguration is enabled on the interface.

8.10.5 IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a "private IP address" in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of fe80::/10.

Use this screen to configure the interface's link-local address and default gateway. Click the link next to **IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 58 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
Link-Local Address	Manually configure a static IPv6 link-local address for the interface.
Default Gateway	Set the default gateway IPv6 address for the interface. When an interface cannot find a routing information for a frame's destination, it forwards the packet to the default gateway.

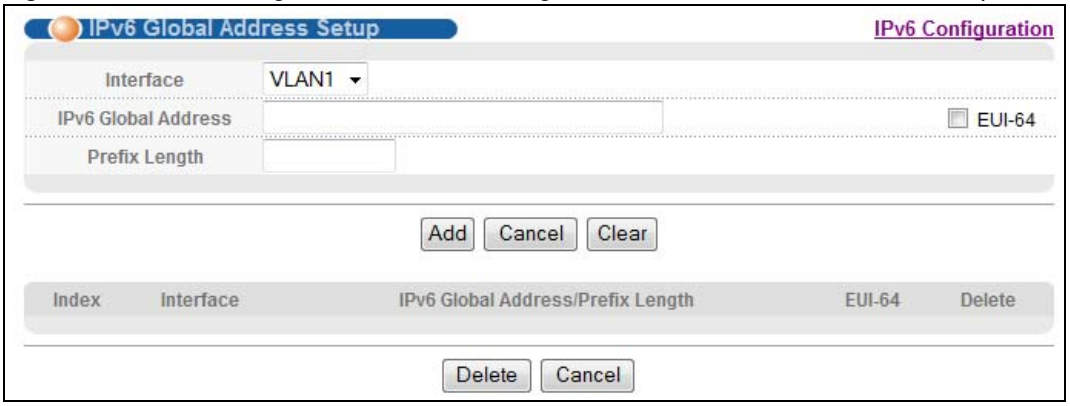
Table 23 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Link-Local Address Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IPv6 Link-Local Address	This is the static IPv6 link-local address for the interface.
IPv6 Default Gateway	This is the default gateway IPv6 address for the interface.

8.10.6 IPv6 Global Address Setup

Use this screen to configure the interface's IPv6 global address. Click the link next to **IPv6 Global Address Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 59 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
IPv6 Global Address	Manually configure a static IPv6 global address for the interface.
Prefix Length	Specify an IPv6 prefix length that specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address.
EUI-64	Select this option to have the interface ID be generated automatically using the EUI-64 format.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.

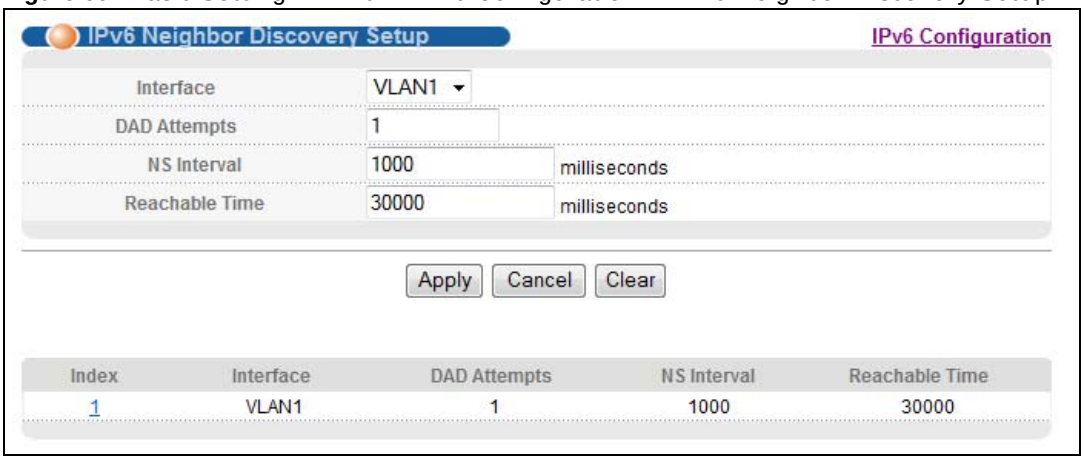
Table 24 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Global Address Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IPv6 Global Address/Prefix Length	This field displays the IPv6 global address and prefix length for the interface.
EUI-64	This shows whether the interface ID of the global address is generated using the EUI-64 format.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click **Delete** to remove the selected entry(ies) from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

8.10.7 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup

Use this screen to configure neighbor discovery settings for each interface. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 60 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
DAD Attempts	The Switch uses Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) with neighbor solicitation and advertisement messages to check whether an IPv6 address is already in use before assigning it to an interface, such as the link-local address it creates through stateless address autoconfiguration. Specify the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations (from 0 to 600) the Switch sends for this interface. Enter 0 to turn off DAD.
NS Interval	Specify the time interval (from 1000 to 3600000 milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
Reachable Time	Specify how long (from 1000 to 3600000 milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.

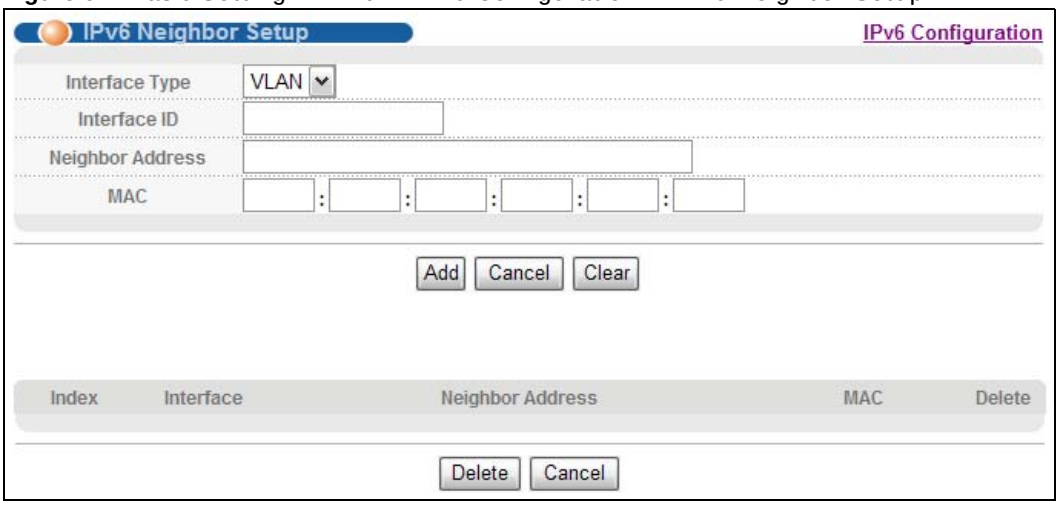
Table 25 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
DAD Attempts	This field displays the number of consecutive neighbor solicitations the Switch sends for this interface.
NS Interval	This field displays the time interval (in milliseconds) at which neighbor solicitations are re-sent for this interface.
Reachable Time	This field displays how long (in milliseconds) a neighbor is considered reachable for this interface.

8.10.8 IPv6 Neighbor Setup

Use this screen to create a static IPv6 neighbor entry in the Switch's IPv6 neighbor table to store the neighbor information permanently. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 61 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 26 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Type	Select the type of IPv6 interface for which you want to configure. The Switch supports the VLAN interface type for IPv6 at the time of writing.
Interface ID	Specify a unique identification number (from 1 to 4094) for the interface. A static IPv6 neighbor entry displays in the **Management > Neighbor Table** screen only when the interface ID is also created in the **Basic Setup > Interface Setup** screen. To have IPv6 function properly, you should configure a static VLAN with the same ID number in the **Advanced Application > VLAN** screens.
Neighbor Address	Specify the IPv6 address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.

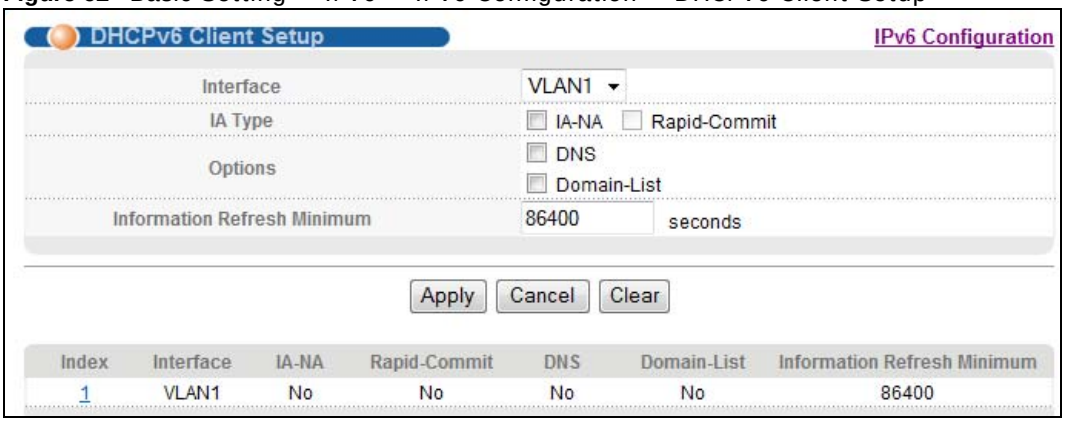
Table 26 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC	Specify the MAC address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
Neighbor Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface
MAC	This field displays the MAC address of the neighboring device which can be reached through the interface.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click **Delete** to remove the selected entry(ies) from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

8.10.9 DHCPv6 Client Setup

Use this screen to configure the Switch's DHCP settings when it is acting as a DHCPv6 client. Click the link next to **IPv6 Neighbor Setup** in the **IPv6 Configuration** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 62 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > DHCPv6 Client Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 27 Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > DHCPv6 Client Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the IPv6 interface you want to configure.
IA Type	Select **IA-NA** to set the Switch to get a non-temporary IP address from the DHCPv6 server for this interface. Optionally, you can also select **Rapid-Commit** to have the Switch send its DHCPv6 Solicit message with a Rapid Commit option to obtain information from the DHCPv6 server by a rapid two-message exchange. The Switch discards any Reply messages that do not include a Rapid Commit option. The DHCPv6 server should also support the Rapid Commit option to have it work well.
Options	Select **DNS** to have the Switch obtain DNS server IPv6 addresses and/or select **Domain-List** to have the Switch obtain a list of domain names from the DHCP server.
Information Refresh Minimum	Specify the time interval (from 600 to 4294967295 seconds) at which the Switch exchanges other configuration information with a DHCPv6 server again.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the interface index number. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Interface	This is the name of the IPv6 interface you created.
IA-NA	This field displays whether the Switch obtains a non-temporary IP address from the DHCPv6 server.
Rapid-Commit	This field displays whether the Switch obtains information from the DHCPv6 server by a rapid two-message exchange.
DNS	This field displays whether the Switch obtains DNS server IPv6 addresses from the DHCPv6 server.
Domain-List	This field displays whether the Switch obtains a list of domain names from the DHCP server.
Information Refresh Minimum	This field displays the time interval (in seconds) at which the Switch exchanges other configuration information with a DHCPv6 server again.

9

VLAN

9.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs. The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen.

9.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **VLAN Status** screen (Section 9.2 on page 89) to view and search all VLAN groups.
- Use the **VLAN Detail** screen (Section 9.2.1 on page 90) to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group.
- Use the **Static VLAN** screen (Section 9.4 on page 91) to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch.
- Use the **VLAN Port Setting** screen (Section 9.5 on page 93) to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port.
- Use the **Subnet Based VLAN** screen (Section 9.6 on page 94) to set up VLANs that allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify.
- Use the **Protocol Based VLAN** screen (Section 9.7 on page 97) to set up VLANs that allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify.
- Use the **Port-Based VLAN** screen (Section 9.8 on page 99) to set up VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.
- Use the **Voice VLAN** screen (Section 9.8 on page 99) to set up VLANs that allow you to group voice traffic with defined priority and enable the switch port to carry the voice traffic separately from data traffic to ensure the sound quality does not deteriorate.
- Use **MAC-based VLAN** screen (Section 9.10 on page 104) to set up VLANs that allow you to group untagged packets into logical VLANs based on the source MAC address of the packet. This eliminates the need to reconfigure the switch when you change ports. The switch will forward the packets based on the source MAC address you setup previously.

9.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read this section to know more about VLAN and how to configure the screens.

IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame)

and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

9.1.2.1 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

Table 28 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

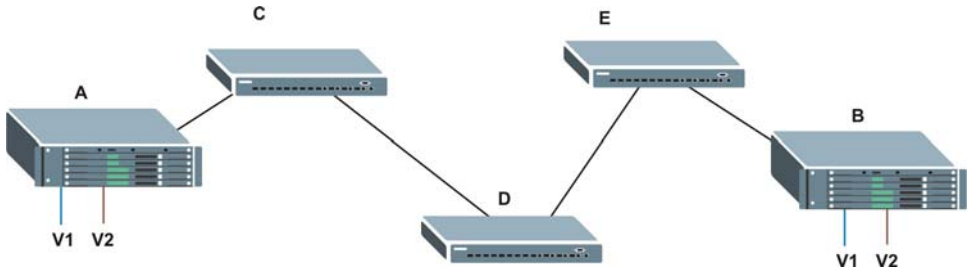
VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/deregistration process.
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable Frame Type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member

9.1.2.2 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

Refer to the following figure. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

Figure 63 Port VLAN Trunking



9.1.2.3 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** screen.

Figure 64 Switch Setup > Select VLAN Type

Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

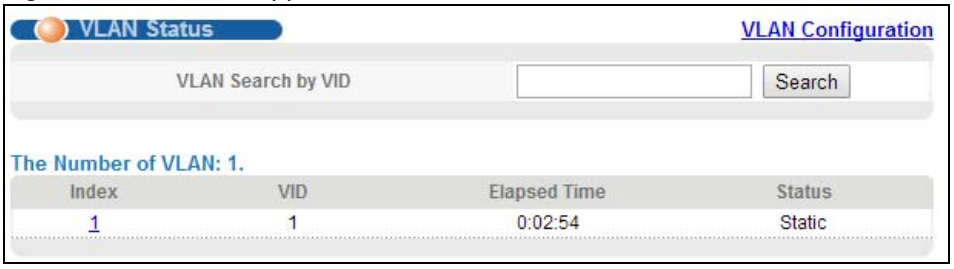
- sent to a VLAN group as normal depending on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

9.2 VLAN Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 65 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Search by VID	Enter an existing VLAN ID number(s) (separated by a comma) and click **Search** to display only the specified VLAN(s) in the list below. Leave this field blank and click **Search** to display all VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of Search Results	This is the number of VLANs that match the searching criteria and display in the list below. This field displays only when you use the **Search** button to look for certain VLANs.
Index	This is the VLAN index number. Click on an index number to view more VLAN details.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.

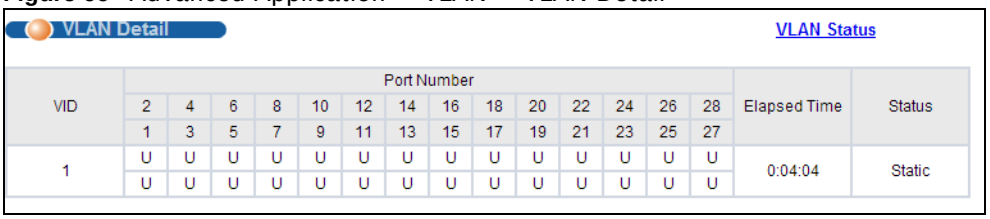
Table 29 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. **dynamic**: using GVRP **static**: added as a permanent entry **Voice**: manually added as a Voice VLAN **MVR**: added via multicast VLAN registration **MAC-based**: manually added as MAC-based VLAN
Change Pages	Click **Previous** or **Next** to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

9.2.1 VLAN Details

Use this screen to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group. Click on an index number in the **VLAN Status** screen to display VLAN details.

Figure 66 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

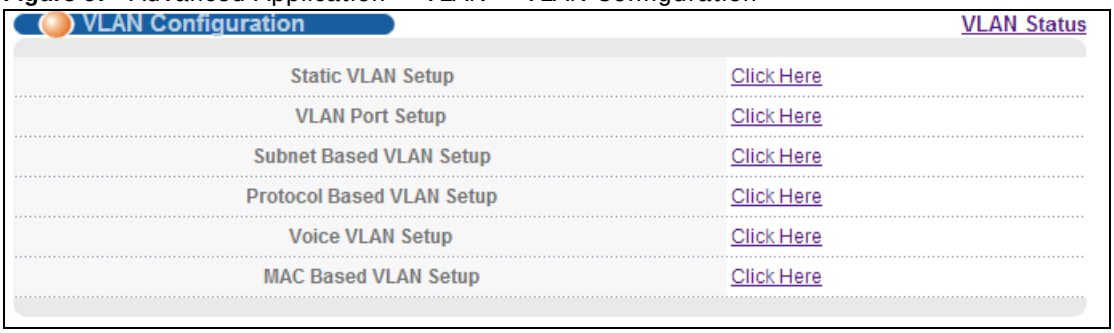
Table 30 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Status	Click this to go to the **VLAN Status** screen.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as **T**, an untagged port is marked as **U** and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as "**–**".
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. **Dynamic**: using GVRP **Static**: added as a permanent entry **Voice**: manually added as a Voice VLAN **MVR**: added via multicast VLAN registration **MAC-based**: manually added as MAC-based VLAN

9.3 VLAN Configuration

Use this screen to view IEEE 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Configuration** to see the following screen.

Figure 67 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration



The following table describes the labels in the above screen.

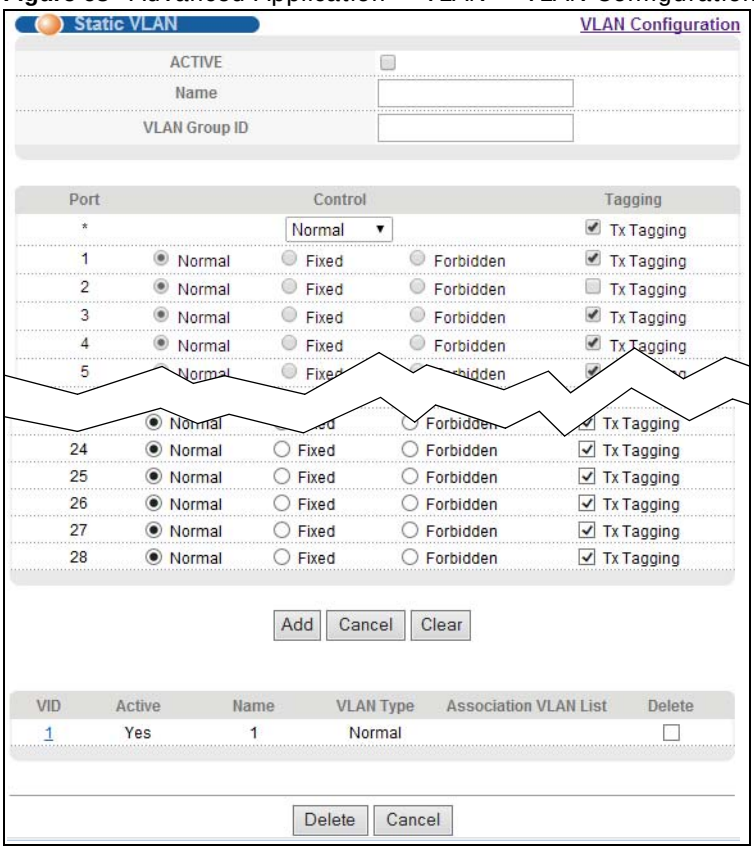
Table 31 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static VLAN Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the Static VLAN for the Switch.
VLAN Port Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the VLAN Port for the Switch.
Subnet Based VLAN Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the Subnet Based VLAN for the Switch.
Protocol Based VLAN Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the Protocol Based VLAN for the Switch.
Voice VLAN Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the Voice VLAN for the Switch.
MAC Based VLAN Setup	Click **Click Here** to configure the MAC Based VLAN for the Switch.

9.4 Configure a Static VLAN

Use this screen to configure a static VLAN for the Switch. Click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 68 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Static VLAN Setup



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 32 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Static VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN group for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters. Spaces are allowed.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Control	Select **Normal** for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select **Fixed** for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select **Forbidden** if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select **TX Tagging** if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.

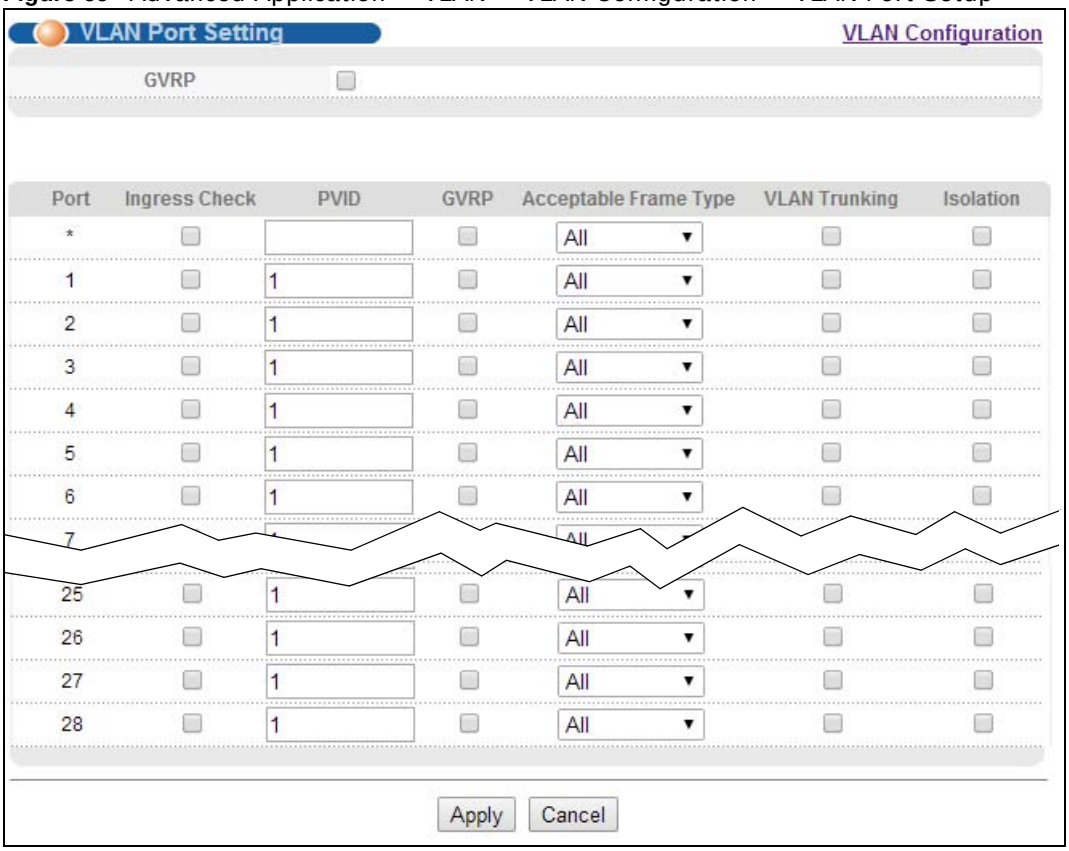
Table 32 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Static VLAN Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled (**Yes**) or disabled (**No**).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click the **Delete** check box to select VLAN you wish to remove.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

9.5 Configure VLAN Port Settings

Use the VLAN Port Setup screen to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port. Click the **VLAN Port Setup** link in the **VLAN Configuration** screen.

Figure 69 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > VLAN Port Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration> VLAN Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Ingress Check	If this check box is selected, the Switch discards incoming frames on a port for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set. Clear this check box to disable ingress filtering.
PVID	A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines. Enter a number between 1and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.
GVRP	Select this check box to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are **All**, **Tag Only** and **Untag Only**. Select **All** from the drop-down list box to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select **Tag Only** to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select **Untag Only** to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped.
VLAN Trunking	Enable **VLAN Trunking** on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the Switch.
Isolation	Select this to allows this port to communicate only with the CPU management port and the ports on which the isolation feature is not enabled.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.6 Subnet Based VLANs

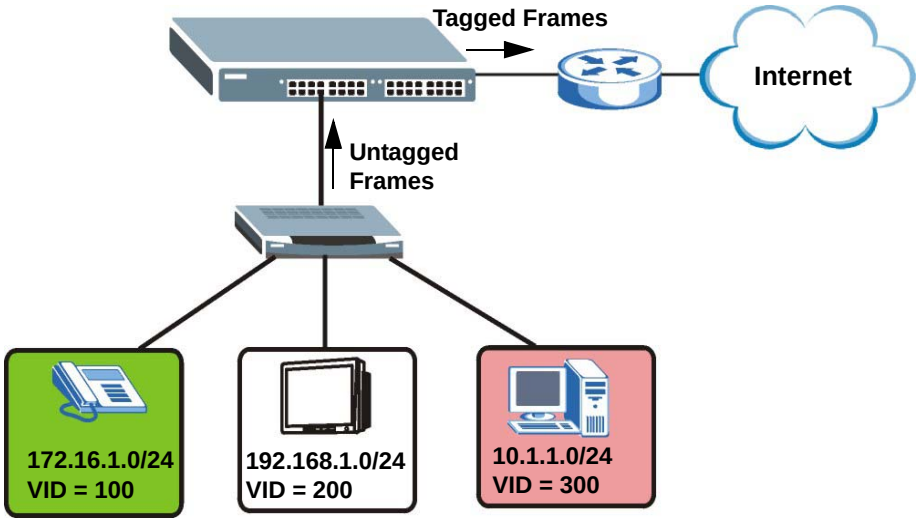
Subnet based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify. When a frame is received on a port, the Switch checks if a tag is added already and the IP subnet it came from. The untagged packets from the same IP subnet are then placed in the same subnet based VLAN. One advantage of using subnet based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic from the same IP subnet.

For example, an ISP (Internet Services Provider) may divide different types of services it provides to customers into different IP subnets. Traffic for voice services is designated for IP subnet

172.16.1.0/24, video for 192.168.1.0/24 and data for 10.1.1.0/24. The Switch can then be configured to group incoming traffic based on the source IP subnet of incoming frames.

You configure a subnet based VLAN with priority 6 and VID of 100 for traffic received from IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24 (voice services). You also have a subnet based VLAN with priority 5 and VID of 200 for traffic received from IP subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (video services). Lastly, you configure VLAN with priority 3 and VID of 300 for traffic received from IP subnet 10.1.1.0/24 (data services). All untagged incoming frames will be classified based on their source IP subnet and prioritized accordingly. That is video services receive the highest priority and data the lowest.

Figure 70 Subnet Based VLAN Application Example

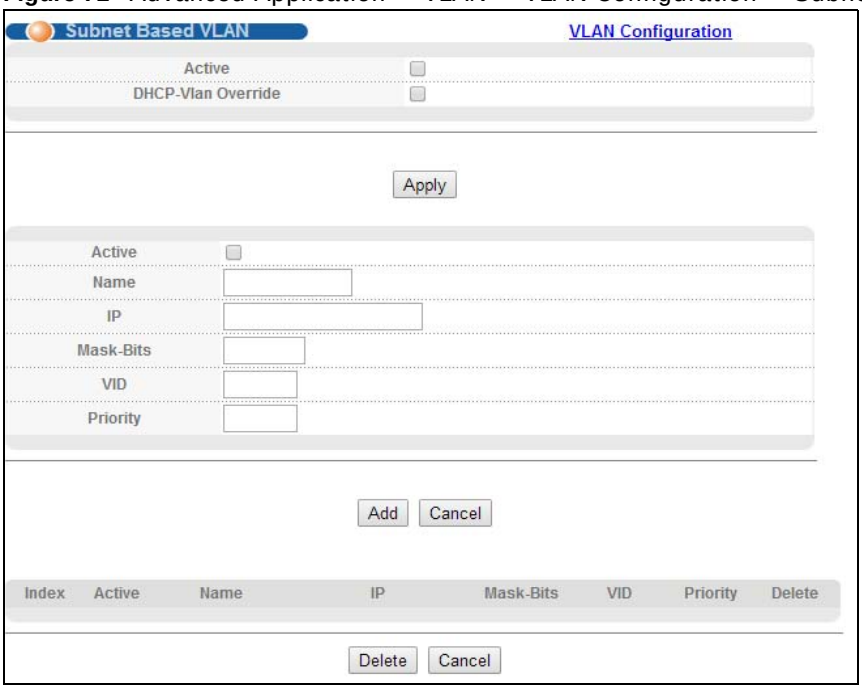


9.6.1 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN

Click **Subnet Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Subnet based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 71 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Subnet Based VLAN Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Subnet Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this subnet based VLANs on the Switch.
DHCP-Vlan Override	When DHCP snooping is enabled DHCP clients can renew their IP address through the DHCP VLAN or via another DHCP server on the subnet based VLAN. Select this checkbox to force the DHCP clients in this IP subnet to obtain their IP addresses through the DHCP VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Check this box to activate the IP subnet VLAN you are creating or editing.
Name	Enter up to 32 alpha numeric characters to identify this subnet based VLAN.
IP	Enter the IP address of the subnet for which you want to configure this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	Enter the bit number of the subnet mask. To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary format and add all the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1s in binary. There are three 255s, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN with which the untagged frames from the IP subnet specified in this subnet based VLAN are tagged. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this subnet based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing subnet based VLAN.

Table 34 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Subnet Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field shows whether the subnet based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field shows the name the subnet based VLAN.
IP	This field shows the IP address of the subnet for this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the subnet mask in bit number format for this subnet based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the frames which belong to this subnet based VLAN.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this subnet based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the subnet based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

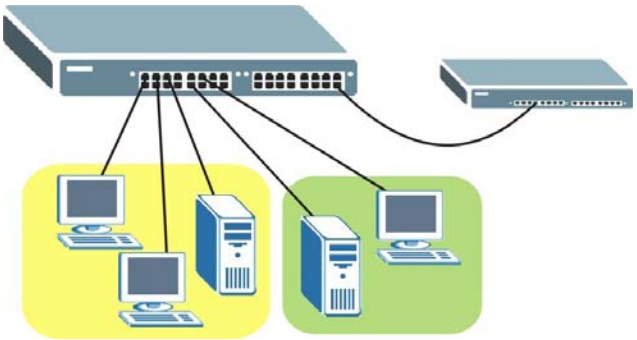
9.7 Protocol Based VLANs

Protocol based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify. When an upstream frame is received on a port (configured for a protocol based VLAN), the Switch checks if a tag is added already and its protocol. The untagged packets of the same protocol are then placed in the same protocol based VLAN. One advantage of using protocol based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic of the same protocol.

Note: Protocol based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

For example, port 1, 2, 3 and 4 belong to static VLAN 100, and port 4, 5, 6, 7 belong to static VLAN 120. You configure a protocol based VLAN A with priority 3 for ARP traffic received on port 1, 2 and 3. You also have a protocol based VLAN B with priority 2 for Apple Talk traffic received on port 6 and 7. All upstream ARP traffic from port 1, 2 and 3 will be grouped together, and all upstream Apple Talk traffic from port 6 and 7 will be in another group and have higher priority than ARP traffic, when they go through the uplink port to a backbone switch C.

Figure 72 Protocol Based VLAN Application Example

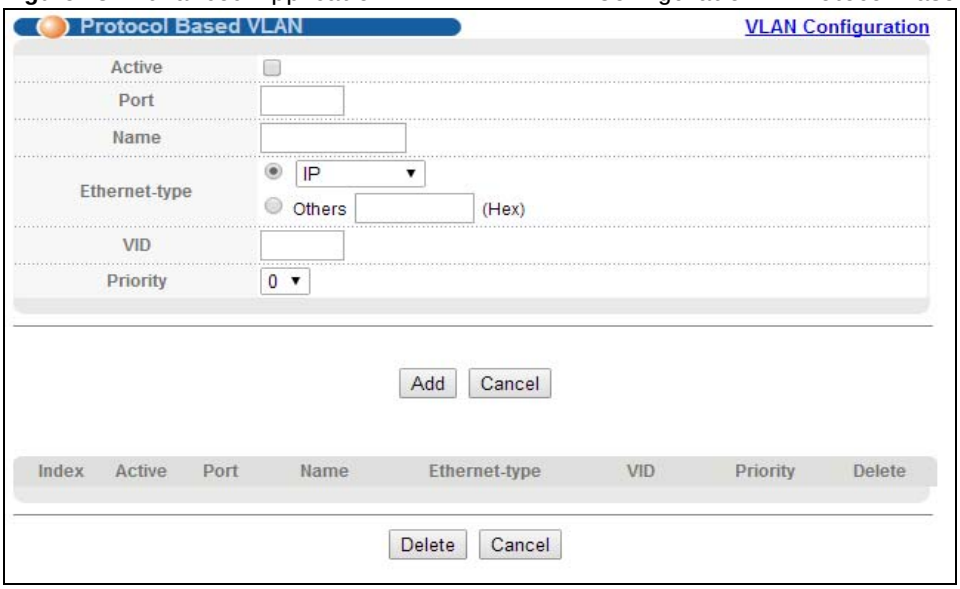


9.7.1 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN

Click **Protocol Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Protocol-based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 73 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Protocol Based VLAN Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this protocol based VLAN.
Port	Type a port to be included in this protocol based VLAN. This port must belong to a static VLAN in order to participate in a protocol based VLAN. See Chapter 9 on page 86 for more details on setting up VLANs.
Name	Enter up to 32 alpha numeric characters to identify this protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	Use the drop down list box to select a predefined protocol to be included in this protocol based VLAN or select **Others** and type the protocol number in hexadecimal notation. For example the IP protocol in hexadecimal notation is 0800, and Novell IPX protocol is 8137. Note: Protocols in the hexadecimal number range of 0x0000 to 0x05ff are not allowed to be used for protocol based VLANs.
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch will assign to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this protocol based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing protocol based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the protocol based VLAN is active or not.
Port	This field shows which port belongs to this protocol based VLAN.
Name	This field shows the name the protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet Type	This field shows which Ethernet protocol is part of this protocol based VLAN.

Table 35 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the port.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this protocol based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the protocol based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.8 Port-based VLAN Setup

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the Switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the Switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

Note: In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

9.8.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** screen and then click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the next screen.

Figure 74 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)

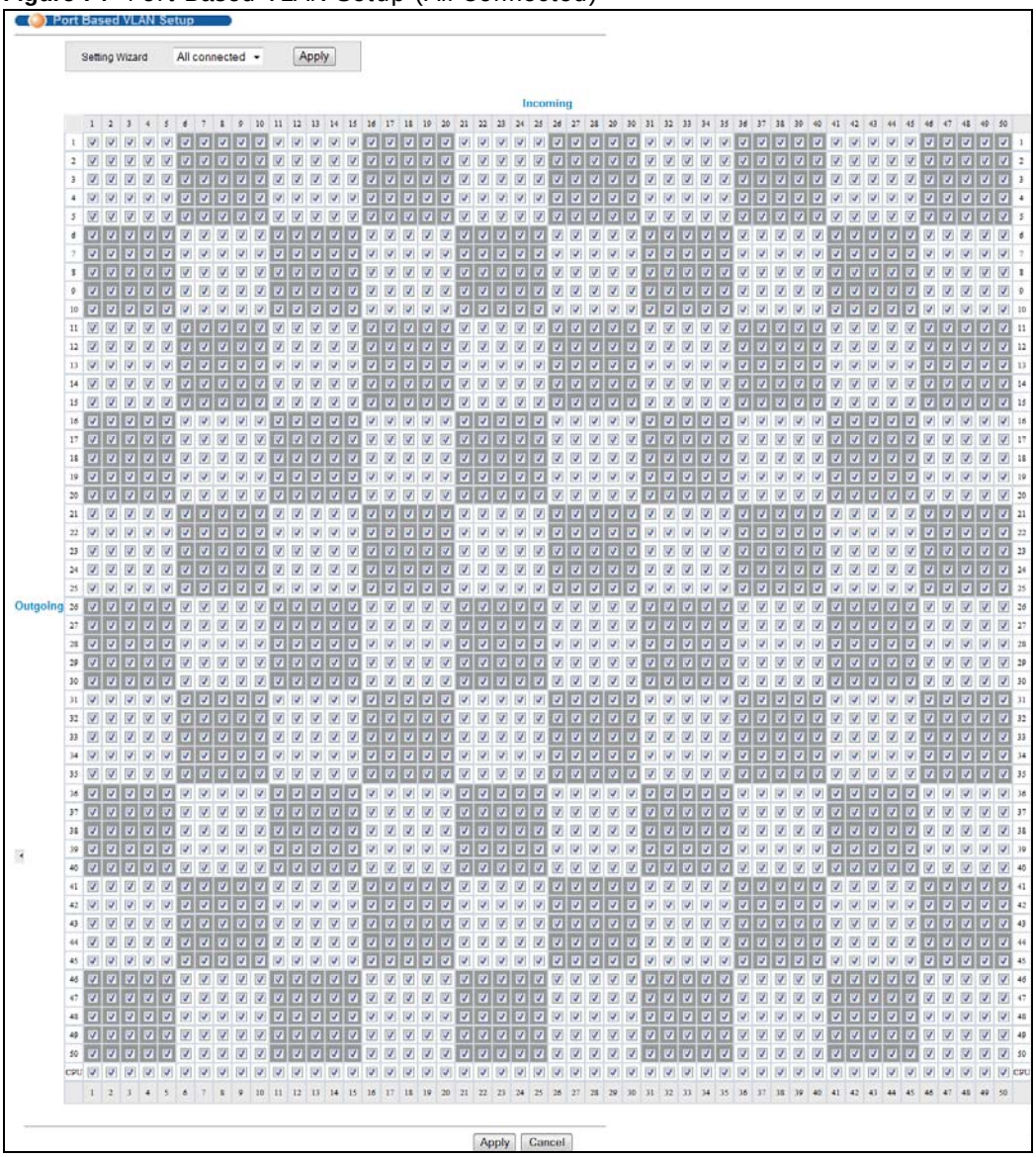
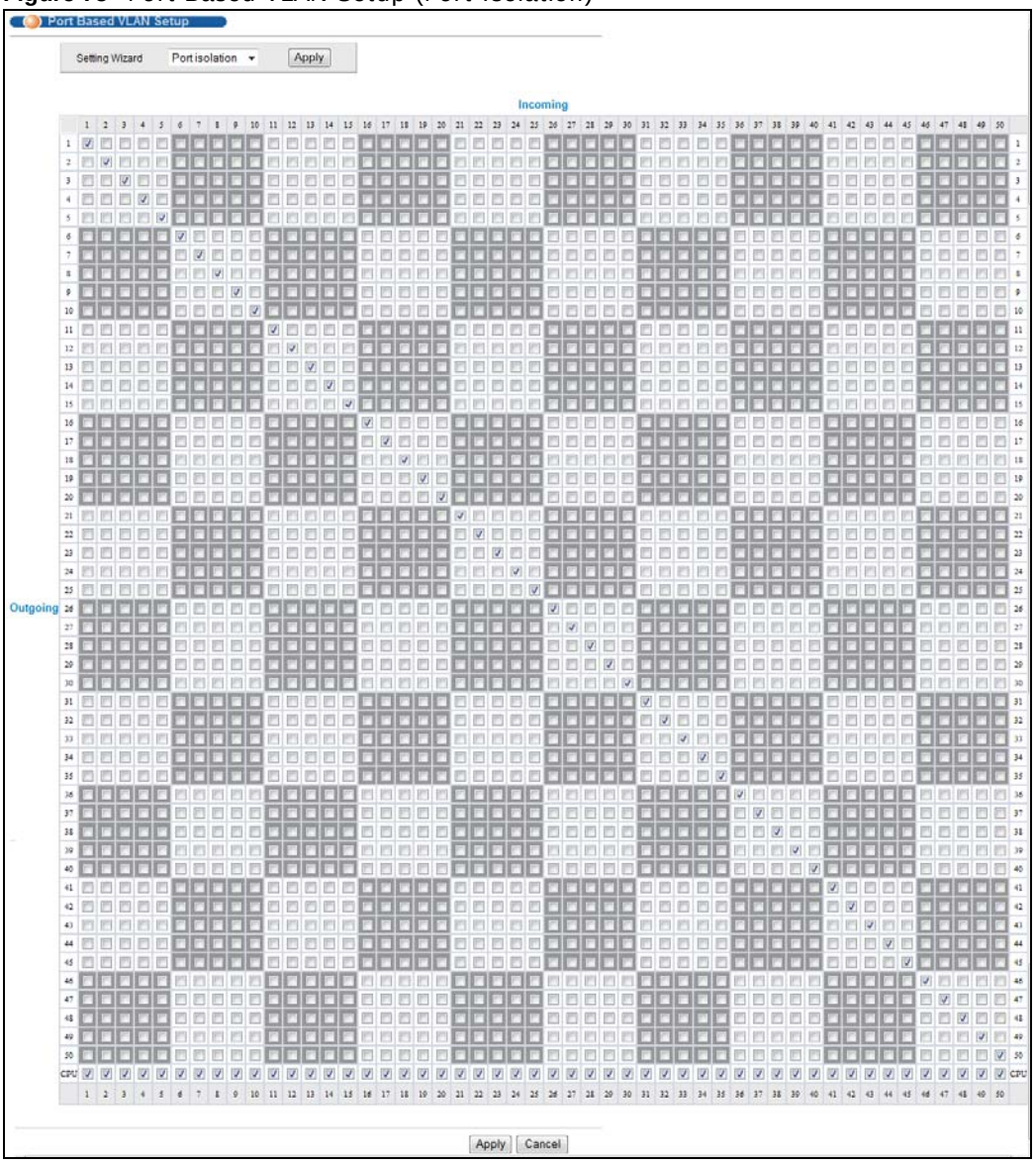


Figure 75 Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 Port Based VLAN Setup

label	Description
Setting Wizard	Choose **All connected** or **Port isolation**. **All connected** means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure. **Port isolation** means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure. After you make your selection, click **Apply** (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.
Incoming	These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Outgoing	These are the egress ports; an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

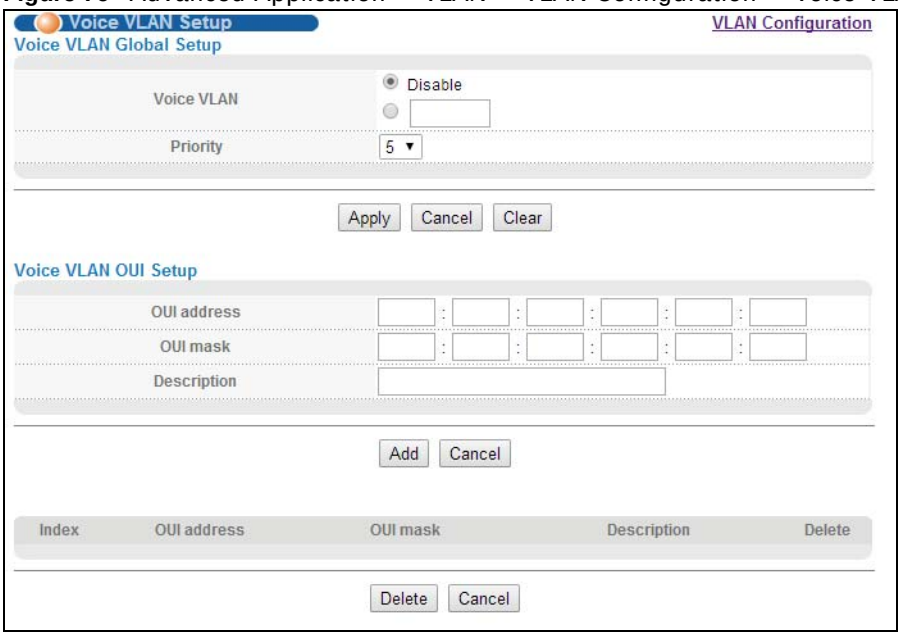
9.9 Voice VLAN

Voice VLAN ensures that the sound quality of an IP phone is preserved from deteriorating when the data traffic on the Switch ports is high. It groups the voice traffic with defined priority into an assigned VLAN which enables the separation of voice and data traffic coming onto the Switch port.

You can set priority level to the Voice VLAN and add MAC address of IP phones from specific manufacturers by using its ID from the Organizationally Unique Identifiers (OUI).

Click **Voice VLAN** in the **VLAN Configuration** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 76 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Voice VLAN Setup



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 37 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Voice VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Voice VLAN Global Setup	
Voice VLAN	Click the Voice VLAN radio button if you want to enable the Voice VLAN feature. Type a VLAN ID number in the box next to the radio button that is associated with the Voice VLAN. Click **Disable** radio button if you do not want to enable the Voice VLAN feature.
Priority	Select the priority level of the Voice VLAN from 0 to 7. Default setting is 5.The higher the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this Voice VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to default settings.
Voice VLAN OUI Setup	
OUI address	Type the IP Phone manufacturer's OUI MAC address. The first three byes is the manufacturer identifier, the last three bytes is a unique station ID.
OUI mask	Type the IP Phone manufacturer's OUI mask address.
Description	Type an description up to 32 characters for the Voice VLAN device. For example: Siemens.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This field displays the index number of the Voice VLAN.
OUI address	This field displays the OUI address of the Voice VLAN.

Table 37 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > Voice VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
OUI mask	This field displays the OUI mask address of the Voice VLAN.
Description	This field displays the description of the Voice VLAN with OUI address.
Delete	Click the **Delete** check box to select Voice VLAN OUI entry you wish to remove.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

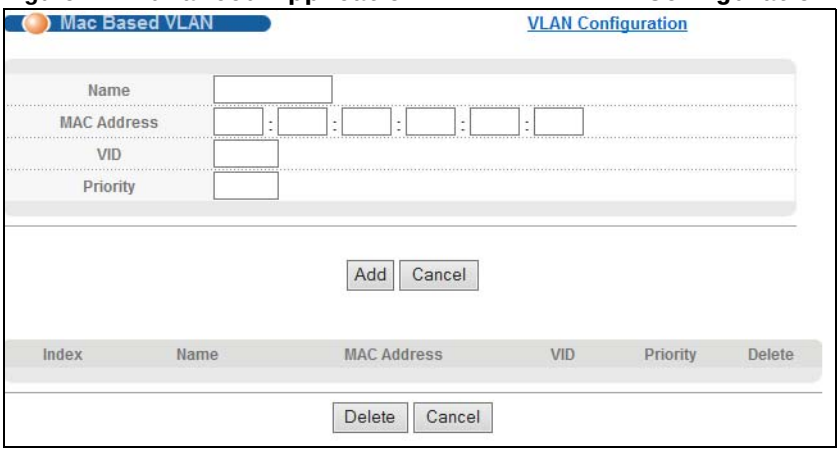
9.10 MAC-based VLAN

The MAC-based VLAN feature assigns incoming untagged packets to a VLAN and classifies the traffic based on the source MAC address of the packet. When untagged packets arrive at the switch, the source MAC address of the packet is looked up in a MAC to VLAN mapping table. If an entry is found, the corresponding VLAN ID is assigned to the packet. The assigned VLAN ID is verified against the VLAN table. If the VLAN is valid, ingress processing on the packet continues; otherwise, the packet is dropped.

This feature allows users to change ports without having to reconfigure the VLAN. You can assign priority to the MAC-based VLAN and define a MAC to VLAN mapping table by entering a specified source MAC address in the MAC-based VLAN setup screen. You can also delete a MAC-based VLAN entry in the same screen.

Click **MAC-based VLAN** in the **VLAN Configuration** window to see the following screen.

Figure 77 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > MAC-based VLAN Setup



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 38 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > MAC-based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name up to 32 alpha numeric characters for the MAC-based VLAN entry.
MAC Address	Type a MAC address that is bind to the MAC-based VLAN entry. This is the source MAC address of the data packet that is looked up when untagged packets arrive at the Switch.
VID	Type an ID (from 1 to 4094) for the VLAN ID that is associated with the MAC-based VLAN entry.

Table 38 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Configuration > MAC-based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Priority	Type a priority (0-7) for the MAC-based VLAN entry.The higher the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this MAC-based VLAN entry.
Add	Click **Add** to save the new MAC-based VLAN entry.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the fields in the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Index	This field displays the index number of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Name	This field displays the name of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address that is bind to the MAC-based VLAN entry.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Priority	This field displays the priority level of the MAC-based VLAN entry.
Delete	Click the **Delete** check box to select MAC-based VLAN entry you wish to remove.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

9.11 Technical Reference

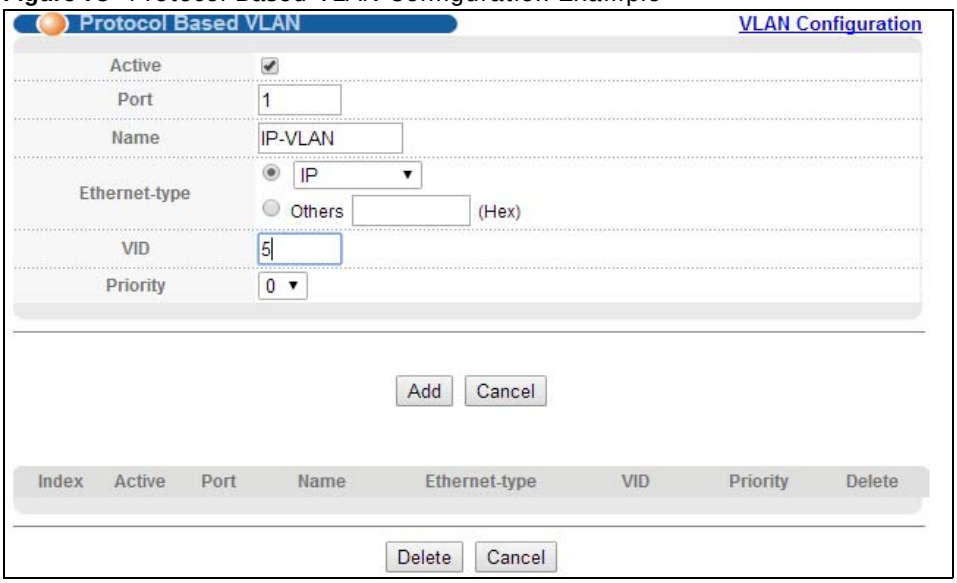
This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

9.11.1 Create an IP-based VLAN Example

This example shows you how to create an IP VLAN which includes ports 1, 4 and 8. Follow these steps:

1. Activate this protocol based VLAN.
2. Type the port number you want to include in this protocol based VLAN. Type **1**.
3. Give this protocol-based VLAN a descriptive name. Type **IP-VLAN**.
4. Select the protocol. Leave the default value **IP**.
5. Type the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN. In our example we already created a static VLAN with an ID of 5. Type **5**.
6. Leave the priority set to **0** and click **Add**.

Figure 78 Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example



To add more ports to this protocol based VLAN.

1 Click the index number of the protocol based VLAN entry. Click **1**

2 Change the value in the **Port** field to the next port you want to add.

3 Click **Add**.

10

Static MAC Forward Setup

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on MAC addresses of devices on your network.

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

10.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen (Section 10.2 on page 107) to assign static MAC addresses for a port.

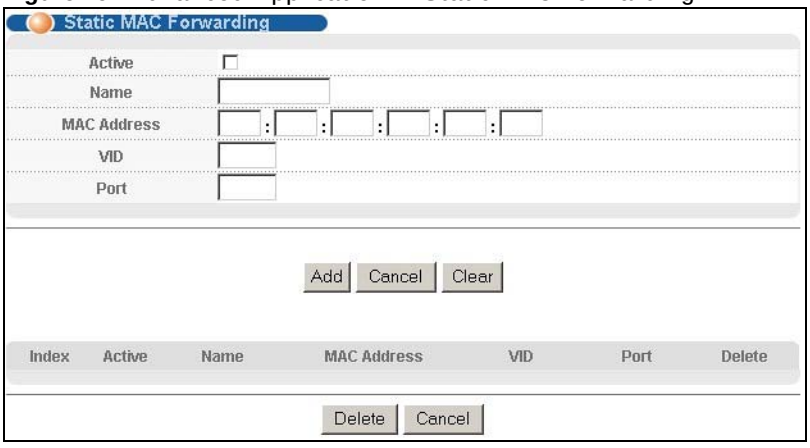
10.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allow only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the Switch. See Chapter 19 on page 153 for more information on port security.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 79 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Note: Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Enter the port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click **Add** to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

11

Static Multicast Forward Setup

11.1 Static Multicast Forward Setup Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on multicast MAC addresses of devices on your network.

Use these screens to configure static multicast address forwarding.

11.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Static Multicast Forward Setup** screen (Section 11.2 on page 110) to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

11.1.2 What You Need To Know

A multicast MAC address is the MAC address of a member of a multicast group. A static multicast address is a multicast MAC address that has been manually entered in the multicast table. Static multicast addresses do not age out. Static multicast forwarding allows you (the administrator) to forward multicast frames to a member without the member having to join the group first.

If a multicast group has no members, then the switch will either flood the multicast frames to all ports or drop them. Figure 80 shows such unknown multicast frames flooded to all ports. With static multicast forwarding, you can forward these multicasts to port(s) within a VLAN group. Figure 81 shows frames being forwarded to devices connected to port 3. Figure 82 shows frames being forwarded to ports 2 and 3 within VLAN group 4.

Figure 80 No Static Multicast Forwarding

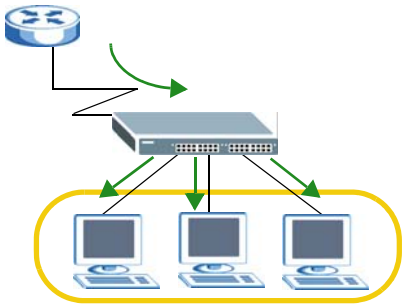


Figure 81 Static Multicast Forwarding to A Single Port

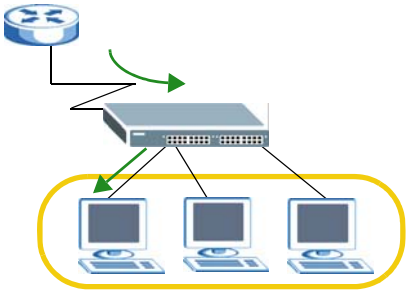
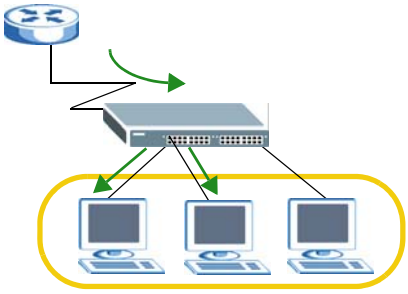


Figure 82 Static Multicast Forwarding to Multiple Ports

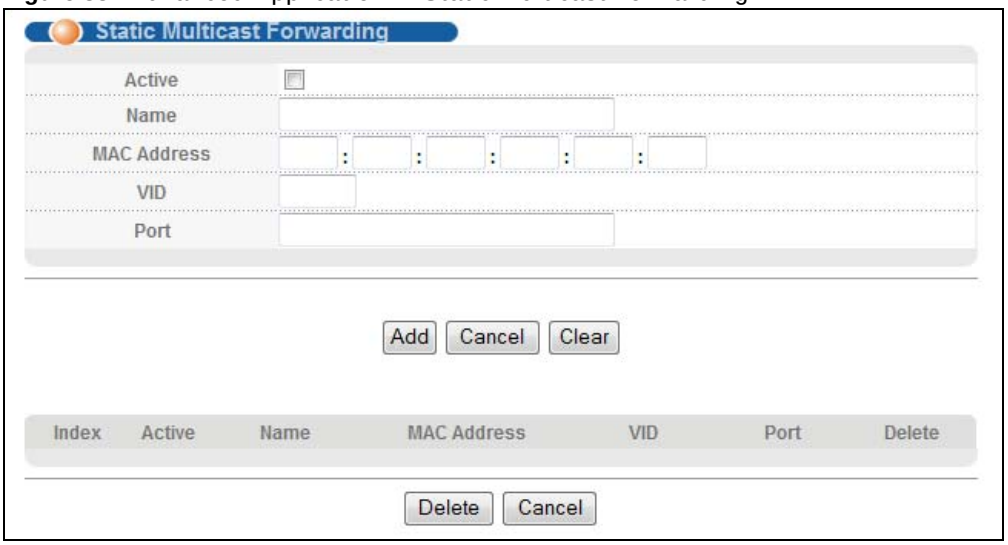


11.2 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding

Use this screen to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

Click **Advanced Application** > **Static Multicast Forwarding** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 83 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this static multicast MAC address forwarding rule. This is for identification only.
MAC Address	Enter a multicast MAC address which identifies the multicast group. The last binary bit of the first octet pair in a multicast MAC address must be 1. For example, the first octet pair 00000001 is 01 and 00000011 is 03 in hexadecimal, so 01:00:5e:00:00:0A and 03:00:5e:00:00:27 are valid multicast MAC addresses.
VID	You can forward frames with matching destination MAC address to port(s) within a VLAN group. Enter the ID that identifies the VLAN group here. If you don't have a specific target VLAN, enter 1.
Port	Enter the port(s) where frames with destination MAC address that matched the entry above are forwarded. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Add	Click **Add** to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static multicast MAC address rule for port(s).
Active	This field displays whether a static multicast MAC address forwarding rule is active (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for a static multicast MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the multicast MAC address that identifies a multicast group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of a VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Port	This field displays the port(s) within a identified VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

12 Filtering

12.1 Filtering Overview

This chapter discusses MAC address port filtering.

Filtering means sifting traffic going through the Switch based on the source and/or destination MAC addresses and VLAN group (ID).

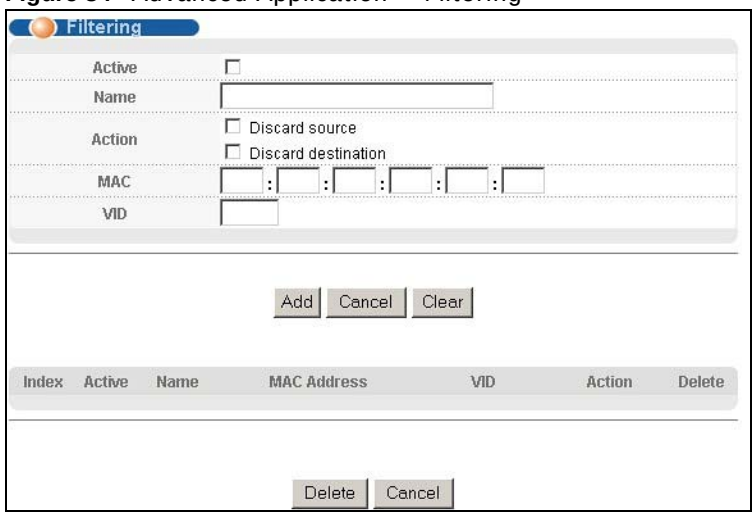
12.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Filtering** screen (Section 12.2 on page 112) to create rules for traffic going through the Switch.

12.2 Configure a Filtering Rule

Use this screen to create rules for traffic going through the Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 84 Advanced Application > Filtering



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 41 Advanced Application > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification only.
Action	Select **Discard source** to drop the frames from the source MAC address (specified in the **MAC** field). The Switch can still send frames to the MAC address. Select **Discard destination** to drop the frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the **MAC** address). The Switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address. Select **Discard source** and **Discard destination** to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the **MAC** field.
MAC	Type a MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the VLAN group identification number.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the **Delete** column.

13

Spanning Tree Protocol

13.1 Spanning Tree Protocol Overview

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch also allows you to set up multiple STP configurations (or trees). Ports can then be assigned to the trees.

13.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Spanning Tree Protocol** status screen (Section 13.2 on page 117) to view the STP status in the different STP modes (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you can configure on the Switch.
- Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen (Section 13.3 on page 117) to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch.
- Use the **Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.4 on page 118) to configure RSTP settings.
- Use the **Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.5 on page 120) to display the status screen as shown next.
- Use the **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.6 on page 121) to configure MRSTP.
- Use the **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.7 on page 123) to view the MRSTP status.
- Use the **Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.8 on page 124) to configure MSTP.
- Use the **Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.10 on page 128) to view the MSTP status.

13.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on STP that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

(Rapid) Spanning Tree Protocol

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge that then notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The recommended cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Table 42 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 43 STP Port States

PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

Multiple RSTP

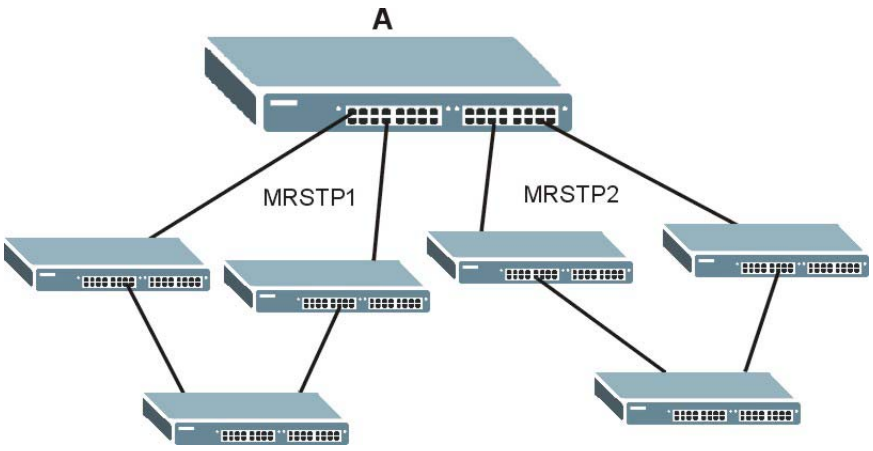
MRSTP (Multiple RSTP) is ZyXEL's proprietary feature that is compatible with RSTP and STP. With MRSTP, you can have more than one spanning tree on your Switch and assign port(s) to each tree. Each spanning tree operates independently with its own bridge information.

In the following example, there are two RSTP instances (**MRSTP 1** and **MRSTP2**) on switch **A**.

To set up MRSTP, activate MRSTP on the Switch and specify which port(s) belong to which spanning tree.

Note: Each port can belong to one STP tree only.

Figure 85 MRSTP Network Example



Multiple STP

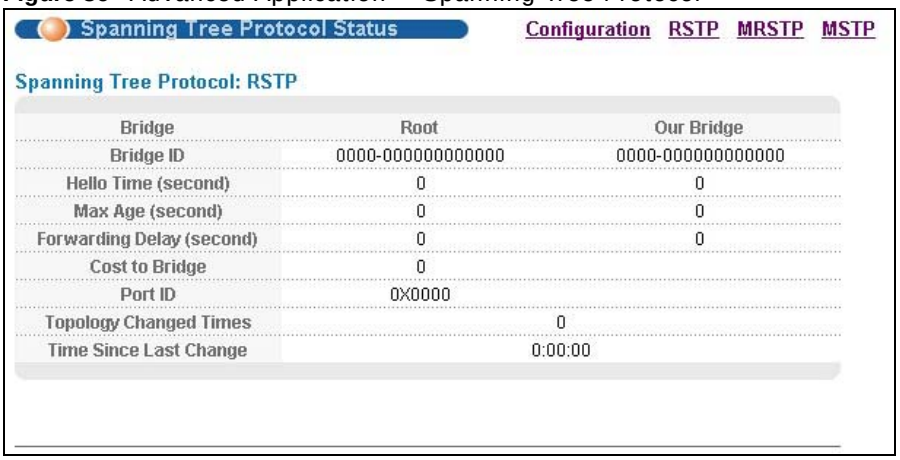
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s) is backward compatible with STP/RSTP and addresses the limitations of existing spanning tree protocols (STP and RSTP) in networks to include the following features:

- One Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) that represents the entire network's connectivity.
- Grouping of multiple bridges (or switching devices) into regions that appear as one single bridge on the network.
- A VLAN can be mapped to a specific Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTI allows multiple VLANs to use the same spanning tree.
- Load-balancing is possible as traffic from different VLANs can use distinct paths in a region.

13.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen

The Spanning Tree Protocol status screen changes depending on what standard you choose to implement on your network. Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** to see the screen as shown.

Figure 86 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol



This screen differs depending on which STP mode (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you configure on the Switch. This screen is described in detail in the section that follows the configuration section for each STP mode. Click **Configuration** to activate one of the STP standards on the Switch.

13.3 Spanning Tree Configuration

Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Click **Configuration** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol**.

Figure 87 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

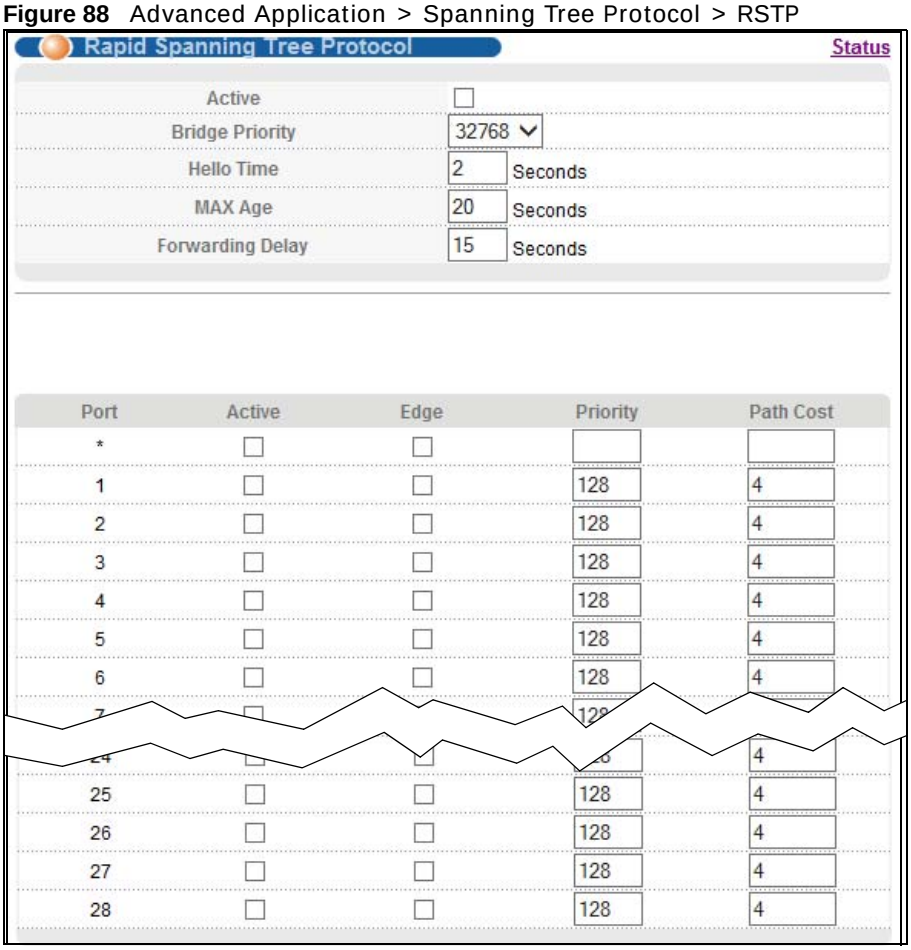
Table 44 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Mode	You can activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Select **Rapid Spanning Tree**, **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree** or **Multiple Spanning Tree**. See Section 13.1 on page 114 for background information on STP.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

Use this screen to configure RSTP settings, see Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information on RSTP. Click **RSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen.

Figure 88 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **RSTP Status** screen (see Figure 89 on page 120).
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP. Clear this checkbox to disable RSTP. Note: You must also activate **Rapid Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration** screen to enable RSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP on this port.
Edge	Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes. Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.

Table 45 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP (continued)

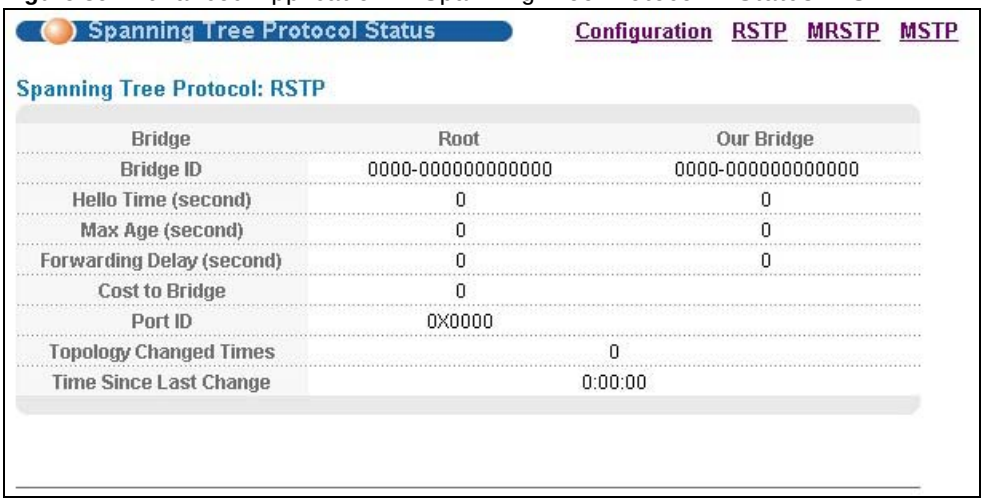
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 42 on page 115 for more information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information on RSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate RSTP on the Switch.

Figure 89 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **RSTP** to edit RSTP settings on the Switch.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.

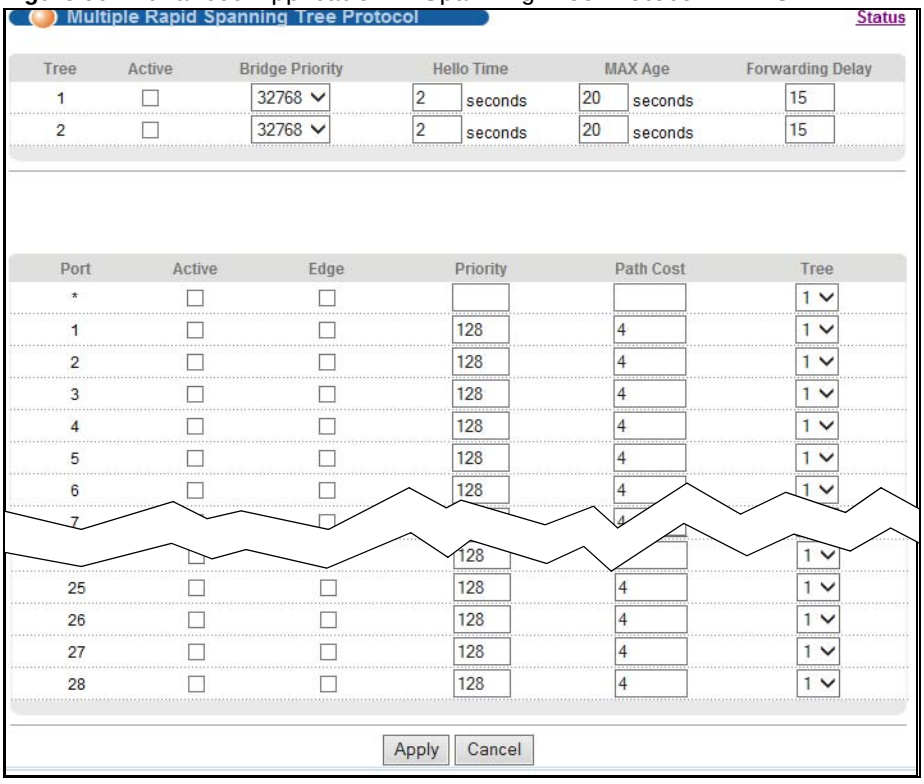
Table 46 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.6 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MRSTP, click **MRSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information on MRSTP.

Figure 90 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **MRSTP Status** screen (see Figure 89 on page 120).
Tree	This is a read only index number of the STP trees.
Active	Select this check box to activate an STP tree. Clear this checkbox to disable an STP tree. Note: You must also activate **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** > **Configuration** screen to enable MRSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Edge	Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes. Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.

Table 47 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP (continued)

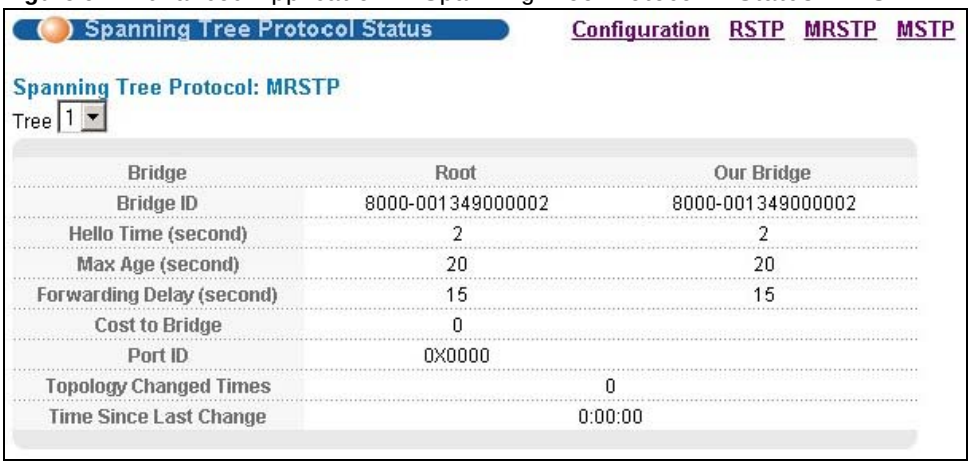
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 42 on page 115 for more information.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration this port should participate in.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.7 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 13.1 on page 114 for more information on MRSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MRSTP on the Switch.

Figure 91 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **MRSTP** to edit MRSTP settings on the Switch.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration you want to view.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.

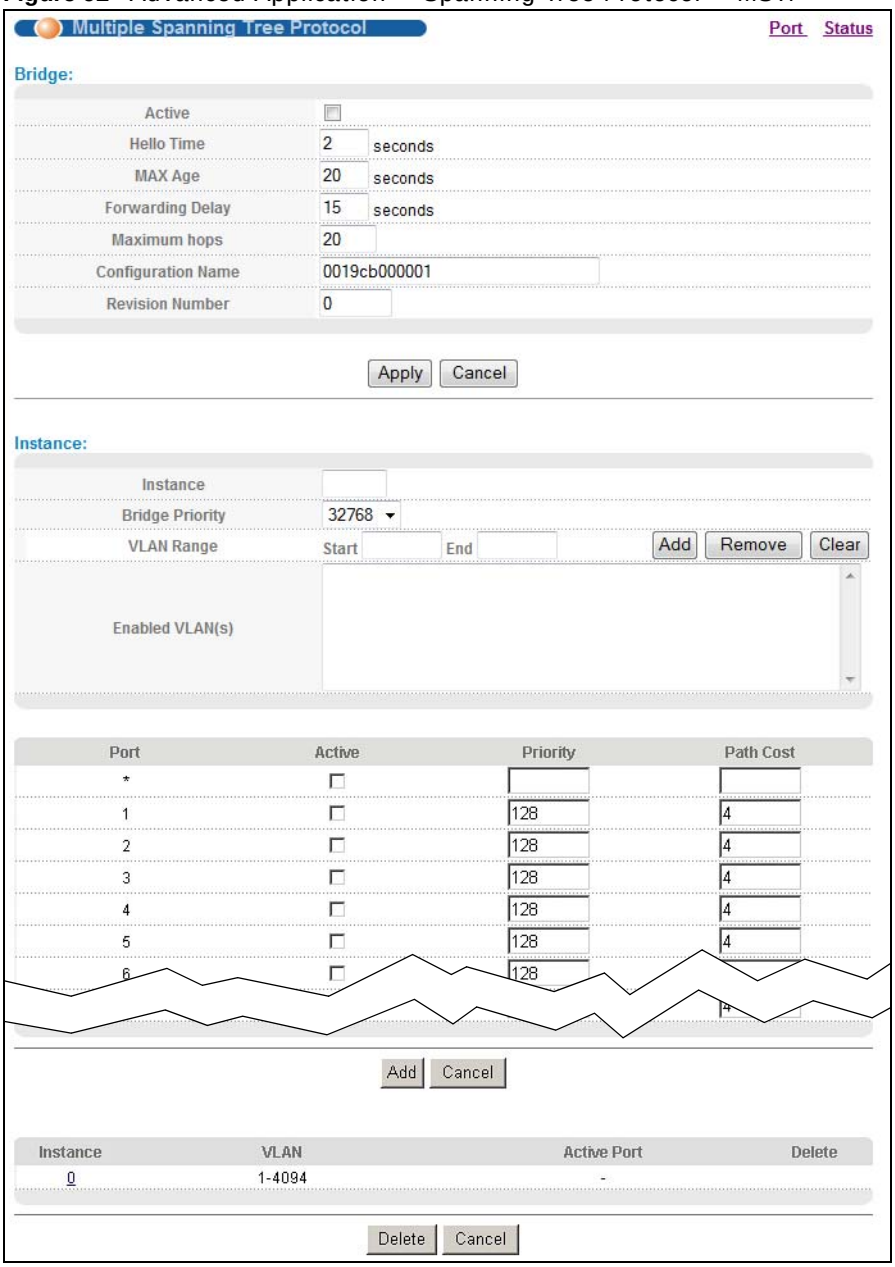
Table 48 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.8 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MSTP, click **MSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See Section on page 116 for more information on MSTP.

Figure 92 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Click **Port** to display the **MSTP Port** screen (see Figure 93 on page 127).
Status	Click **Status** to display the **MSTP Status** screen (see Figure 94 on page 129).
Active	Select this to activate MSTP on the Switch. Clear this to disable MSTP on the Switch. Note: You must also activate **Multiple Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration** screen to enable MSTP on the Switch.

Table 49 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
MaxAge	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Maximum hops	Enter the number of hops (between 1 and 255) in an MSTP region before the BPDU is discarded and the port information is aged.
Configuration Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) of an MST region.
Revision Number	Enter a number to identify a region's configuration. Devices must have the same revision number to belong to the same region.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	Use this section to configure MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) settings.
Instance	Enter the number you want to use to identify this MST instance on the Switch. The Switch supports instance numbers 0-15.
Bridge Priority	Set the priority of the Switch for the specific spanning tree instance. The lower the number, the more likely the Switch will be chosen as the root bridge within the spanning tree instance. Enter priority values between 0 and 61440 in increments of 4096 (thus valid values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440).
VLAN Range	Enter the start of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **Start** field. Enter the end of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **End** field. Next click: • **Add** - to add this range of VLAN(s) to be mapped to the MST instance. • **Remove** - to remove this range of VLAN(s) from being mapped to the MST instance. • **Clear** - to remove all VLAN(s) from being mapped to this MST instance.
Enabled VLAN(s)	This field displays which VLAN(s) are mapped to this MST instance.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

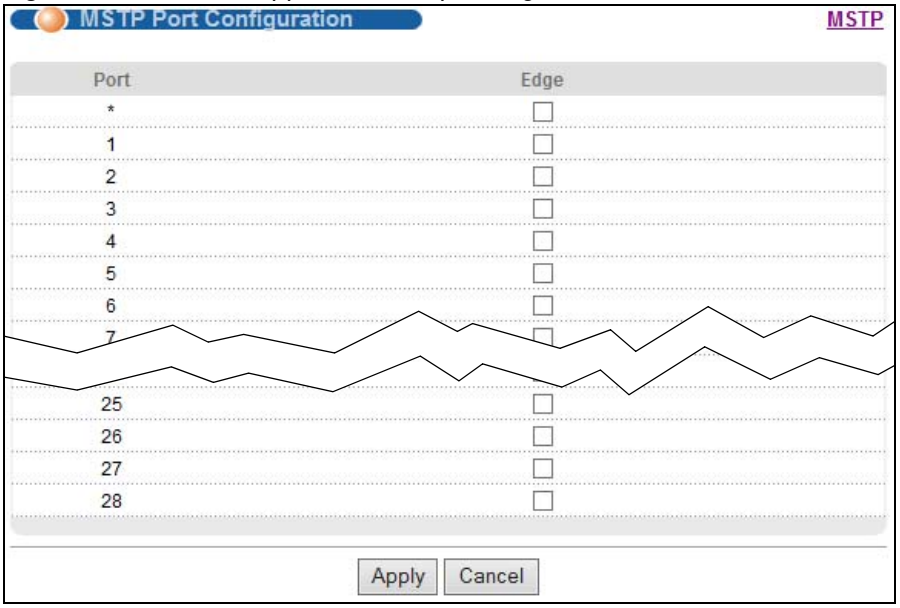
Table 49 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to add this port to the MST instance.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 42 on page 115 for more information.
Add	Click **Add** to save this MST instance to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	This field displays the ID of an MST instance.
VLAN	This field displays the VID (or VID ranges) to which the MST instance is mapped.
Active Port	This field display the ports configured to participate in the MST instance.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.9 Multiple Spanning Tree Port Configuration

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section on page 116 for more information on MSTP.

Figure 93 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port

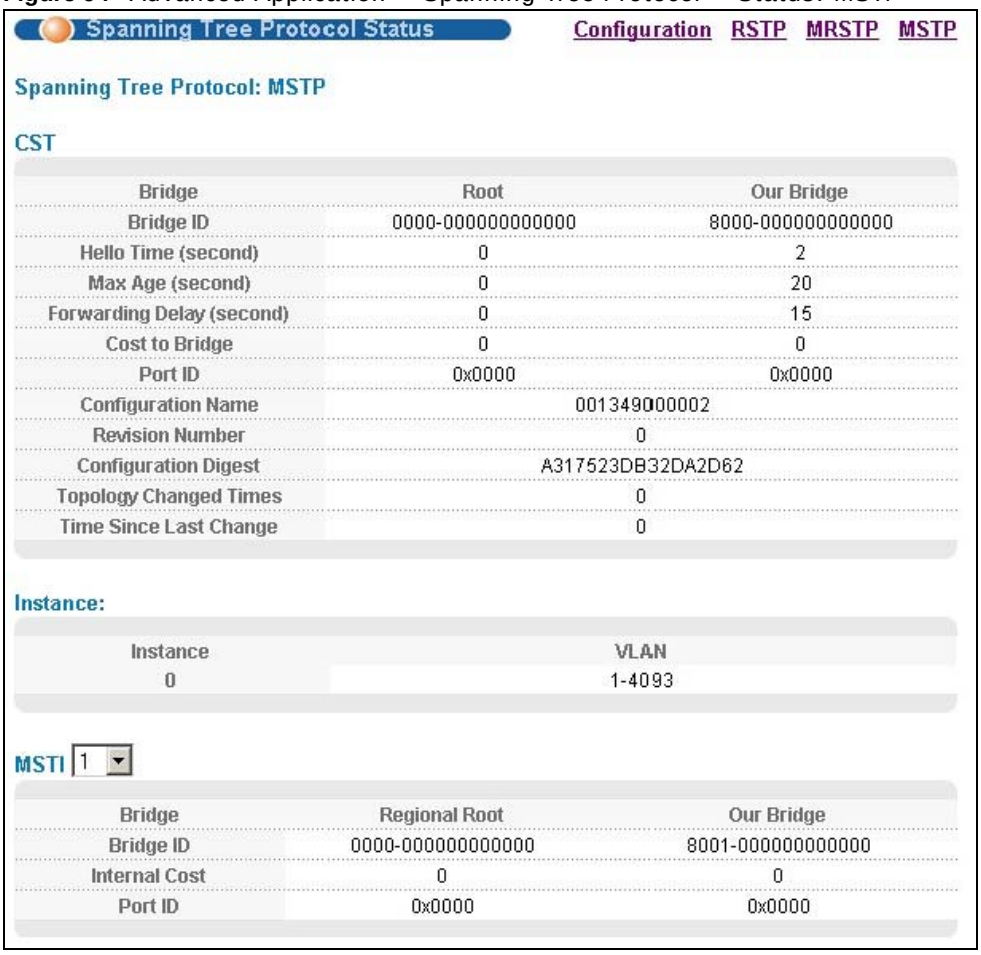
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MSTP	Click **MSTP** to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Edge	Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes. Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.10 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section on page 116 for more information on MSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MSTP on the Switch.

Figure 94 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **MSTP** to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
CST	This section describes the Common Spanning Tree settings.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.

Table 51 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration Name	This field displays the configuration name for this MST region.
Revision Number	This field displays the revision number for this MST region.
Configuration Digest	A configuration digest is generated from the VLAN-MSTI mapping information. This field displays the 16-octet signature that is included in an MSTP BPDU. This field displays the digest when MSTP is activated on the system.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.
Instance:	These fields display the MSTI to VLAN mapping. In other words, which VLANs run on each spanning tree instance.
Instance	This field displays the MSTI ID.
VLAN	This field displays which VLANs are mapped to an MSTI.
MSTI	Select the MST instance settings you want to view.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the MST instance. **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Internal Cost	This is the path cost from the root port in this MST instance to the regional root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the MST instance.

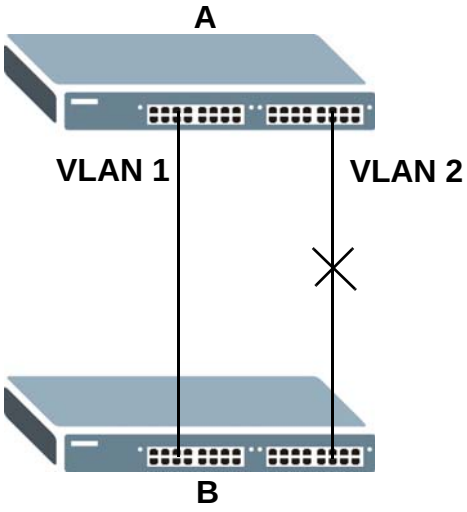
13.11 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

13.11.1 MSTP Network Example

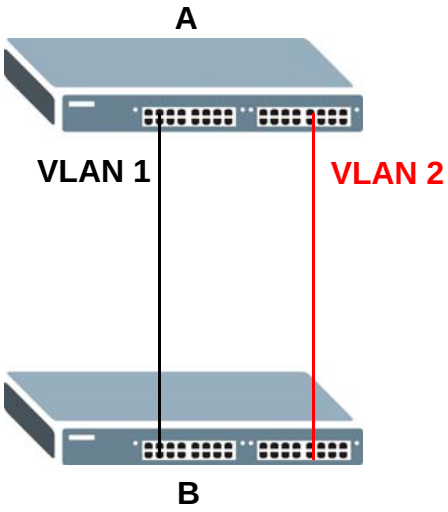
The following figure shows a network example where two VLANs are configured on the two switches. If the switches are using STP or RSTP, the link for VLAN 2 will be blocked as STP and RSTP allow only one link in the network and block the redundant link.

Figure 95 STP/RSTP Network Example



With MSTP, VLANs 1 and 2 are mapped to different spanning trees in the network. Thus traffic from the two VLANs travel on different paths. The following figure shows the network example using MSTP.

Figure 96 MSTP Network Example



13.11.2 MST Region

An MST region is a logical grouping of multiple network devices that appears as a single device to the rest of the network. Each MSTP-enabled device can only belong to one MST region. When BPDUs enter an MST region, external path cost (of paths outside this region) is increased by one. Internal path cost (of paths within this region) is increased by one when BPDUs traverse the region.

Devices that belong to the same MST region are configured to have the same MSTP configuration identification settings. These include the following parameters:

- Name of the MST region
- Revision level as the unique number for the MST region

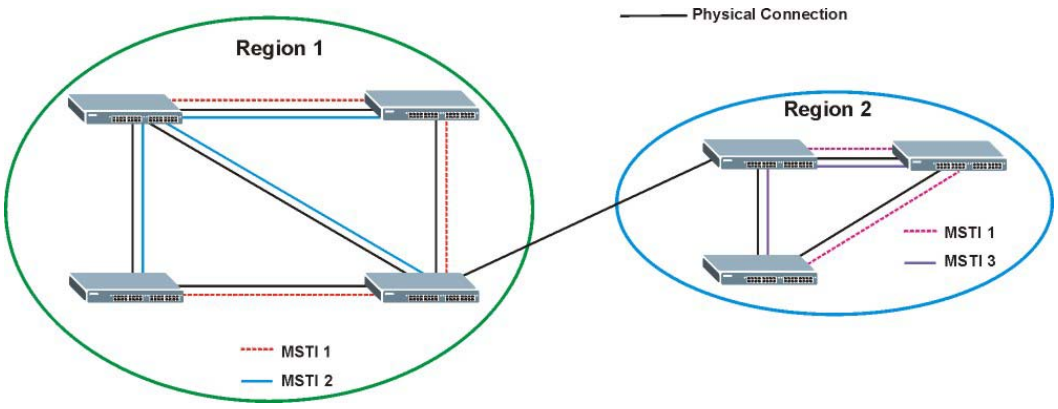
- VLAN-to-MST Instance mapping

13.11.3 MST Instance

An MST Instance (MSTI) is a spanning tree instance. VLANs can be configured to run on a specific MSTI. Each created MSTI is identified by a unique number (known as an MST ID) known internally to a region. Thus an MSTI does not span across MST regions.

The following figure shows an example where there are two MST regions. Regions 1 and 2 have 2 spanning tree instances.

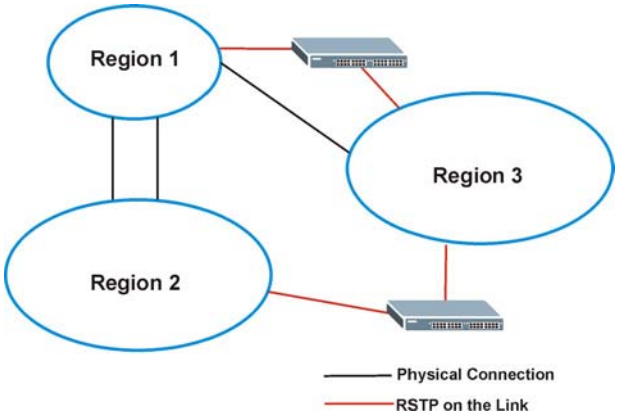
Figure 97 MSTIs in Different Regions



13.11.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

A CIST represents the connectivity of the entire network and it is equivalent to a spanning tree in an STP/RSTP. The CIST is the default MST instance (MSTID 0). Any VLANs that are not members of an MST instance are members of the CIST. In an MSTP-enabled network, there is only one CIST that runs between MST regions and single spanning tree devices. A network may contain multiple MST regions and other network segments running RSTP.

Figure 98 MSTP and Legacy RSTP Network Example



14

Bandwidth Control

14.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.

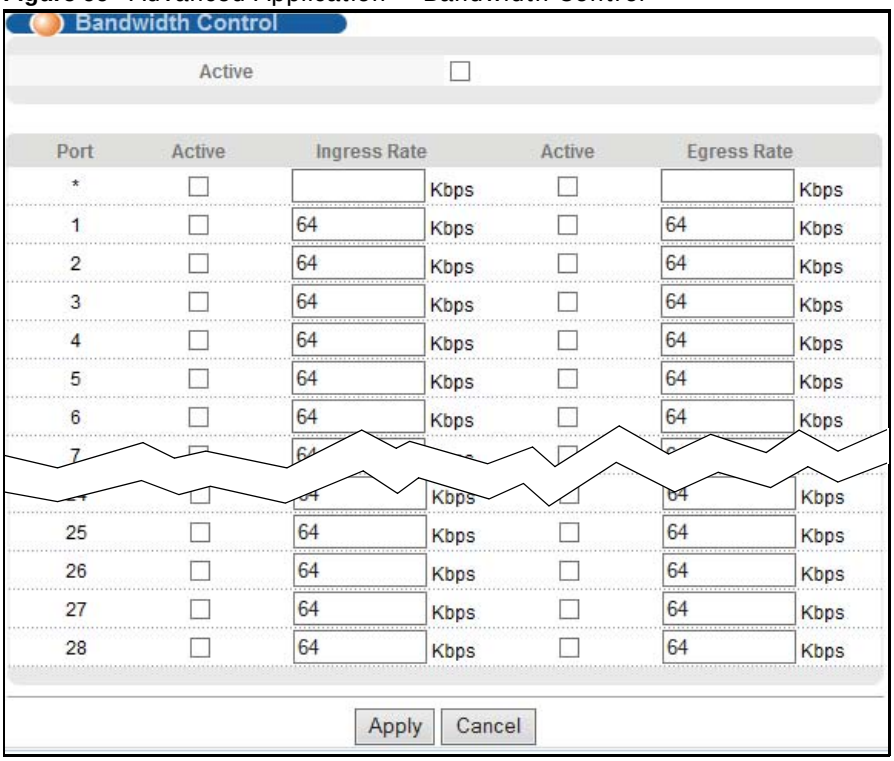
14.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Bandwidth Control** screen (Section 14.2 on page 133) to limit the bandwidth for traffic going through the Switch.

14.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

Figure 99 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 52 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate ingress rate limits on this port.
Ingress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port. Note: Ingress rate bandwidth control applies to layer 2 traffic only.
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

15

Broadcast Storm Control

15.1 Broadcast Storm Control Overview

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

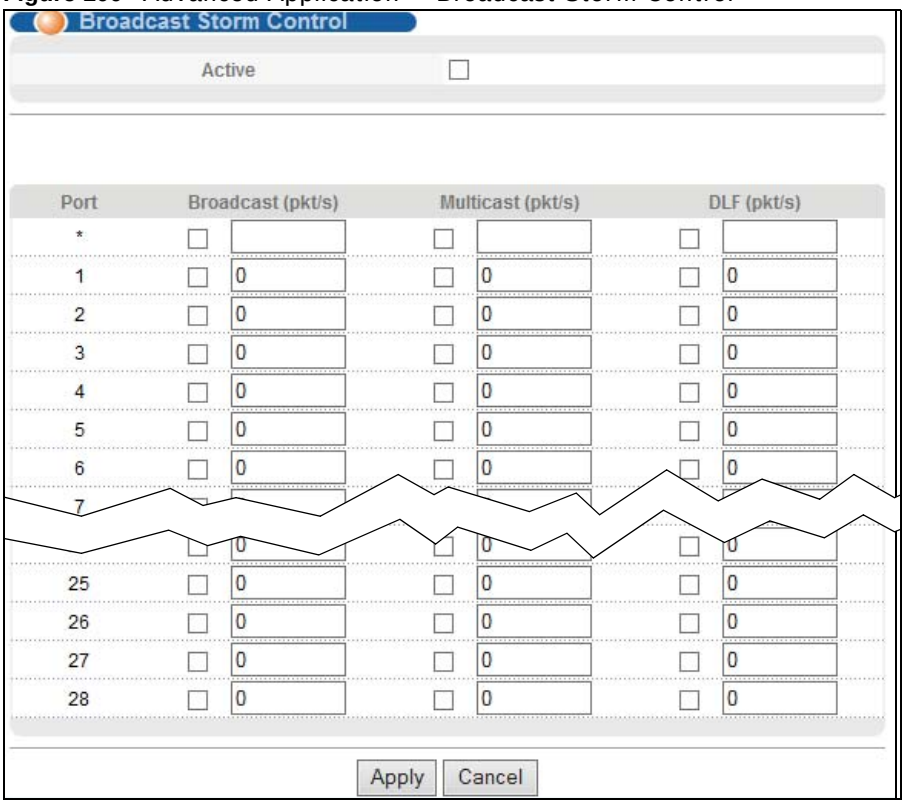
15.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Broadcast Storm Control** screen (Section 15.2 on page 135) to limit the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports.

15.2 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 100 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable traffic storm control on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable this feature.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

16

Mirroring

16.1 Mirroring Overview

This chapter discusses port mirroring setup screens.

Port mirroring allows you to copy a traffic flow to a monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port without interference.

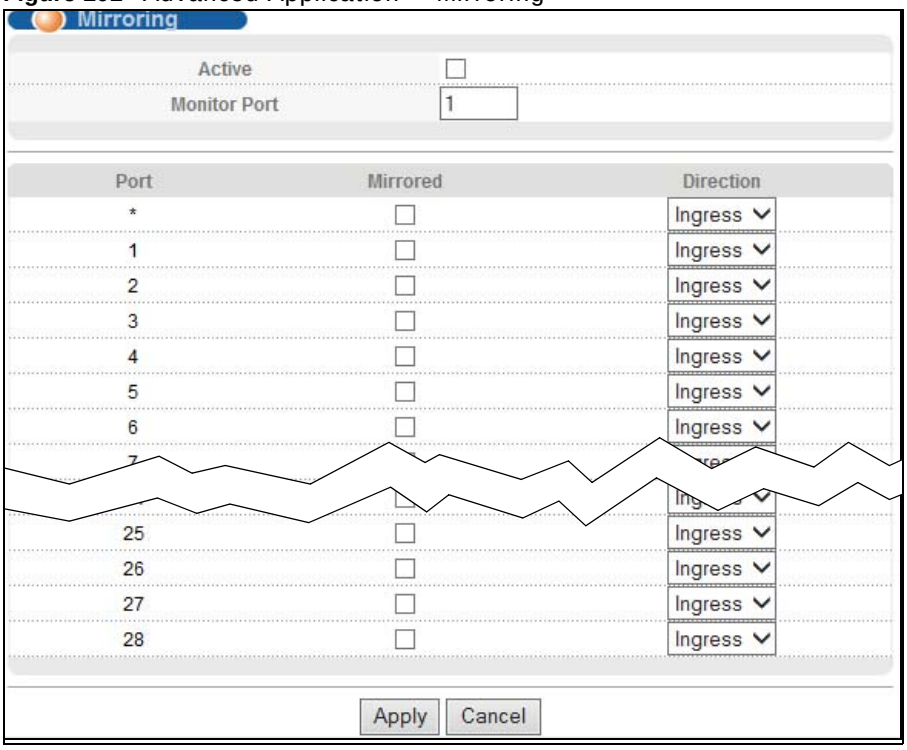
16.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Mirroring** screen (Section 16.2 on page 137) to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

16.2 Port Mirroring Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen. Use this screen to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

Figure 101 Advanced Application > Mirroring



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Advanced Application > Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate port mirroring on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable the feature.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Enter the port number of the monitor port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are **Egress** (outgoing), **Ingress** (incoming) and **Both**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

17

Link Aggregation

17.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link. However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

The beginning port of each trunk group must be physically connected to form a trunk group.

17.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Link Aggregation Status** screen (Section 17.2 on page 140) to view ports you have configured to be in the trunk group, ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in the trunk group and so on.
- Use the **Link Aggregation Setting** screen (Section 17.3 on page 141) to configure to enable static link aggregation.
- Use the **Link Aggregation Control Protocol** screen (Section 17.4 on page 143) to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).

17.1.2 What You Need to Know

The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

Note: In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

See Section 17.5.1 on page 145 for a static port trunking example.

Dynamic Link Aggregation

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The IEEE 802.3ad standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) for dynamically creating and managing trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that

is, if an operational port fails, then one of the “standby” ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information[1]:

Table 55 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

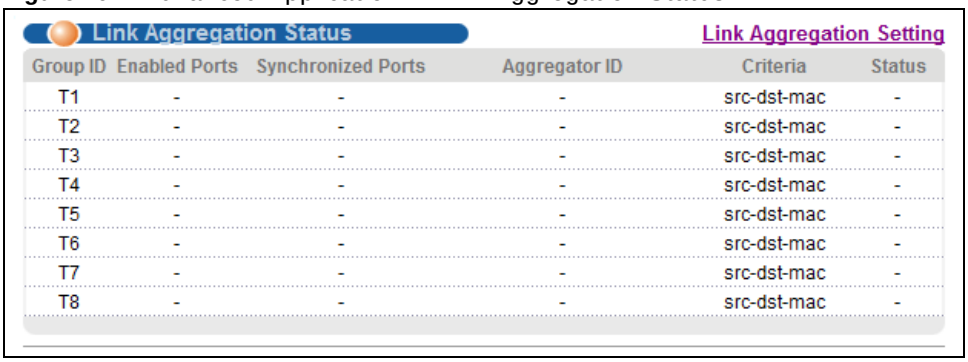
Table 56 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

17.2 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Status** screen displays by default. See Section 17.1 on page 139 for more information.

Figure 102 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status



1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

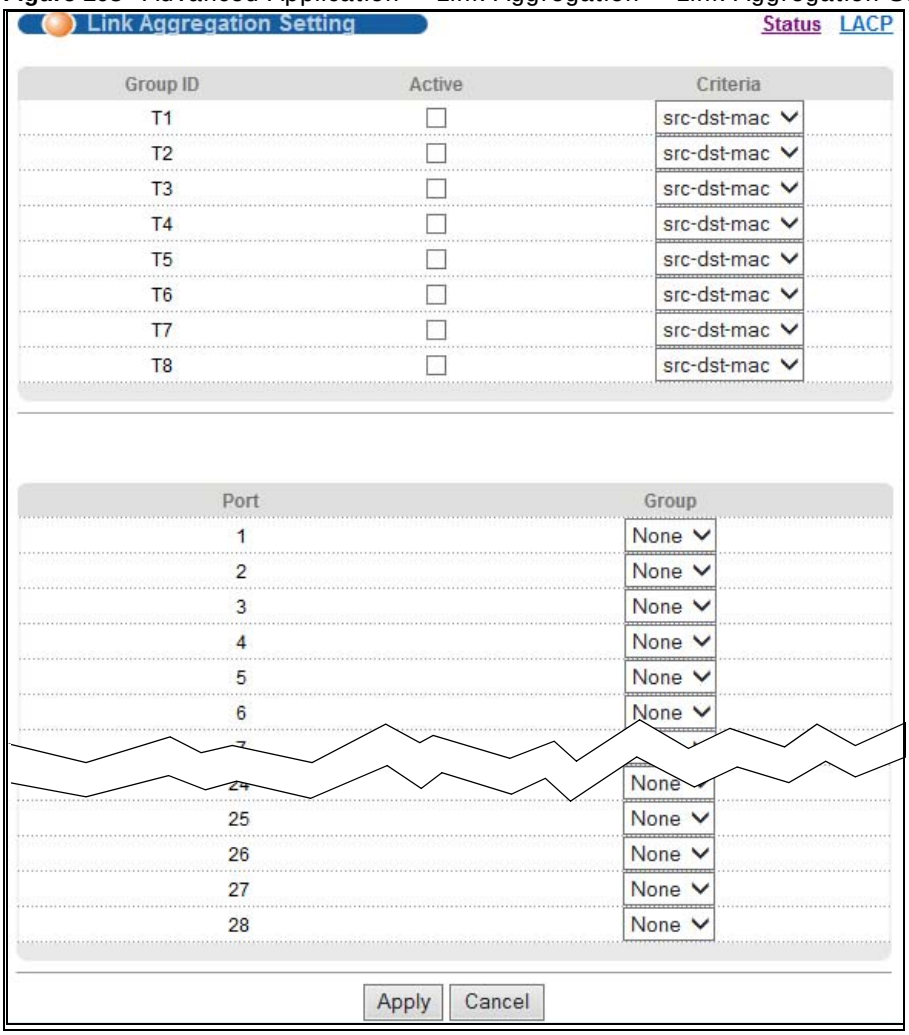
Table 57 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group ID	This field displays the group ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Enabled Ports	These are the ports you have configured in the **Link Aggregation** screen to be in the trunk group. The port number(s) displays only when this trunk group is activated and there is a port belonging to this group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.
Aggregator ID	Link Aggregator ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to Section on page 140 for more information on this field. The ID displays only when there is a port belonging to this trunk group and LACP is also enabled for this group.
Criteria	This shows the outgoing traffic distribution algorithm used in this trunk group. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. **src-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source MAC address. **dst-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address. **src-dst-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses. **src-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source IP address. **dst-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination IP address. **src-dst-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.
Status	This field displays how these ports were added to the trunk group. It displays: • **Static** - if the ports are configured as static members of a trunk group. • **LACP** - if the ports are configured to join a trunk group via LACP.

17.3 Link Aggregation Setting

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting** to display the screen shown next. See Section 17.1 on page 139 for more information on link aggregation.

Figure 103 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Setting	This is the only screen you need to configure to enable static link aggregation.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.

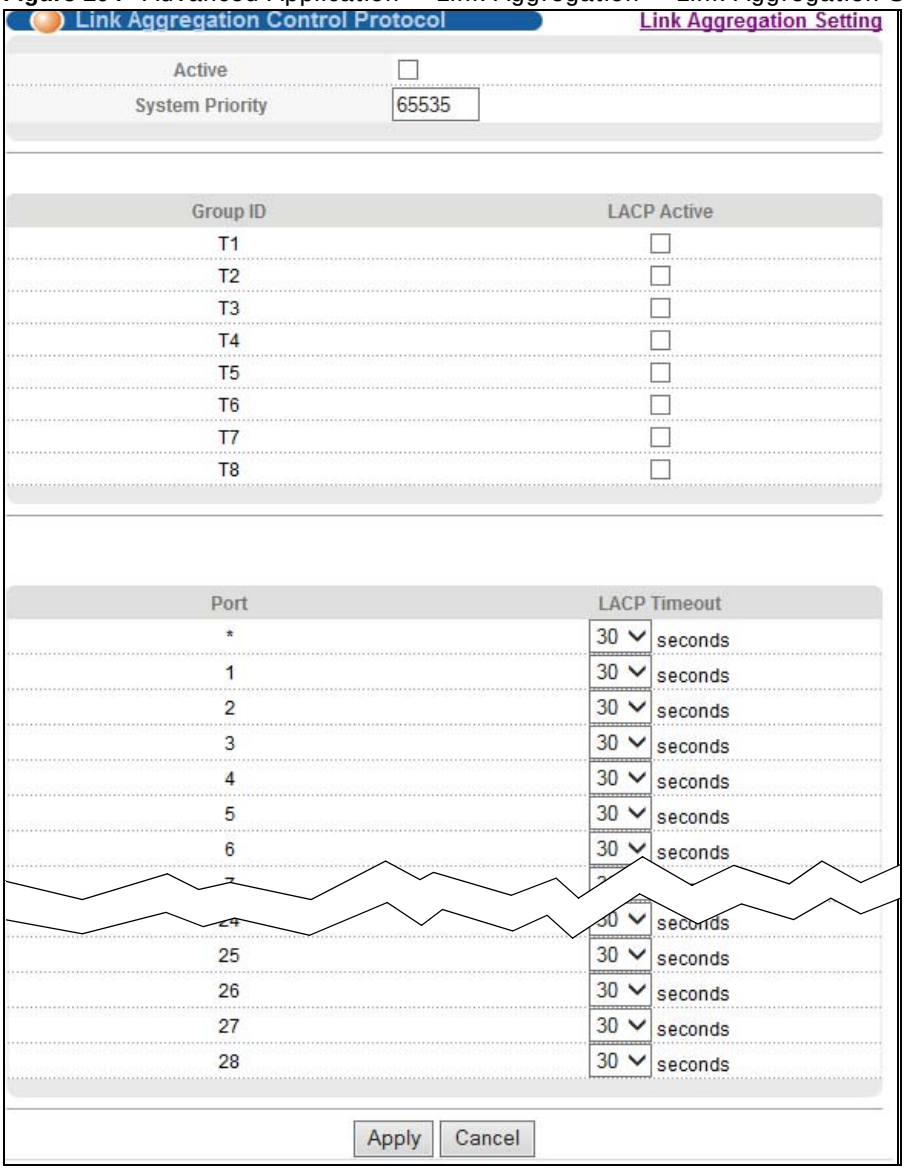
Table 58 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Criteria	Select the outgoing traffic distribution type. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. By default, the Switch uses the **src-dst-mac** distribution type. If the Switch is behind a router, the packet's destination or source MAC address will be changed. In this case, set the Switch to distribute traffic based on its IP address to make sure port trunking can work properly. Select **src-mac** to distribute traffic based on the packet's source MAC address. Select **dst-mac** to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address. Select **src-dst-mac** to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses. Select **src-ip** to distribute traffic based on the packet's source IP address. Select **dst-ip** to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination IP address. Select **src-dst-ip** to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs. Note: When you enable the port security feature on the Switch and configure port security settings for a port, you cannot include the port in an active trunk group.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.4 Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting** > **LACP** to display the screen shown next. See Section on page 139 for more information on dynamic link aggregation.

Figure 104 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	Note: Do not configure this screen unless you want to enable dynamic link aggregation.
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP “server”. The LACP “server” controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LACP Active	Select this option to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be “down” and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.5 Technical Reference

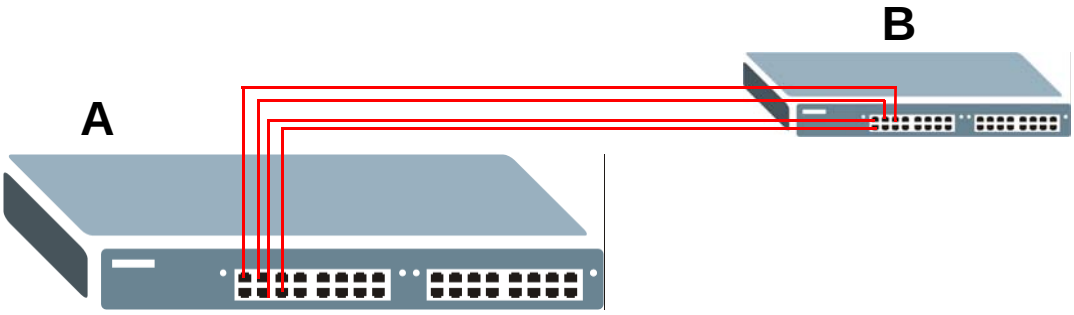
This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

17.5.1 Static Trunking Example

This example shows you how to create a static port trunk group for ports 2-5.

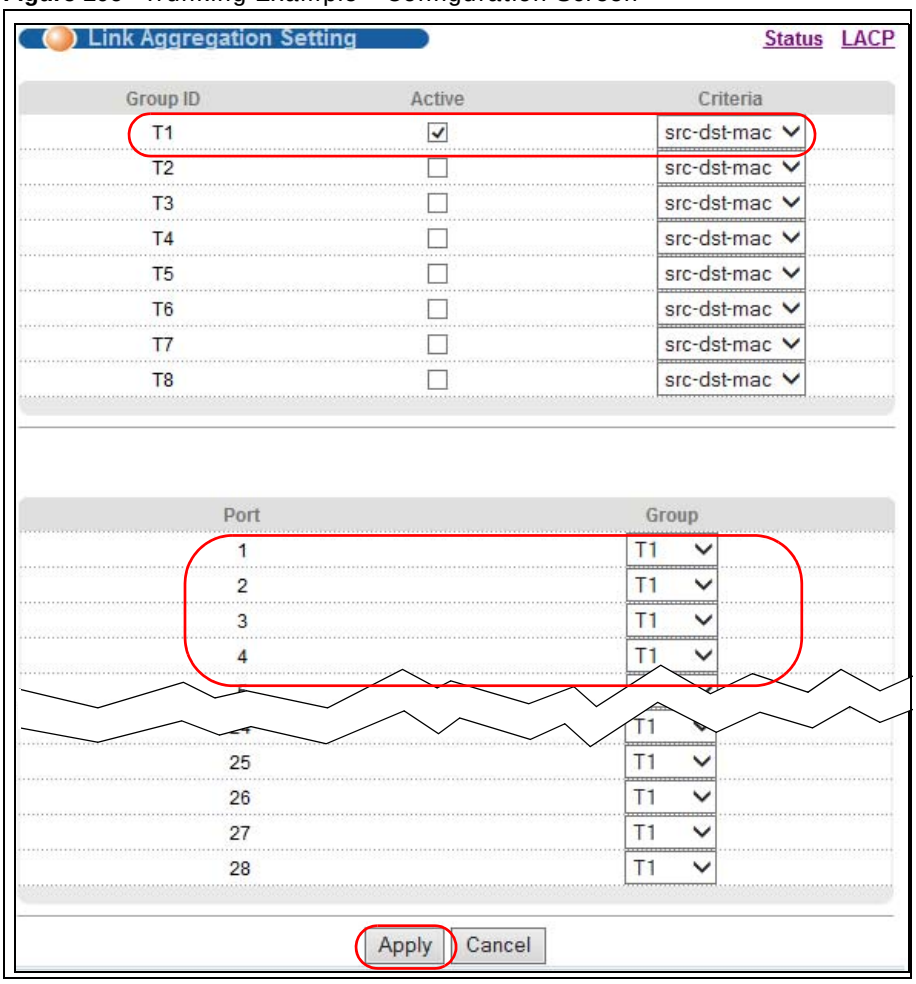
1 **Make your physical connections** - make sure that the ports that you want to belong to the trunk group are connected to the same destination. The following figure shows ports 2-5 on switch **A** connected to switch **B**.

Figure 105 Trunking Example - Physical Connections



2 **Configure static trunking** - Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting**. In this screen activate trunk group **T1**, select the traffic distribution algorithm used by this group and select the ports that should belong to this group as shown in the figure below. Click **Apply** when you are done.

Figure 106 Trunking Example - Configuration Screen



Your trunk group 1 (**T1**) configuration is now complete.

18

Port Authentication

18.1 Port Authentication Overview

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1x authentication method.

Port authentication is a way to validate access to ports on the Switch to clients based on an external server (authentication server). The Switch supports the following method for port authentication:

- **IEEE 802.1x**[2] - An authentication server validates access to a port based on a username and password provided by the user.

18.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Port Authentication** screen (Section 18.2 on page 148) to check if IEEE 802.1x port authentication is activated.
- Use the **802.1x** screen (Section 18.3 on page 148) to activate IEEE 802.1x security.

18.1.2 What You Need to Know

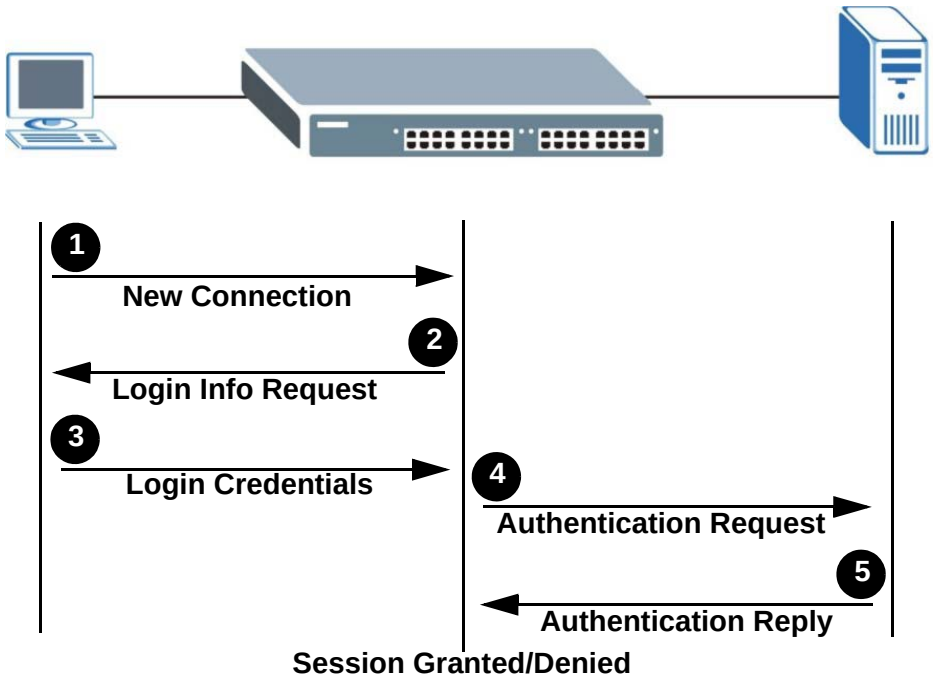
IEEE 802.1x authentication uses the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) protocol to validate users. See Section on page 193 for more information on configuring your RADIUS server settings.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication

The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to a IEEE 802.1x authentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password. When the client provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

2. At the time of writing, IEEE 802.1x is not supported by all operating systems. See your operating system documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

Figure 107 IEEE 802.1x Authentication Process



18.2 Port Authentication Configuration

To enable port authentication, first activate the port authentication method (both on the Switch and the port(s)) then configure the RADIUS server settings in the **Auth and Acct > Radius Server Setup** screen.

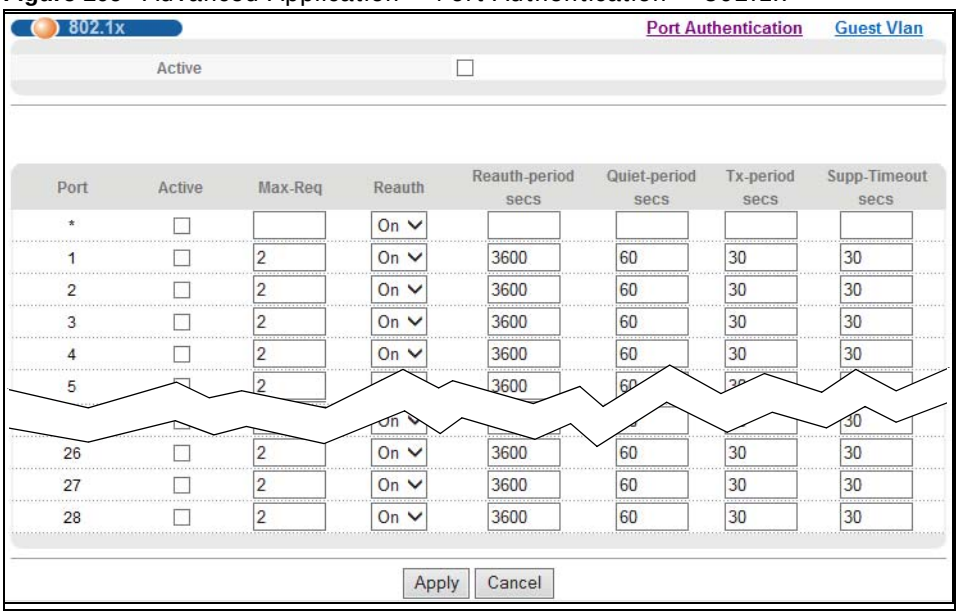
Click **Advanced Application** > **Port Authentication** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 108 Advanced Application > Port Authentication

18.3 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security

Use this screen to activate IEEE 802.1x security. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 109 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Max-Req	Specify the number of times the Switch tries to authenticate client(s) before sending unresponsive ports to the Guest VLAN. This is set to 2 by default. That is, the Switch attempts to authenticate a client twice. If the client does not respond to the first authentication request, the Switch tries again. If the client still does not respond to the second request, the Switch sends the client to the Guest VLAN. The client needs to send a new request to be authenticated by the Switch again.
Reauth	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauth-period secs	Specify the length of time required to pass before a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Quiet-period secs	Specify the number of seconds the port remains in the HELD state and rejects further authentication requests from the connected client after a failed authentication exchange.
Tx-period secs	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response before re-sending an identity request to the client.
Supp-Timeout secs	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response to a challenge request before sending another request.

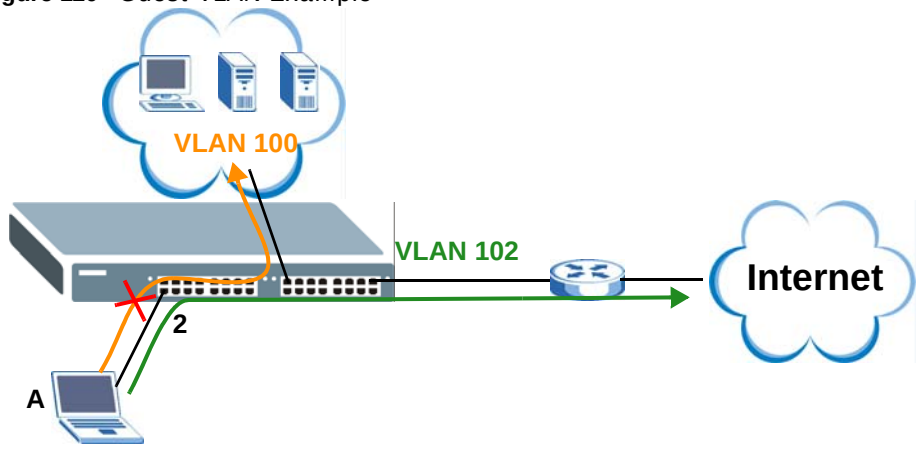
Table 60 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

18.3.1 Guest VLAN

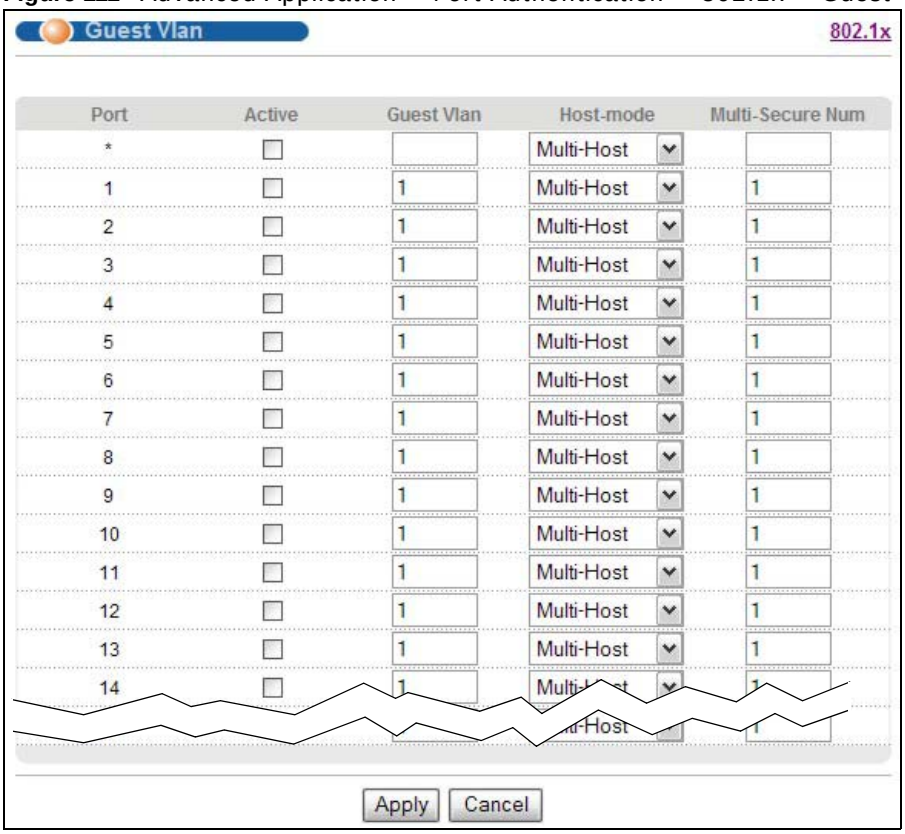
When 802.1x port authentication is enabled on the Switch and its ports, clients that do not have the correct credentials are blocked from using the port(s). You can configure your Switch to have one VLAN that acts as a guest VLAN. If you enable the guest VLAN (**102** in the example) on a port (**2** in the example), the user (**A** in the example) that is not IEEE 802.1x capable or fails to enter the correct username and password can still access the port, but traffic from the user is forwarded to the guest VLAN. That is, unauthenticated users can have access to limited network resources in the same guest VLAN, such as the Internet. The rights granted to the Guest VLAN depends on how the network administrator configures switches or routers with the guest network feature.

Figure 110 Guest VLAN Example



Use this screen to enable and assign a guest VLAN to a port. In the **Port Authentication > 802.1x** screen click **Guest Vlan** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 111 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this checkbox to enable the guest VLAN feature on this port. Clients that fail authentication are placed in the guest VLAN and can receive limited services.
Guest Vlan	A guest VLAN is a pre-configured VLAN on the Switch that allows non-authenticated users to access limited network resources through the Switch. You must also enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on the Switch and the associated ports. Enter the number that identifies the guest VLAN. Make sure this is a VLAN recognized in your network.

Table 61 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host-mode	Specify how the Switch authenticates users when more than one user connect to the port (using a hub). Select **Multi-Host** to authenticate only the first user that connects to this port. If the first user enters the correct credential, any other users are allowed to access the port without authentication. If the first user fails to enter the correct credential, they are all put in the guest VLAN. Once the first user who did authentication logs out or disconnects from the port, rest of the users are blocked until a user does the authentication process again. Select **Multi-Secure** to authenticate each user that connects to this port.
Multi-Secure Num	If you set **Host-mode** to **Multi-Secure**, specify the maximum number of users that the Switch will authenticate on this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

19

Port Security

19.1 Port Security Overview

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch. The Switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable port security together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts. By default, MAC address learning is still enabled even though the port security is not activated.

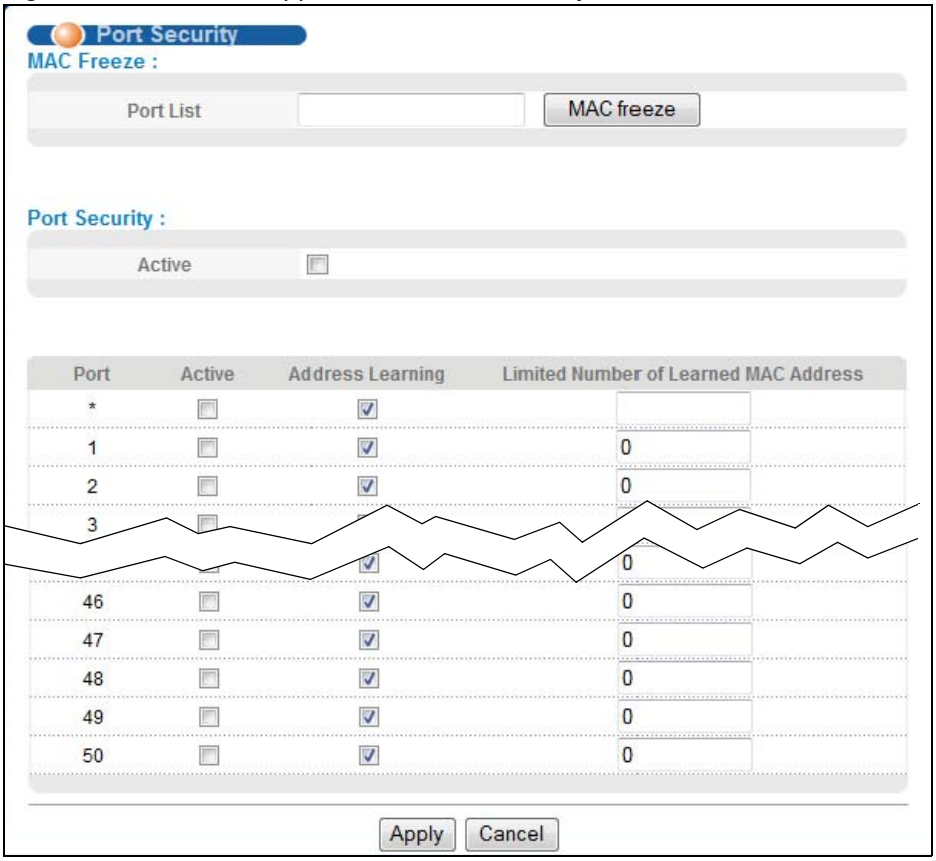
19.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Port Security** screen (Section 19.2 on page 153) to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. You can also enable the port security feature on a port.

19.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 112 Advanced Application > Port Security



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Advanced Application > Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. After you click **MAC freeze**, all previously learned MAC addresses on the specified port(s) will become static MAC addresses and display in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen.
MAC freeze	Click **MAC freeze** to have the Switch automatically select the **Active** check boxes and clear the **Address Learning** check boxes only for the ports specified in the **Port list**.
Active	Select this option to enable port security on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The Switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped. Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The Switch forwards all packets on this port.
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.

Table 62 Advanced Application > Port Security (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device would have to wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses aged out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the **Switch Setup** screen. The valid range is from “0” to “16384”. “0” means this feature is disabled.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20

Classifier

20.1 Overview

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the Switch. It also discusses Quality of Service (QoS) and classifier concepts as employed by the Switch.

20.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Classifier** screen (Section 20.2 on page 156) to define the classifiers and view a summary of the classifier configuration. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules.

20.1.2 What You Need to Know

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the Switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

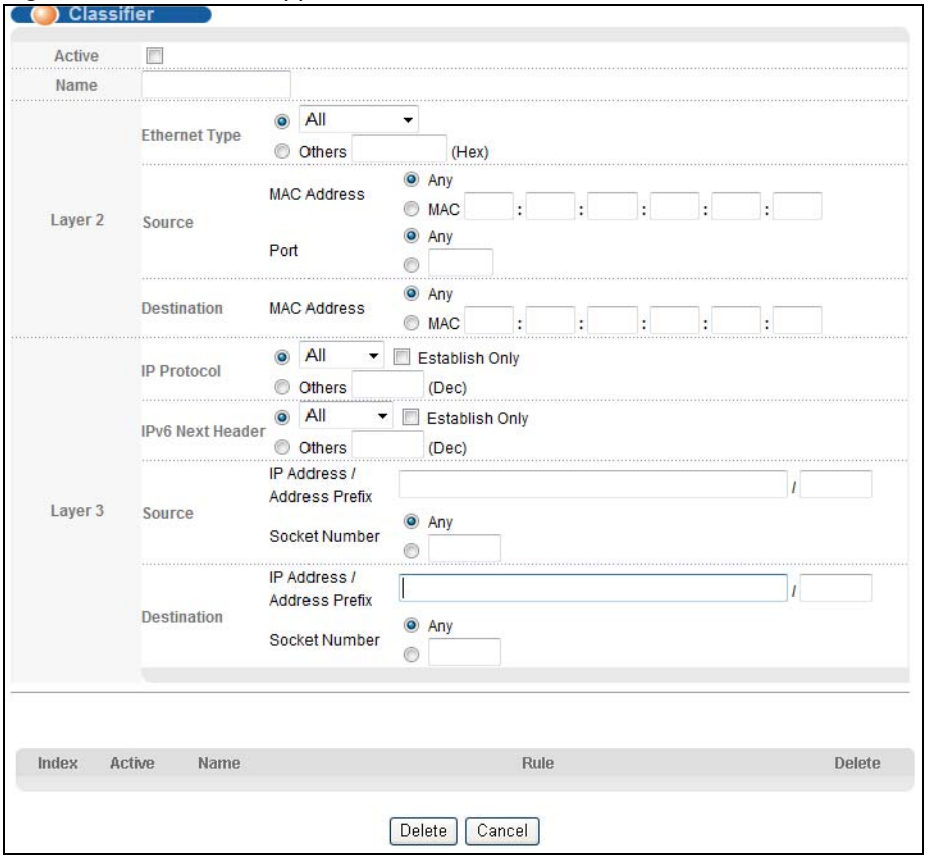
1. Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
2. Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed on a classified traffic flow (refer to Chapter 21 on page 161 to configure policy rules).

20.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to Chapter 21 on page 161.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 113 Advanced Application > Classifier



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Advanced Application > Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.
Layer 2 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 2 classifier.	
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select **Other** and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to Table 65 on page 159 for information.
Source	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Port	Type the port number to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports (**Any**).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 3 classifier.	

Table 63 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select **Other** and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to Table 66 on page 159 for more information. You may select **Establish Only** for **TCP** protocol type. This means that the Switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
IPv6 Next Header	Select an IPv6 protocol type or select **Other** and enter an 8-bit next header in the IPv6 packet. The Next Header field is similar to the IPv4 Protocol field. The IPv6 protocol number ranges from 1 to 255. You may select **Establish Only** for **TCP** protocol type. This means that the Switch will identify packets that initiate or acknowledge (establish) TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. A subnet mask can be represented in a 32-bit notation. For example, the subnet mask “255.255.255.0” can be represented as “11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000”, and counting up the number of ones in this case results in 24.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Refer to Table 67 on page 160 for more information.
Destination	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Refer to Table 67 on page 160 for more information.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

20.2.1 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Note: When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over lower layer rule.

Figure 114 Advanced Application > Classifier: Summary Table

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

Table 65 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Numbers

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

In the Internet Protocol there is a field, called "Protocol", to identify the next level protocol. The following table shows some common protocol types and the corresponding protocol number. Refer to http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers for a complete list.

Table 66 Common IP Protocol Types and Protocol Numbers

PROTOCOL TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
ICMP	1
TCP	6
UDP	17
EGP	8
L2TP	115

Some of the most common TCP and UDP port numbers are:

Table 67 Common TCP and UDP Port Numbers

PROTOCOL NAME	TCP/UDP PORT NUMBER
FTP	21
Telnet	23
SMTP	25
DNS	53
HTTP	80
POP3	110

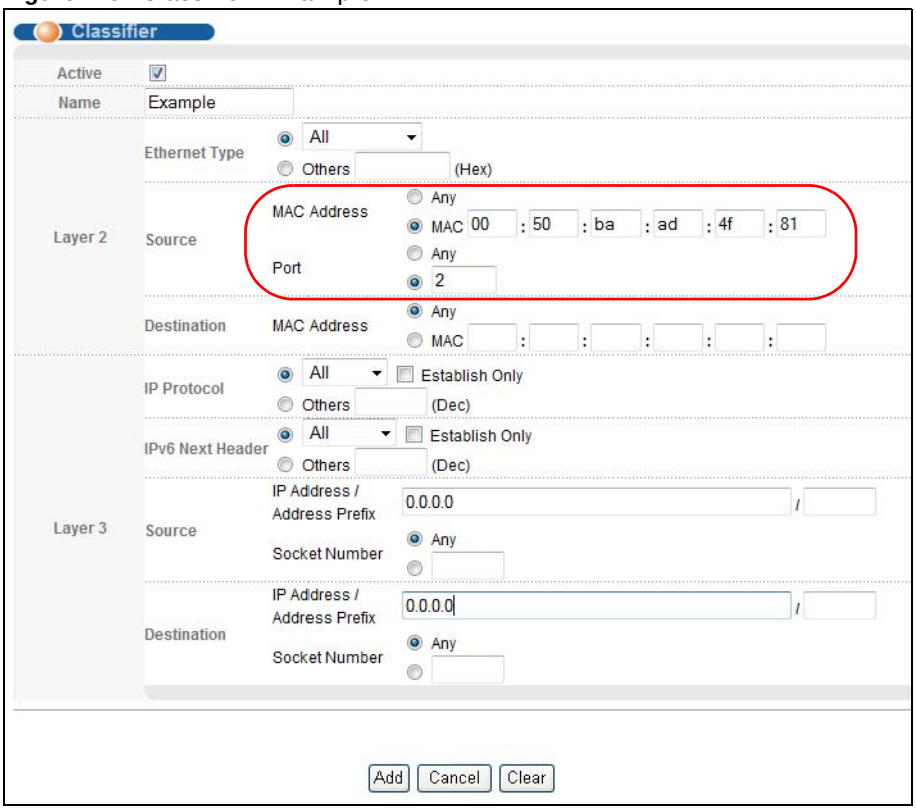
See Appendix B on page 365 for information on commonly used port numbers.

20.3 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example where you configure a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy (in the **Policy** screen) to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow.

Figure 115 Classifier: Example



21

Policy Rule

21.1 Policy Rules Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to Chapter 20 on page 156 for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

21.1.1 What You Can Do

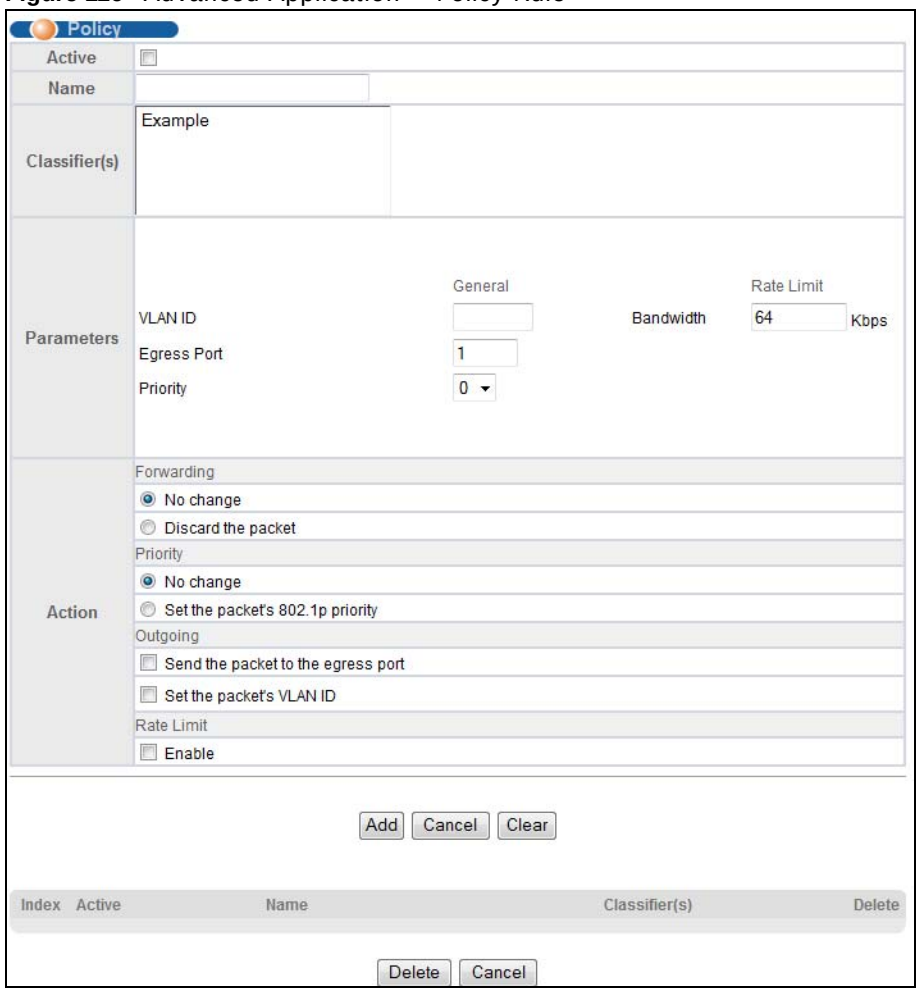
Use the **Policy** screen (Section 21.2 on page 161) to enable the policy and display the active classifier(s) you configure in the **Classifier** screen.

21.2 Configuring Policy Rules

You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to Section 20.2 on page 156 for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications** > **Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 116 Advanced Application > Policy Rule



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Advanced Application > Policy Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the **Classifier** screen. Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the **Action** field.	
General	
VLAN ID	Specify a VLAN ID number.
Egress Port	Type the number of an outgoing port.
Priority	Specify a priority level.
Rate Limit	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow. Traffic that exceeds the maximum bandwidth allocated (in cases where the network is congested) is dropped.

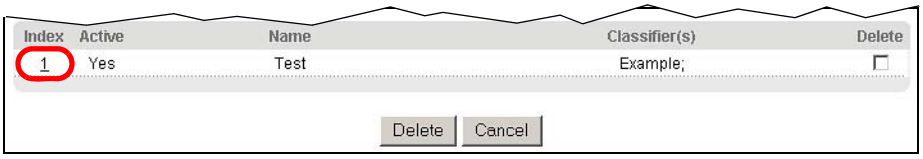
Table 68 Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobit per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 64 and 1000000.
Action Specify the action(s) the Switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow. Note: You can specify only one action (pair) in a policy rule. To have the Switch take multiple actions on the same traffic flow, you need to define multiple classifiers with the same criteria and apply different policy rules. Say you have several classifiers that identify the same traffic flow and you specify a different policy rule for each. If their policy actions conflict (**Discard the packet**, **Send the packet to the egress port** and **Rate Limit**), the Switch only applies the policy rules with the **Discard the packet** and **Send the packet to the egress port** actions depending on the classifier names. The longer the classifier name, the higher the classifier priority. If two classifier names are the same length, the bigger the character, the higher the classifier priority. The lowercase letters (such as a and b) have higher priority than the capitals (such as A and B) in the classifier name. For example, the classifier with the name of class 2, class a or class B takes priority over the classifier with the name of class 1 or class A. Let's say you set two classifiers (Class 1 and Class 2) and both identify all traffic from MAC address 11:22:33:44:55:66 on port 3. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to drop the packets, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to forward the packets to the egress port, the Switch will forward the packets. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to drop the packets, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to enable bandwidth limitation, the Switch will discard the packets immediately. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to forward the packets to the egress port, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to enable bandwidth limitation, the Switch will forward the packets.	
Forwarding	Select **No change** to forward the packets. Select **Discard the packet** to drop the packets.
Priority	Select **No change** to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select **Set the packet's 802.1 priority** to replace the packet's 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the Priority field.
Outgoing	Select **Send the packet to the egress port** to send the packet to the egress port. Select **Set the packet's VLAN ID** to replace the VLAN ID of the packets with the value you configure in the **VLAN ID** field.
Rate Limit	Select **Enable** to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s).
Add	Click **Add** to inset the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when policy is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the name you have assigned to this policy.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Delete	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.
Cancel	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.

21.2.1 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

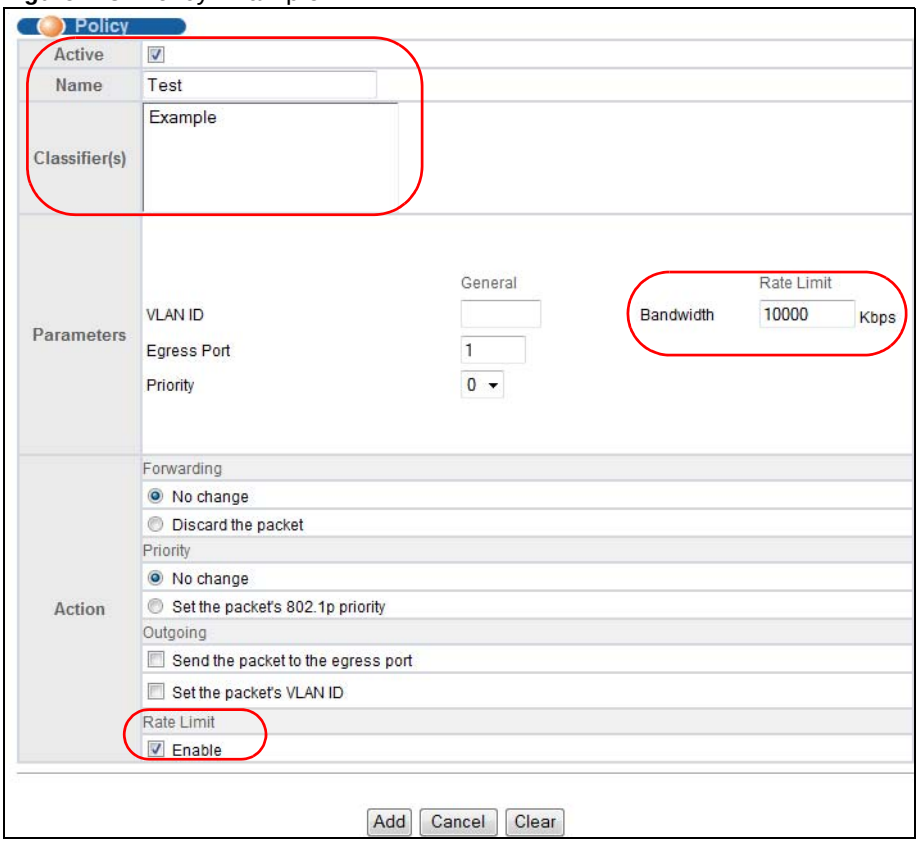
Figure 117 Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table



21.3 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to Section 20.3 on page 160).

Figure 118 Policy Example



22

Queuing Method

22.1 Queuing Method Overview

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment** in **Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority** in **Port Setup** for related information.

22.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Queueing Method** screen (Section 22.2 on page 166) set priorities for the queues of the Switch. This distributes bandwidth across the different traffic queues.

22.1.2 What You Need to Know

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

Strictly Priority Queuing

Strictly Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the Switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SPQ does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (portion) (the number you configure in the Weight field) when there is traffic congestion. WFQ is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is a given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given

an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

22.2 Configuring Queuing

Use this screen to set priorities for the queues of the Switch. This distributes bandwidth across the different traffic queues.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

Figure 119 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Method	Select **SPQ** (Strictly Priority Queuing), **WFQ** (Weighted Fair Queuing) or **WRR** (Weighted Round Robin). Strictly Priority Queuing services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest. Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth portion (weight) (the number you configure in the **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. Weighted Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.
Weight	When you select **WFQ** or **WRR** enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Hybrid-SPQ Lowest-Queue	This field is applicable only when you select **WFQ** or **WRR**. Select a queue (**Q0** to **Q7**) to have the Switch use **SPQ** to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue for the port. For example, if you select **Q5**, the Switch services traffic on **Q5**, **Q6** and **Q7** using **SPQ**. Select **None** to always use **WFQ** or **WRR** for the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23

Multicast

23.1 Multicast Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112, RFC 2236 and RFC 3376 for information on IGMP versions 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

23.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Multicast Setup** screen (Section 23.2 on page 172) to enable IGMP snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
- Use the **IPv4 Multicast Status** screen (Section 23.3 on page 172) to view multicast group information.
- Use the **IPv6 Multicast Status** screen (Section 23.5 on page 178) to view multicast group information,
- Use the **MLD Snooping-proxy** screen (Section 23.5.1 on page 179) to enable the upstream port to report group changes to a connected multicast router and forward MLD messages to other upstream ports. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting
- Use the **MVR** screens (Section 23.6 on page 186) to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN.

23.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on Multicasting that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA website for more information).

IGMP Snooping

A Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing

through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

IGMP Snooping and VLANs

The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first 16 VLANs that send IGMP packets. This is referred to as auto mode. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

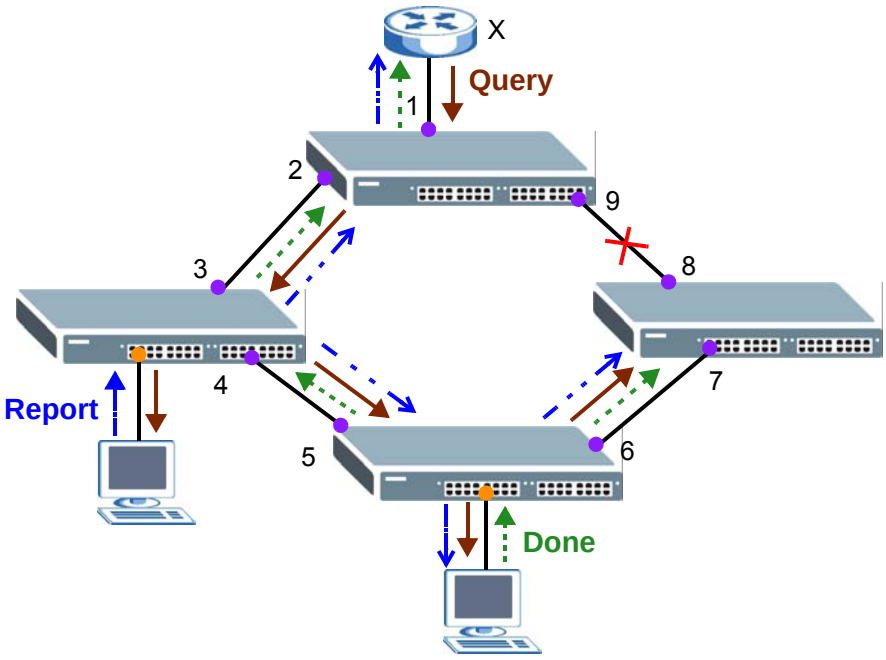
MLD Snooping-proxy

MLD snooping-proxy is a ZyXEL-proprietary feature. IPv6 MLD proxy allows only one upstream interface on a switch, while MLD snooping-proxy supports more than one upstream port on a switch. The upstream port in MLD snooping-proxy can report group changes to a connected multicast router and forward MLD messages to other upstream ports. This helps especially when you want to have a network that uses STP to provide backup links between switches and also performs MLD snooping and proxy functions. MLD snooping-proxy, like MLD proxy, can minimize MLD control messages and allow better network performance.

In MLD snooping-proxy, if one upstream port is learned via snooping, all other upstream ports on the same device will be added to the same group. If one upstream port requests to leave a group, all other upstream ports on the same device will also be removed from the group.

In the following MLD snooping-proxy example, all connected upstream ports (1 ~7) are treated as one interface. The connection between ports 8 and 9 is blocked by STP to break the loop. If there is

one query from a router (**X**) or MLD Done or Report message from any upstream port, it will be broadcast to all connected upstream ports.



MLD Messages

A multicast router or switch periodically sends general queries to MLD hosts to update the multicast forwarding table. When an MLD host wants to join a multicast group, it sends an MLD Report message for that address.

An MLD Done message is similar to an IGMP Leave message. When an MLD host wants to leave a multicast group, it can send a Done message to the router or switch. If the leave mode is not set to **Immediate**, the router or switch sends a group-specific query to the port on which the Done message is received to determine if other devices connected to this port should remain in the group.

MVR Overview

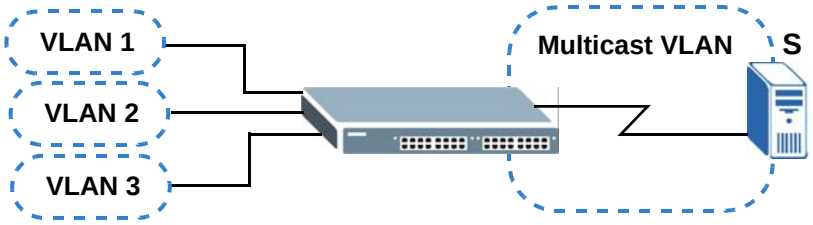
Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across an Ethernet ring-based service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1**, **2** and **3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the Switch and **S**.

Figure 120 MVR Network Example



Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the Switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast traffic. Once configured, the Switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

MVR Modes

You can set your Switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the Switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the Switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

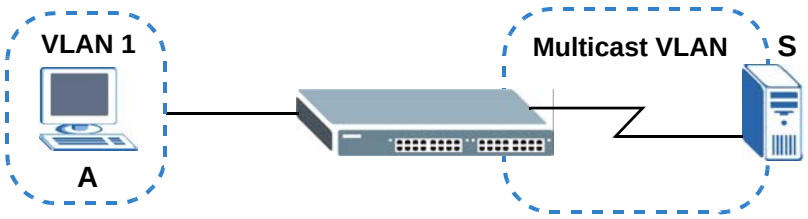
How MVR Works

The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the Switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the Switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the Switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the Switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the Switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the Switch to leave the multicast group. The Switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, an uplink port on the Switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the Switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.

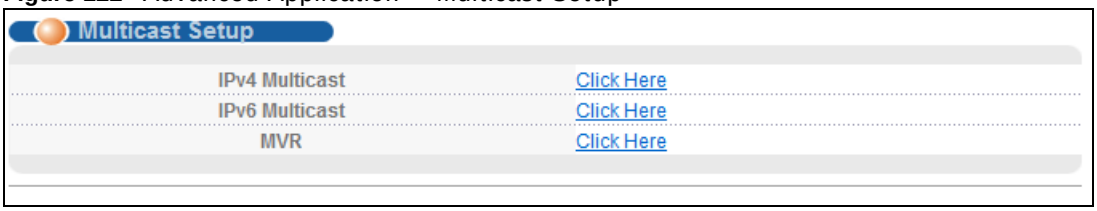
Figure 121 MVR Multicast Television Example



23.2 Multicast Setup

Use this screen to configure IGMP for IPv4 or MLD for IPv6 and set up multicast VLANs. Click **Advanced Application** > **Multicast** in the navigation panel.

Figure 122 Advanced Application > Multicast Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 Advanced Application > Multicast Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4 Multicast	Click the link to open screens where you can configure IGMP snooping and IGMP filtering for IPv4.
IPv6 Multicast	Click the link to open screens where you can configure MLD snooping and MLD filtering for IPv6.
MVR	Click the link to open screens where you can create multicast VLANs.

23.3 IPv4 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the IPv4 multicast group information. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 123 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

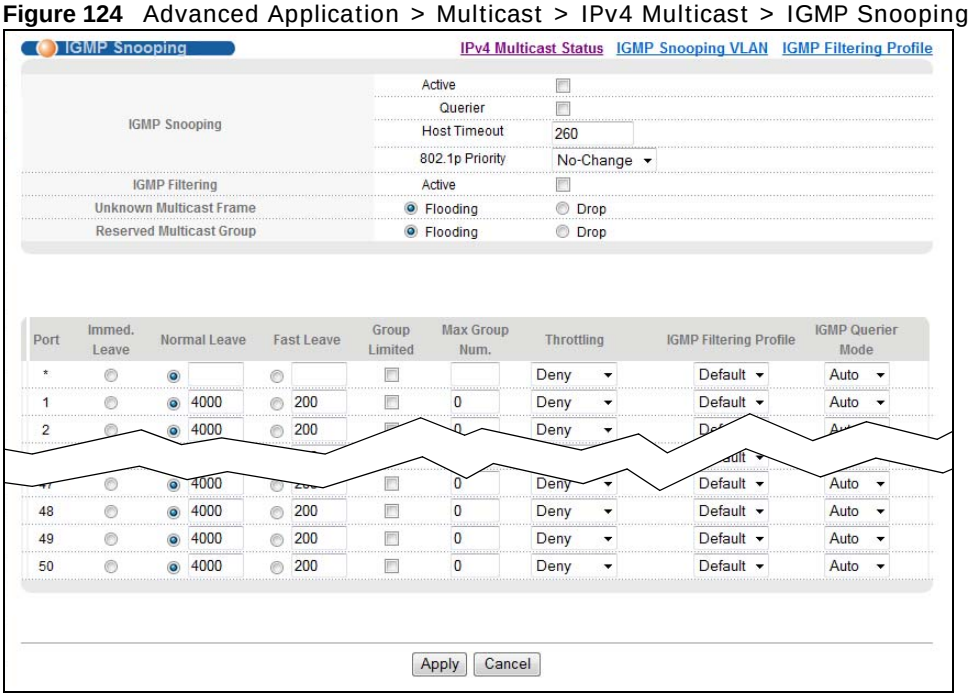
Table 71 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

23.3.1 IGMP Snooping

Click the **IGMP Snooping** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** screen to display the screen as shown. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 124 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Use these settings to configure IGMP snooping.
Active	Select **Active** to enable IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
Querier	Select this option to allow the Switch to send IGMP General Query messages to the VLANs with the multicast hosts attached.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16 711 450) in seconds that elapses before the Switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select **No-Change** to not replace the priority.

Table 72 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Filtering	Select **Active** to enable IGMP filtering to control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. If you enable IGMP filtering, you must create and assign IGMP filtering profiles for the ports that you want to allow to join multicast groups.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Reserved Multicast Group	The IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255 are reserved for multicasting on the local network only. For example, 224.0.0.1 is for all hosts on a local network segment and 224.0.0.9 is used to send RIP routing information to all RIP v2 routers on the same network segment. A multicast router will not forward a packet with the destination IP address within this range to other networks. See the IANA web site for more information. The layer-2 multicast MAC addresses used by Cisco layer-2 protocols, 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CC and 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CD, are also included in this group. Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives a frame with a reserved multicast address. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Immed. Leave	Select this option to set the Switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.
Normal Leave	Enter an IGMP normal leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in miliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port. In normal leave mode, when the Switch receives an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, it forwards the message to the multicast router. The multicast router then sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. The Switch forwards the query message to all hosts connected to the port and waits for IGMP reports from hosts to update the forwarding table. This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.
Fast Leave	Enter an IGMP fast leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in miliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port. In fast leave mode, right after receiving an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Switch itself sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. This helps speed up the leave process. This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.

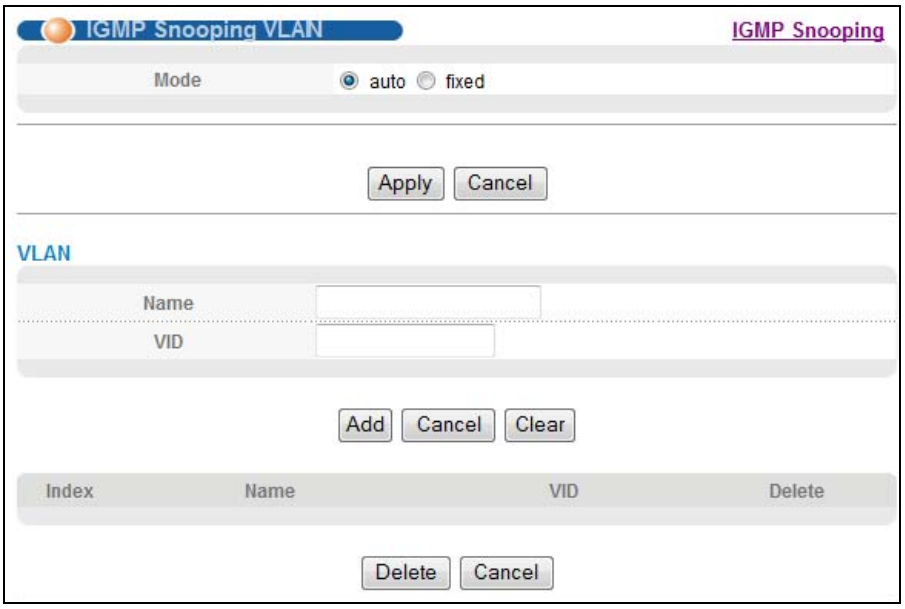
Table 72 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Throttling	IGMP throttling controls how the Switch deals with the IGMP reports when the maximum number of the IGMP groups a port can join is reached. Select **Deny** to drop any new IGMP join report received on this port until an existing multicast forwarding table entry is aged out. Select **Replace** to replace an existing entry in the multicast forwarding table with the new IGMP report(s) received on this port.
IGMP Filtering Profile	Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select **Default** to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group. You can create IGMP filtering profiles in the **Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile** screen.
IGMP Querier Mode	The Switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port. Select **Auto** to have the Switch use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets. Select **Fixed** to have the Switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port. Select **Edge** to stop the Switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The Switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.4 IGMP Snooping VLAN

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **IGMP Snooping** link and then the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** link to display the screen as shown. See Section on page 169 for more information on IGMP Snooping VLAN.

Figure 125 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select **auto** to have the Switch learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically. Select **fixed** to have the Switch only learn multicast group membership information of the VLAN(s) that you specify below. In either **auto** or **fixed** mode, the Switch can learn up to 16 VLANs (including up to five VLANs you configured in the **MVR** screen). For example, if you have configured one multicast VLAN in the **MVR** screen, you can only specify up to 15 VLANs in this screen. The Switch drops any IGMP control messages which do not belong to these 16 VLANs. You must also enable IGMP snooping in the **Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping** screen first.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	Use this section of the screen to add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of the VLAN for identification purposes.
VID	Enter the ID of a static VLAN; the valid range is between 1 and 4094. You cannot configure the same VLAN ID as in the **MVR** screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

Table 73 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping VLAN (continued)

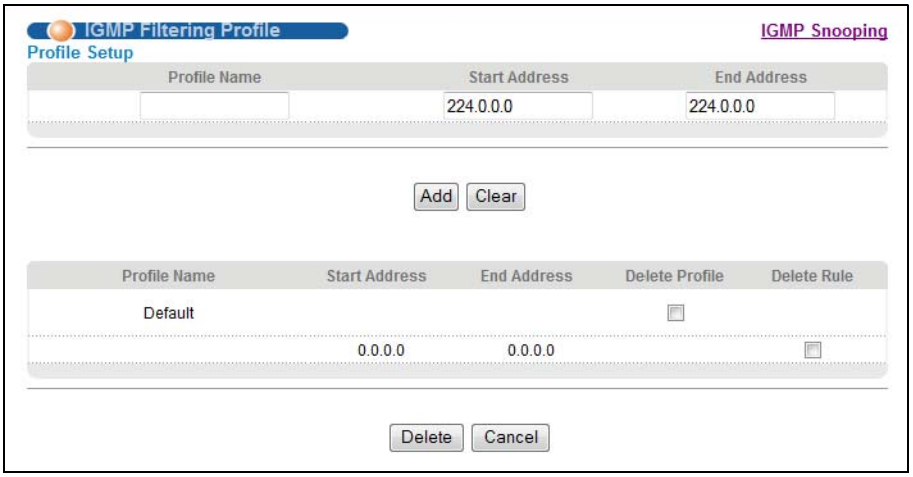
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the IGMP snooping VLAN entry in the table. Click on an index number to view more details or change the settings.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

23.4.1 IGMP Filtering Profile

An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Switch are able to join. A profile contains a range of multicast IP addresses which you want clients to be able to join. Profiles are assigned to ports (in the **IGMP Snooping** screen). Clients connected to those ports are then able to join the multicast groups specified in the profile. Each port can be assigned a single profile. A profile can be assigned to multiple ports.

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **IGMP Snooping** link and then the **IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 126 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.

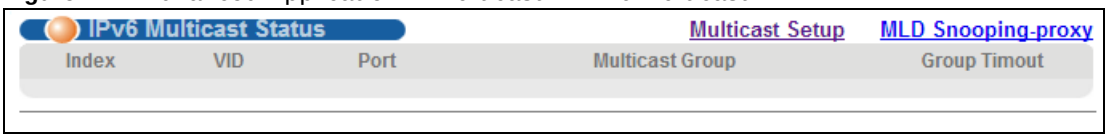
Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv4 Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the **Start Address** and **End Address** fields.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Profile** column, then click the **Delete** button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Rule** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete Profile**/**Delete Rule** check boxes.

23.5 IPv6 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the IPv6 multicast group information. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 127 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

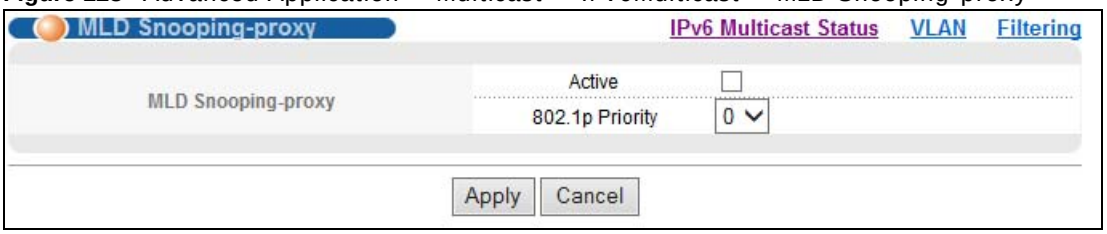
Table 74 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.
Group Timeout	This field displays the time (in seconds) that elapses before the Switch removes a MLD group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.

23.5.1 MLD Snooping-proxy

Click the **MLD Snooping-proxy** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast** screen to display the screen as shown. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 128 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

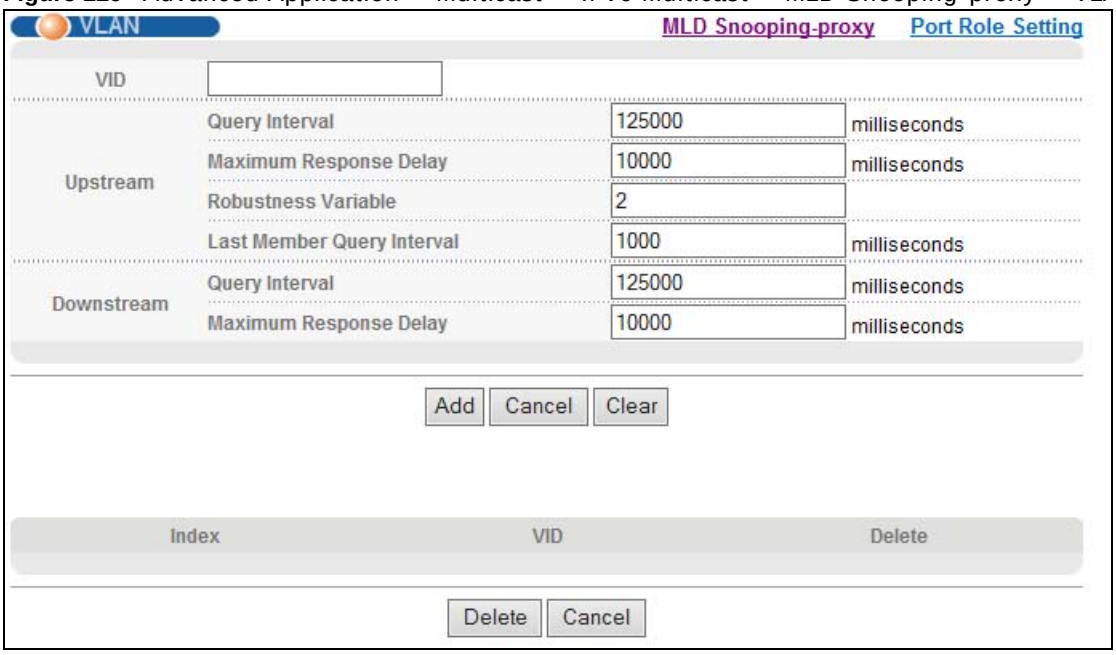
Table 75 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MLD Snooping-proxy	Use these settings to configure MLD snooping-proxy.
Active	Select Active to enable MLD snooping-proxy on the Switch to minimize MLD control messages and allow better network performance.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing MLD messages.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.5.2 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy** screen to display the screen as shown. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 129 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 76 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN on which you want to enable MLD snooping-proxy and configure related settings.
Upstream	
Query Interval	Enter the amount of time (in miliseconds) between general query messages sent by the router connected to the upstream port. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router. This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table. When an MLD Report message is received, the Switch sets the timeout period of the entry to be T = (QI*RV) + MRD, where T = Timeout, QI = Query Interval, RV = Robustness Variable, and MRD = Maximum Response Delay.
Maximum Response Delay	Enter the amount of time (in miliseconds) the router connected to the upstream port waits for a response to an MLD general query message. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router. This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table. When an MLD Report message is received, the Switch sets the timeout period of the entry to be T = (QI*RV) + MRD, where T = Timeout, QI = Query Interval, RV = Robustness Variable, and MRD = Maximum Response Delay. When an MLD Done message is received, the Switch sets the entry's lifetime to be the product of **Last Member Query Interval** and **Robustness Variable**

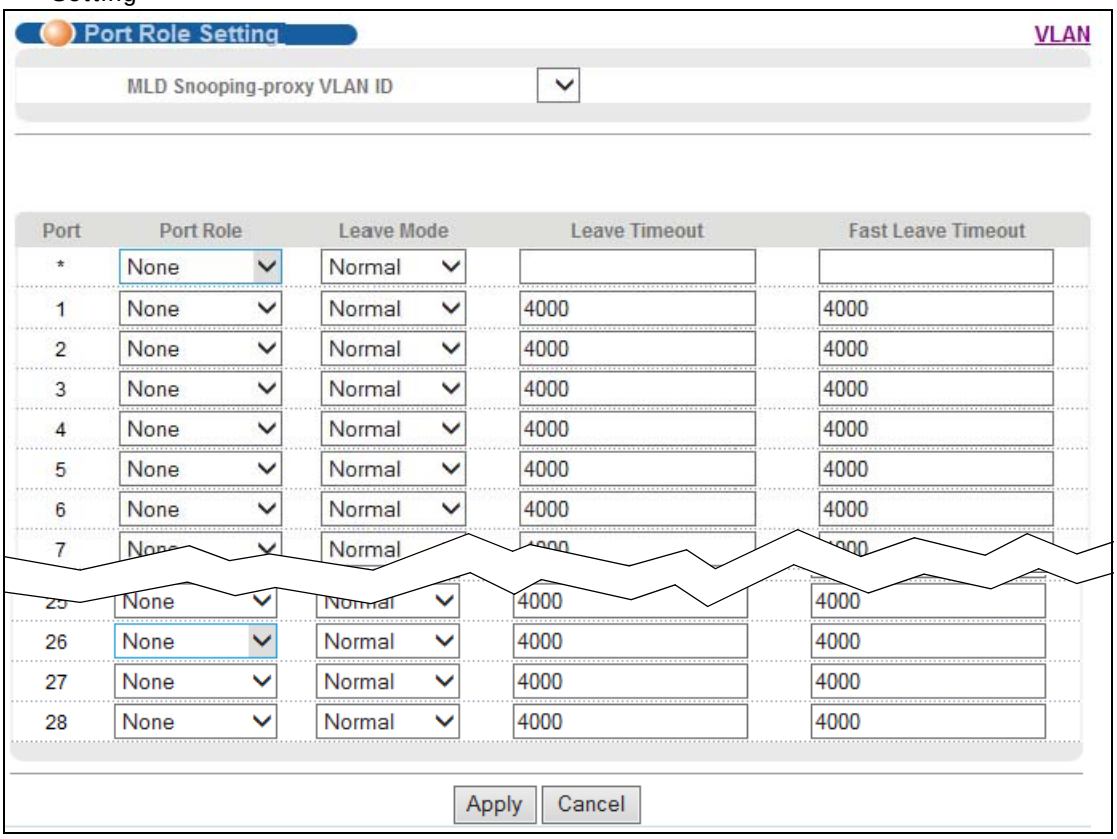
Table 76 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Robustness Variable	Enter the number of queries. A multicast address entry (learned only on an upstream port by snooping) is removed from the forwarding table when there is no response to the configured number of queries sent by the router connected to the upstream port. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router. This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table.
Last Member Query Interval	Enter the amount of time (in miliseconds) between the MLD group-specific queries sent by an upstream port when an MLD Done message is received. This value should be exactly the same as what's configured in the connected multicast router. This value is used to calculate the amount of time an MLD snooping membership entry (learned only on the upstream port) can remain in the forwarding table after a Done message is received. When an MLD Done message is received, the Switch sets the entry's lifetime to be the product of **Last Member Query Interval** and **Robustness Variable.**
Downstream	
Query Interval	Enter the amount of time (in miliseconds) between general query messages sent by the downstream port.
Maximum Response Delay	Enter the maximum time (in miliseconds) that the Switch waits for a response to a general query message sent by the downstream port.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the MLD snooping-proxy VLAN entry in the table. Click on an index number to view more details or change the settings.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the entry selected in the Delete column permanently.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

23.5.3 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN Port Role Setting

Click the **Port Role Setting** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > VLAN** screen to display the screen as shown. See Section 23.1 on page 168 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 130 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 77 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN ID	Select the VLAN ID for which you want to configure a port's MLD snooping-proxy settings.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Port Role	A port on the Switch can be either a **Downstream** port or **Upstream** port in MLD. A downstream port connects to MLD hosts and acts as a multicast router to send MLD queries and listen to the MLD host's Report and Done messages. An upstream port connects to a multicast router and works as a host to send Report or Done messages when receiving queries from a multicast router. Otherwise, select **None** if the port is not joining a multicast group or does not belong to this VLAN.

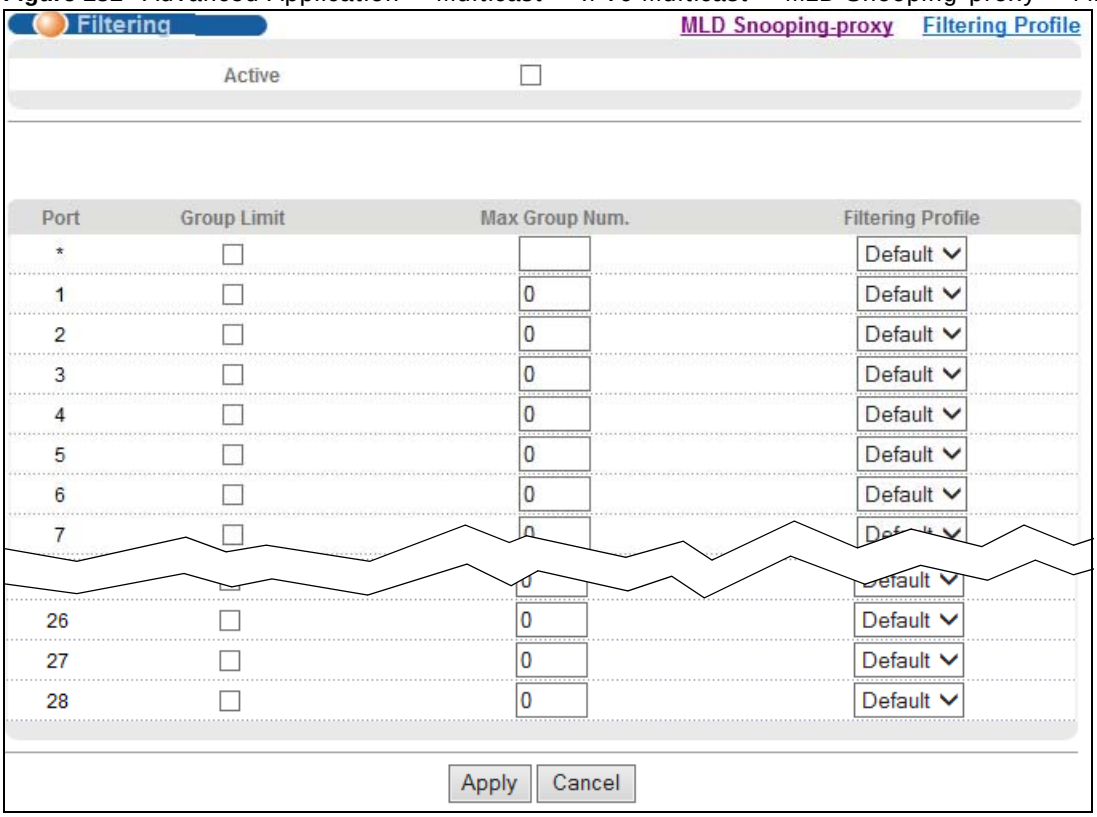
Table 77 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Port Role Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Leave Mode	Select the leave mode for the specified downstream port(s) in this VLAN. This specifies whether the Switch removes an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) immediately (**Immediate**) or wait for an MLD report before the leave timeout (**Normal**) or fast leave timeout (**Fast**) when an MLD leave message is received on this port from a host.
Leave Timeout	Enter the MLD snooping normal leave timeout (in milliseconds) the Switch uses to update the forwarding table for the specified downstream port(s). This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an MLD report before removing an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) when an MLD Done message is received on this port from a host.
Fast Leave Timeout	Enter the fast leave timeout (in milliseconds) for the specified downstream port(s). This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an MLD report before removing an MLD snooping membership entry (learned on a downstream port) when an MLD Done message is received on this port from a host.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

23.5.4 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN Filtering

Use this screen to configure the Switch's MLD filtering settings. Click the **Filtering** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 131 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

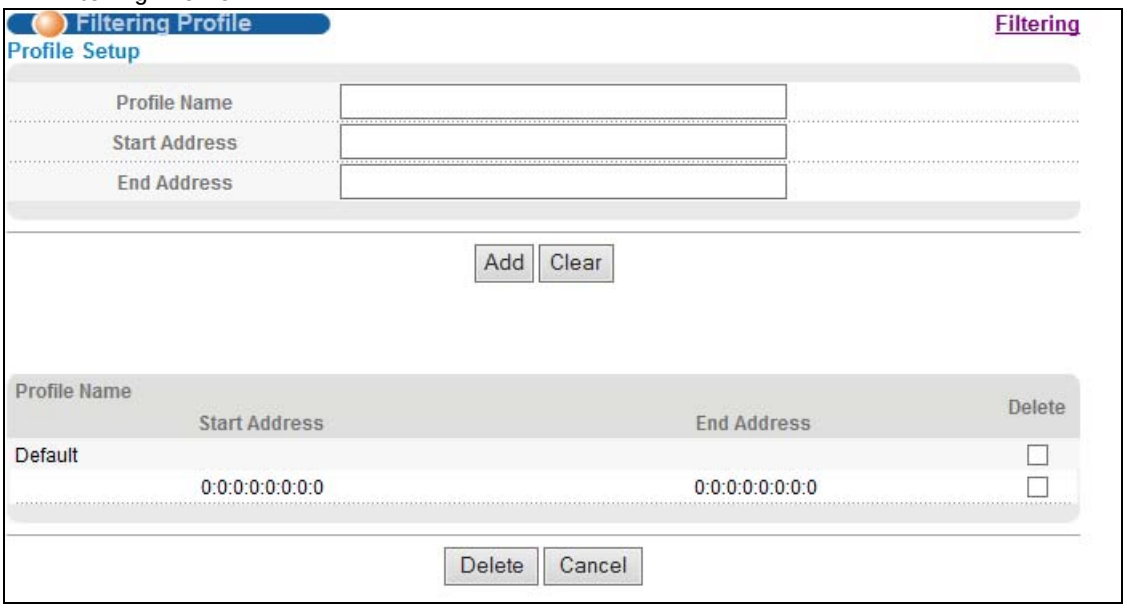
Table 78 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable MLD filtering on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Group Limit	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new MLD Report message is dropped on this port.
Filtering Profile	Select the name of the MLD filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select **Default** to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group. You can create MLD filtering profiles in the **Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering > Filtering Profile** screen.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

23.5.5 MLD Snooping-proxy VLAN Filtering Profile

Use this screen to create an MLD filtering profile and set the range of the multicast address(es). Click the **Filtering Profile** link in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 132 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering > Filtering Profile



The following table describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 79 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IPv6 address for a range of multicast IPv6 addresses that you want to belong to the MLD filtering profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IPv6 address for a range of IPv6 addresses that you want to belong to the MLD filtering profile. If you want to add a single multicast IPv6 address, enter it in both the **Start Address** and **End Address** fields.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast IPv6 address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast IPv6 address range.

Table 79 Advanced Application > Multicast > IPv6 Multicast > MLD Snooping-proxy > Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Profile** column, then click the **Delete** button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Rule** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Delete	Click **Delete** button to permanently delete the entries you selected in the Delete column.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete Profile**/**Delete Rule** check boxes.

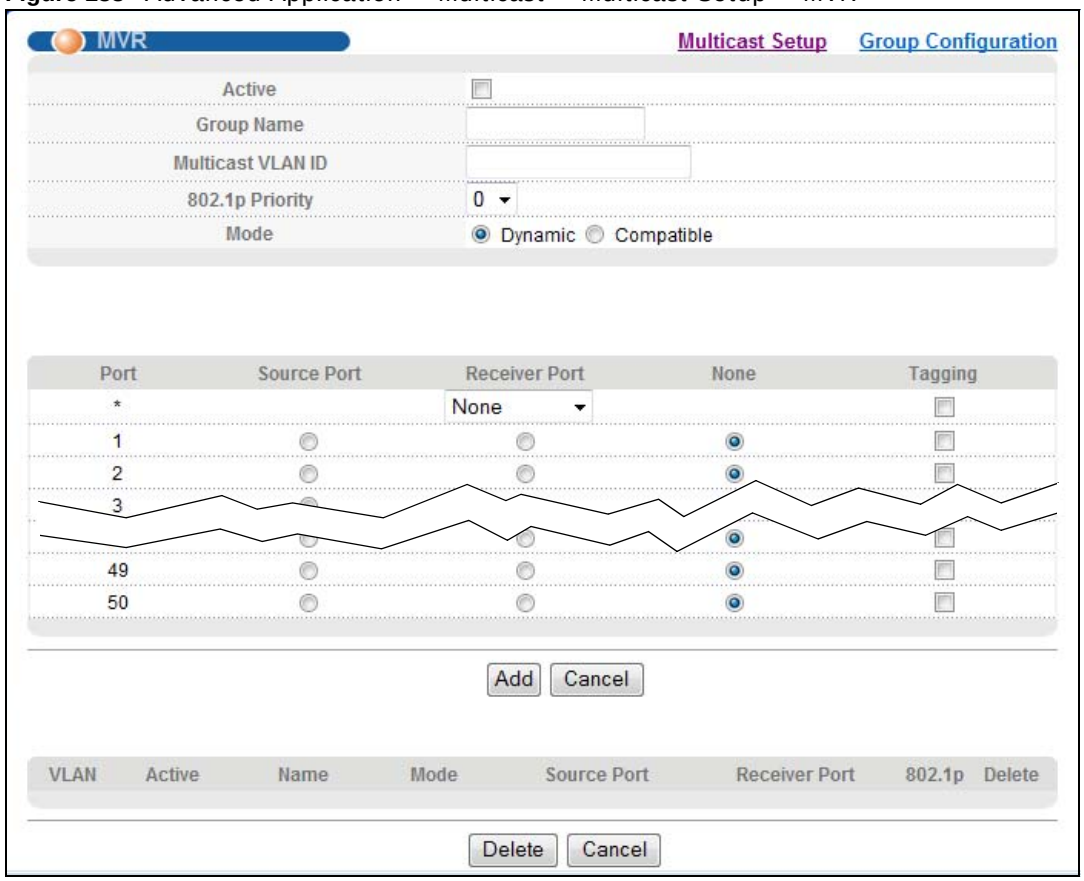
23.6 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN. Click **Advanced Application > Multicast** > **Multicast Setup > MVR** to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You can create up to five multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the Switch.

Note: Your Switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

Figure 133 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setup > MVR



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 80 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Group Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the Switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP or MLD control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the Switch. Choices are **Dynamic** and **Compatible**. Select **Dynamic** to send IGMP reports or MLD messages to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select **Compatible** to set the Switch not to send IGMP reports or MLD messages.
Port	This field displays the port number on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Source Port	Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic. All source ports must belong to a single multicast VLAN.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic.

Table 80 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this checkbox if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID. Click on an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
802.1p	This field displays the priority level.
Delete	To delete a multicast VLAN(s), select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

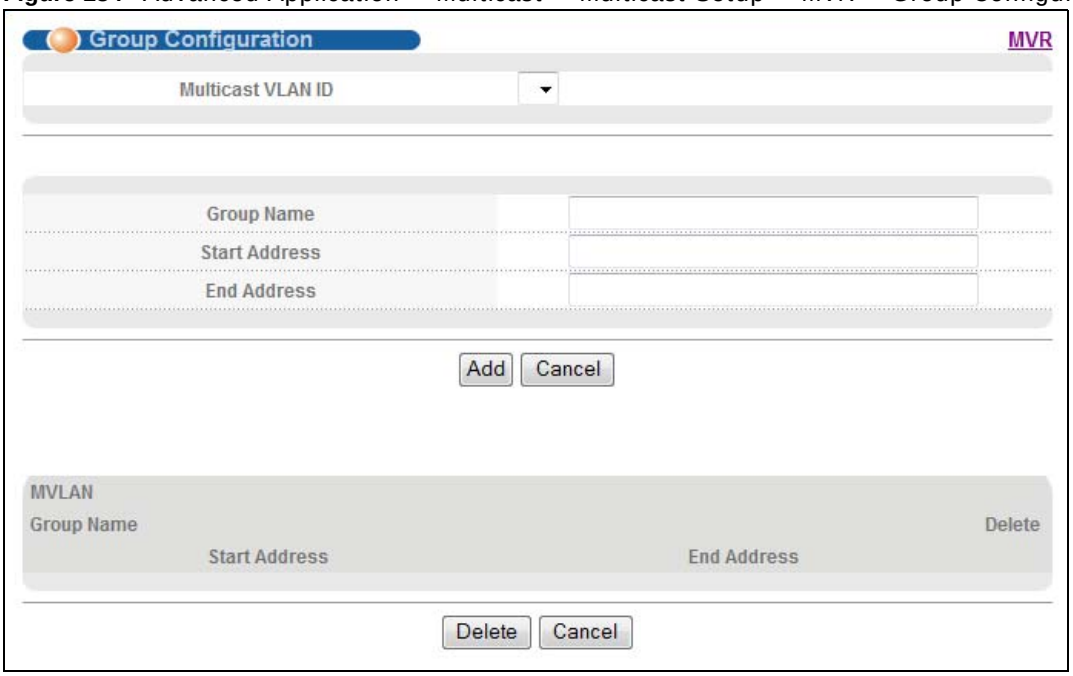
23.6.1 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Use this screen to configure MVR IP multicast group address(es). Click the **Group Configuration** link in the **MVR** screen.

Note: A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

Figure 134 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setup > MVR > Group Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

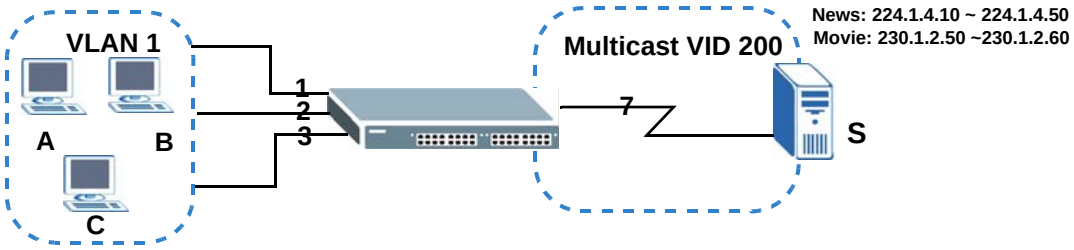
Table 81 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR > Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the **MVR** screen) from the drop-down list box.
Group Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to Section on page 168 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the **Start Address** field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to Section on page 168 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
Add	Click this to create a new entry. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Group Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table. If you delete a multicast VLAN, all multicast groups in this VLAN will also be removed.
Cancel	Select **Cancel** to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

23.6.2 MVR Configuration Example

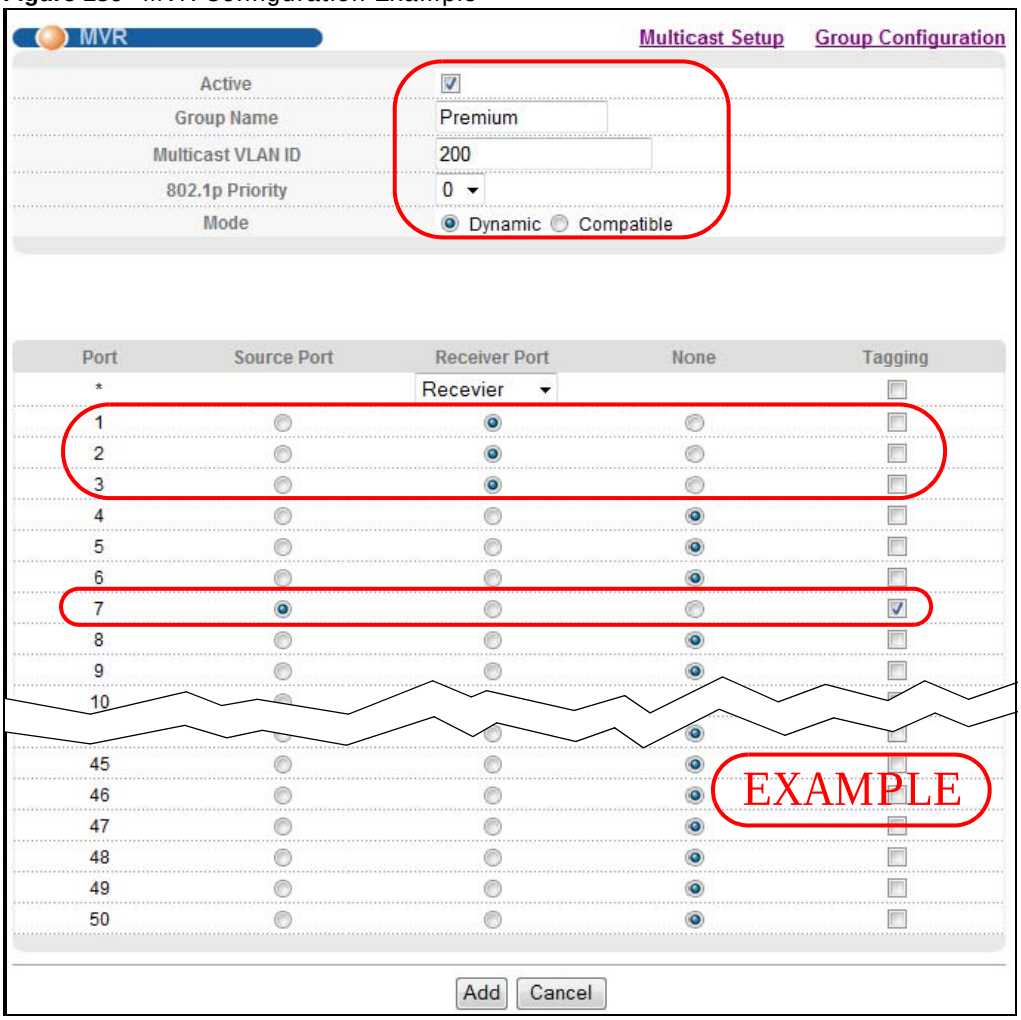
The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the Switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the **News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers A, B and C in VLAN 1 are able to receive the traffic.

Figure 135 MVR Configuration Example



To configure the MVR settings on the Switch, create a multicast VLAN in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

Figure 136 MVR Configuration Example



To set the Switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The following figure shows an example where two IPv4 multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

Figure 137 MVR Group Configuration Example

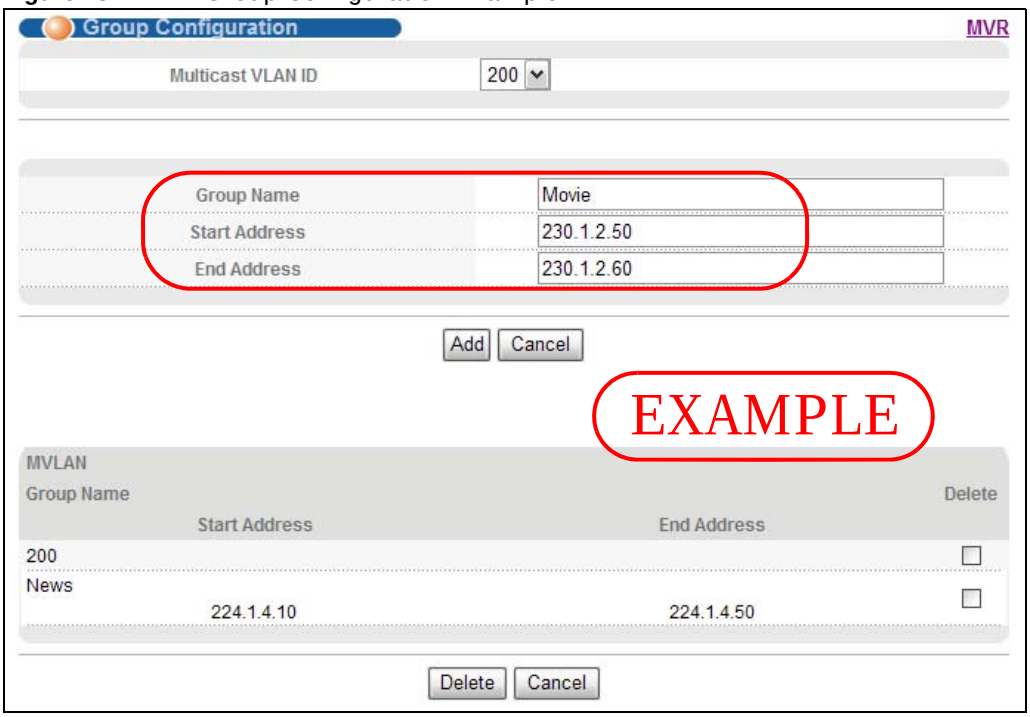
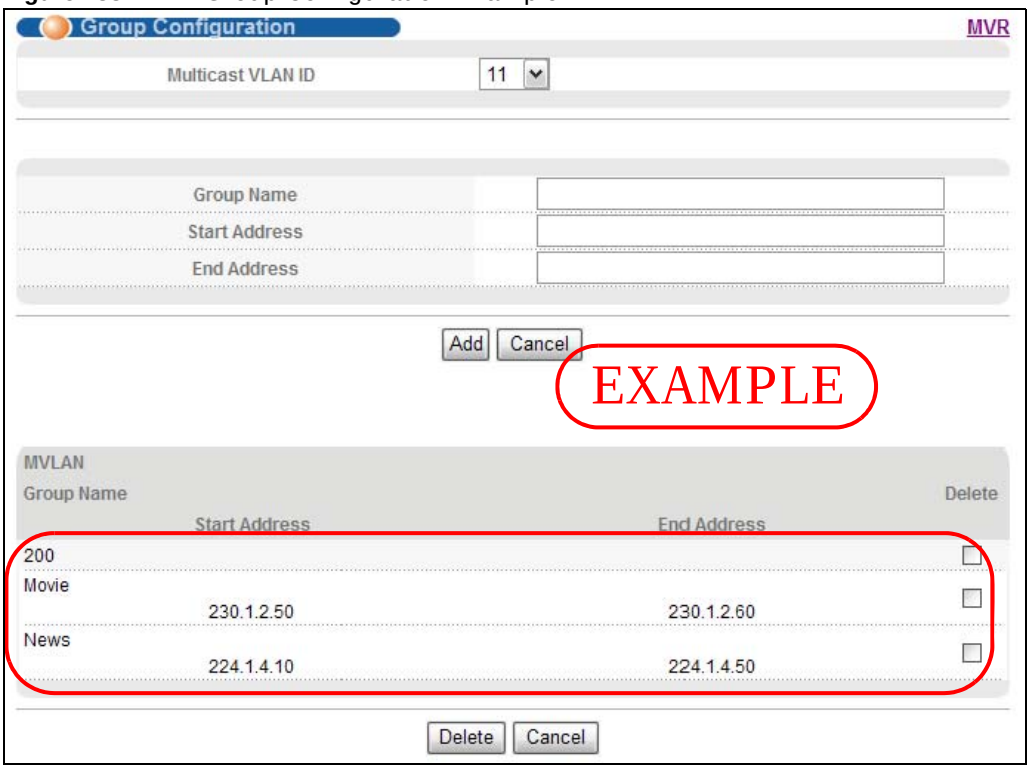


Figure 138 MVR Group Configuration Example



24

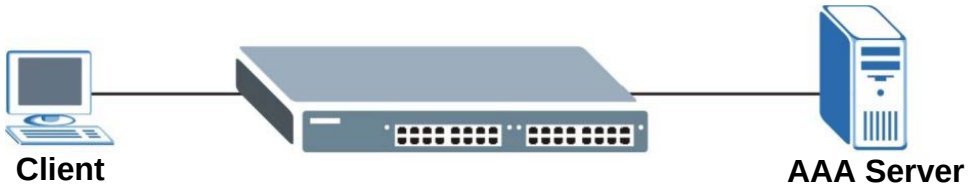
AAA

24.1 AAA Overview

This chapter describes how to configure authentication and authorization settings on the Switch.

The external servers that perform authentication and authorization functions are known as AAA servers. The Switch supports RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, see Section on page 193) and TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus, see Section on page 193) as external authentication and authorization servers.

Figure 139 AAA Server



24.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **AAA** screen (Section 24.2 on page 193) to enable authentication and authorization or both of them on the Switch.
- use the **Radio Server Setup** screen (Section 24.3 on page 193) to configure your RADIUS server settings.
- Use the **TACACS+ Server Setup** screen (Section 24.4 on page 195) to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
- Use the **AAA Setup** screen (Section 24.5 on page 197) to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch and specify which database the Switch should use first.

24.1.2 What You Need to Know

Authentication is the process of determining who a user is and validating access to the Switch. The Switch can authenticate users who try to log in based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself. The Switch can also use an external authentication server to authenticate a large number of users.

Authorization is the process of determining what a user is allowed to do. Different user accounts may have higher or lower privilege levels associated with them. For example, user A may have the right to create new login accounts on the Switch but user B cannot. The Switch can authorize users based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself or it can use an external server to authorize a large number of users.

Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate and authorize users without interacting with a network AAA server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way (See Chapter 37 on page 301).

RADIUS and TACACS+

RADIUS and TACACS+ are security protocols used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication both allow you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

The following table describes some key differences between RADIUS and TACACS+.

Table 82 RADIUS vs. TACACS+

	RADIUS	TACACS+
Transport Protocol	UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
Encryption	Encrypts the password sent for authentication.	All communication between the client (the Switch) and the TACACS server is encrypted.

24.2 AAA Screens

The **AAA** screens allow you to enable authentication and authorization or both of them on the Switch. First, configure your authentication server settings (RADIUS, TACACS+ or both) and then set up the authentication priority, activate authorization.

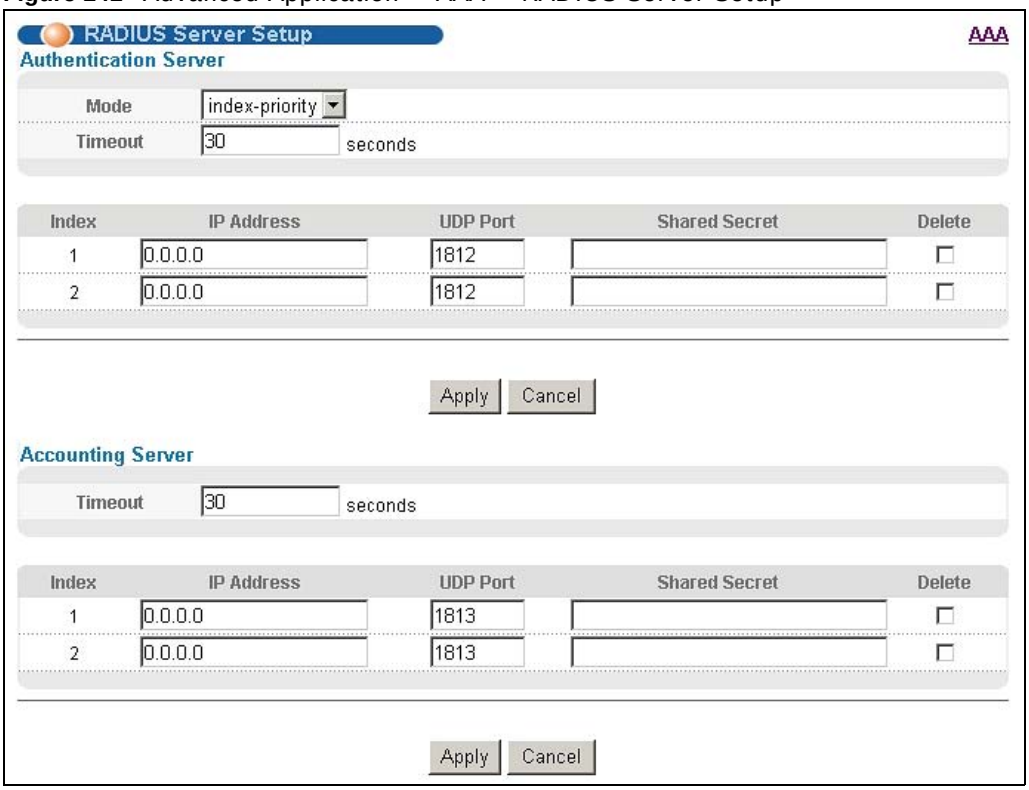
Click **Advanced Application** > **AAA** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 140 Advanced Application > AAA

24.3 RADIUS Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your RADIUS server settings. See Section on page 193 for more information on RADIUS servers and Section 24.6.2 on page 201 for RADIUS attributes utilized by the authentication features on the Switch. Click on the **RADIUS Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 141 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 83 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple RADIUS servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured RADIUS server, if the RADIUS server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second RADIUS server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the RADIUS servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the RADIUS server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two RADIUS servers then the timeout value is divided between the two RADIUS servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first RADIUS server for 15 seconds and then tries the second RADIUS server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is **1812**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch.

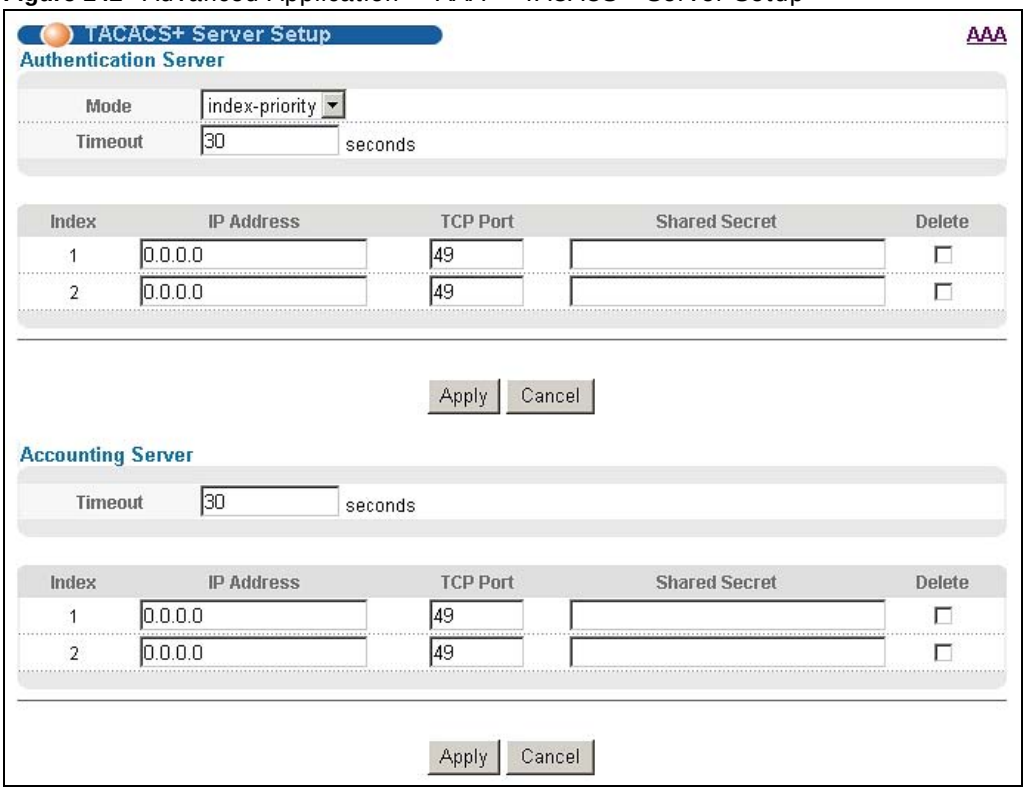
Table 83 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS accounting server settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the RADIUS accounting server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS accounting server for accounting is **1813**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.4 TACACS+ Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your TACACS+ server settings. See Section on page 193 for more information on TACACS+ servers. Click on the **TACACS+ Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 142 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 84 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple TACACS+ servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured TACACS+ server, if the TACACS+ server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second TACACS+ server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the TACACS+ servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the TACACS+ server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two TACACS+ servers then the timeout value is divided between the two TACACS+ servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first TACACS+ server for 15 seconds and then tries the second TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ server for authentication is **49**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ server and the Switch.

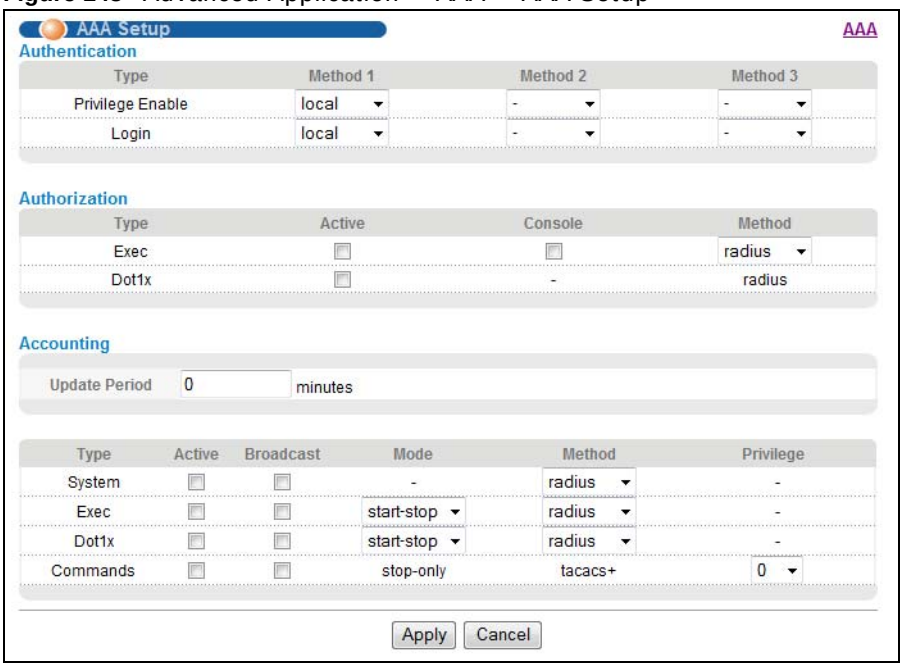
Table 84 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ accounting settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ accounting server is **49**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.5 AAA Setup

Use this screen to configure authentication and authorization settings on the Switch. Click on the **AAA Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 143 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Use this section to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch.
Privilege Enable	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate access privilege level for administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the access privilege of accounts via commands (See the CLI Reference Guide) for **local** authentication. The **TACACS+** and **RADIUS** are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate the access privilege level of administrators. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for access privilege level specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the access privilege configured for local authentication. Select **radius** or **tacacs+** to have the Switch check the access privilege via the external servers.

Table 85 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Login	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the local user accounts in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate administrator accounts. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for administrator accounts, specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. Select **radius** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via your RADIUS server. Select **tacacs+** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via your TACACS+ server.
Authorization	Use this section to configure authorization settings on the Switch.
Type	Set whether the Switch provides the following services to a user. • **Exec**: Allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through Telnet or SSH to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server. • **Dot1x**: Allow an IEEE 802.1x client to have different bandwidth limit or VLAN ID assigned via the external server.
Active	Select this to activate authorization for a specified event types.
Console	Select this to allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through the console port to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server.
Method	Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for authorization of specific types of events. RADIUS is the only method for IEEE 802.1x authorization.
Accounting	Use this section to configure accounting settings on the Switch.
Update Period	This is the amount of time in minutes before the Switch sends an update to the accounting server. This is only valid if you select the **start-stop** option for the **Exec** or **Dot1x** entries.
Type	The Switch supports the following types of events to be sent to the accounting server(s): • **System** - Configure the Switch to send information when the following system events occur: system boots up, system shuts down, system accounting is enabled, system accounting is disabled • **Exec** - Configure the Switch to send information when an administrator logs in and logs out via the console port, telnet or SSH. • **Dot1x** - Configure the Switch to send information when an IEEE 802.1x client begins a session (authenticates via the Switch), ends a session as well as interim updates of a session. • **Commands** - Configure the Switch to send information when commands of specified privilege level and higher are executed on the Switch.
Active	Select this to activate accounting for a specified event types.
Broadcast	Select this to have the Switch send accounting information to all configured accounting servers at the same time. If you don't select this and you have two accounting servers set up, then the Switch sends information to the first accounting server and if it doesn't get a response from the accounting server then it tries the second accounting server.

Table 85 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	The Switch supports two modes of recording login events. Select: • **start-stop** - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server when a user begins a session, during a user's session (if it lasts past the **Update Period**), and when a user ends a session. • **stop-only** - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server only when a user ends a session.
Method	Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for accounting of specific types of events. TACACS+ is the only method for recording **Commands** type of event.
Privilege	This field is only configurable for **Commands** type of event. Select the threshold command privilege level for which the Switch should send accounting information. The Switch will send accounting information when commands at the level you specify and higher are executed on the Switch.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.6 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

24.6.1 Vendor Specific Attribute

RFC 2865 standard specifies a method for sending vendor-specific information between a RADIUS server and a network access device (for example, the Switch). A company can create Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) to expand the functionality of a RADIUS server.

The Switch supports VSAs that allow you to perform the following actions based on user authentication:

- Limit bandwidth on incoming or outgoing traffic for the port the user connects to.
- Assign account privilege levels (See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on account privilege levels) for the authenticated user.

The VSAs are composed of the following:

- **Vendor-ID**: An identification number assigned to the company by the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). ZyXEL's vendor ID is 890.
- **Vendor-Type**: A vendor specified attribute, identifying the setting you want to modify.
- **Vendor-data**: A value you want to assign to the setting.

Note: Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server on how to configure VSAs for users authenticating via the RADIUS server.

The following table describes the VSAs supported on the Switch.

Table 86 Supported VSAs

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
Ingress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **1** Vendor-data = ingress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Egress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **2** Vendor-data = egress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Privilege Assignment	Vendor-ID = **890** Vendor-Type = **3** Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" or Vendor-ID = **9** (CISCO) Vendor-Type = **1** (CISCO-AVPAIR) Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" where N is a privilege level (from 0 to 14). Note: If you set the privilege level of a login account differently on the RADIUS server(s) and the Switch, the user is assigned a privilege level from the database (RADIUS or local) the Switch uses first for user authentication.

24.6.1.1 Tunnel Protocol Attribute

You can configure tunnel protocol attributes on the RADIUS server (refer to your RADIUS server documentation) to assign a port on the Switch to a VLAN based on IEEE 802.1x authentication. The port VLAN settings are fixed and untagged. This will also set the port's VID. The following table describes the values you need to configure. Note that the bolded values in the table are fixed values as defined in RFC 3580.

Table 87 Supported Tunnel Protocol Attribute

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
VLAN Assignment	Tunnel-Type = **VLAN(13)** Tunnel-Medium-Type = **802(6)** Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN ID Note: You must also create a VLAN with the specified VID on the Switch.

24.6.2 Supported RADIUS Attributes

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) attributes are data used to define specific authentication elements in a user profile, which is stored on the RADIUS server. This appendix lists the RADIUS attributes supported by the Switch.

Refer to RFC 2865 for more information about RADIUS attributes used for authentication.

This section lists the attributes used by authentication functions on the Switch. In cases where the attribute has a specific format associated with it, the format is specified.

24.6.3 Attributes Used for Authentication

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

24.6.3.1 Attributes Used for Authenticating Privilege Access

User-Name

- The format of the User-Name attribute is **$enab#$**, where # is the privilege level (1-14).

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

24.6.3.2 Attributes Used to Login Users

User-Name

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

24.6.3.3 Attributes Used by the IEEE 802.1x Authentication

User-Name

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Port

NAS-Port-Type

- This value is set to **Ethernet(15)** on the Switch.

Calling-Station-Id

Frame-MTU

EAP-Message

State

Message-Authenticator

25

IP Source Guard

25.1 Overview

Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.

IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. A binding contains these key attributes:

- MAC address
- VLAN ID
- IP address
- Port number

When the Switch receives a DHCP or ARP packet, it looks up the appropriate MAC address, VLAN ID, IP address, and port number in the binding table. If there is a binding, the Switch forwards the packet. If there is not a binding, the Switch discards the packet.

25.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **IP Source Guard** screen (Section 25.2 on page 204) to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection.
- Use the **IP Source Guard Static Binding** screen (Section 25.3 on page 205) to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection.
- Use the **DHCP Snooping** screen (Section 25.4 on page 206) to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database.
- Use this **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen (Section 25.5 on page 209) to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database.
- Use the **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen (Section 25.5.1 on page 211) to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.
- Use the **DHCP VLAN Configure** screen (Section 25.5.2 on page 213) to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN.
- Use the **DHCP Snooping VLAN Port Configure** screen (Section 25.5.3 on page 213) to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports in a VLAN.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Status** screen (Section 25.6 on page 215) to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet.
- Use the **ARP Inspection VLAN Status** screen (Section 25.7 on page 216) to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Log Status** screen (Section 25.8 on page 216) to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.

- Use the **ARP Inspection Configure** screen (Section 25.9 on page 218) to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global settings for the ARP inspection log.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Port Configure** screen (Section 25.9.1 on page 219) to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection.
- Use the **ARP Inspection VLAN Configure** screen (Section 25.9.2 on page 221) to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN.

25.1.2 What You Need to Know

The Switch builds the binding table by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings).

IP source guard consists of the following features:

- Static bindings. Use this to create static bindings in the binding table.
- DHCP snooping. Use this to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically.
- ARP inspection. Use this to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network.

If you want to use dynamic bindings to filter unauthorized ARP packets (typical implementation), you have to enable DHCP snooping before you enable ARP inspection.

25.2 IP Source Guard

Use this screen to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns the bindings by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings). To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**.

Figure 144 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how many days, hours, minutes, and seconds the binding is valid; for example, **2d3h4m5s** means the binding is still valid for 2 days, 3 hours, 4 minutes, and 5 seconds. This field displays **infinity** if the binding is always valid (for example, a static binding).

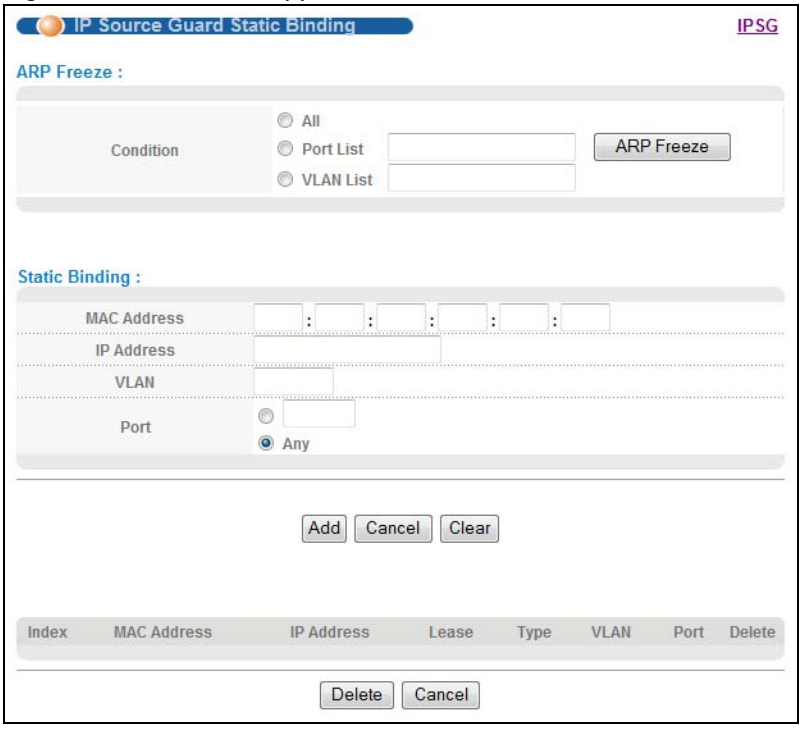
Table 88 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. **dhcp-snooping**: This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.

25.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding

Use this screen to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID as an existing static binding, the new static binding replaces the original one. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding**.

Figure 145 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

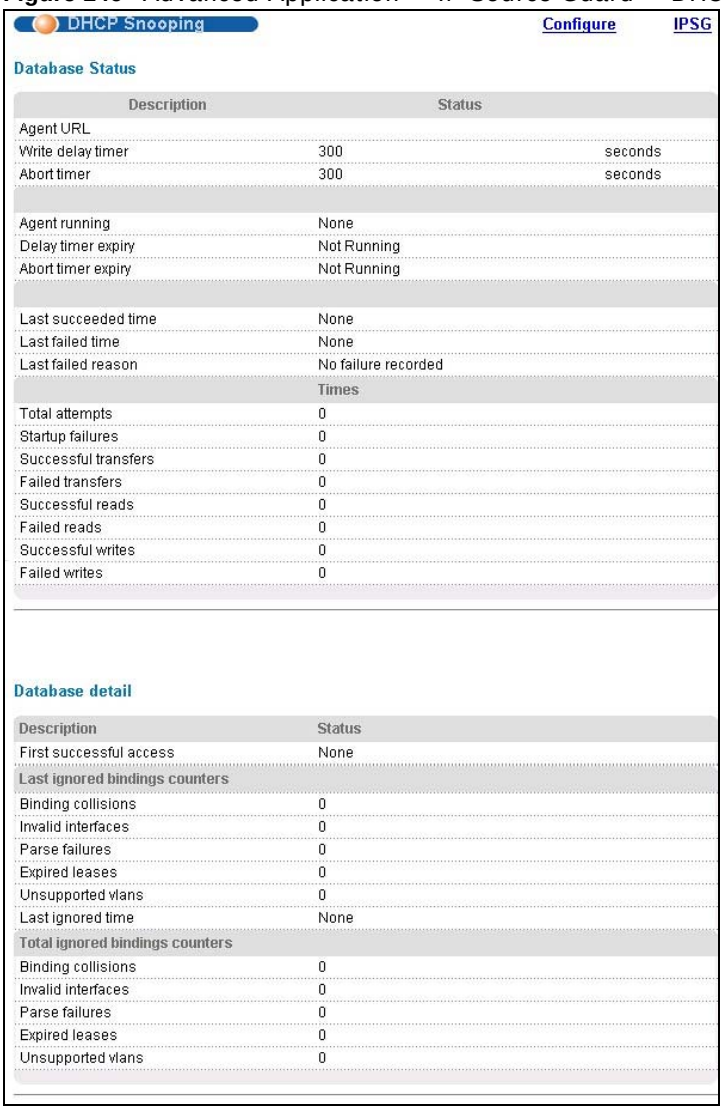
Table 89 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ARP Freeze	ARP Freeze allows you to automatically create static bindings from the current ARP entries (either dynamically learned or static ARP entries) until the Switch's binding table is full. Note: The ARP learning mode should be set to **ARP-Request** in the **IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning** screen before you use the ARP Freeze feature.
Condition	**All** - Select this and click **ARP Freeze** to have the Switch automatically add all the current ARP entries to the static bindings table. **Port List** - Select this and enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma). ARP entries learned on the specified port(s) are added to the static bindings table after you click **ARP Freeze**. **VLAN List** - Select this and enter the ID number of the VLAN(s) (separated by a comma). ARP entries for the specified VLAN(s) are added to the static bindings table after you click **ARP Freeze**.
Static Binding	
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
VLAN	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	Specify the port(s) in the binding. If this binding has one port, select the first radio button and enter the port number in the field to the right. If this binding applies to all ports, select **Any**.
Add	Click this to create the specified static binding or to update an existing one.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected static binding or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.
Delete	Select this, and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

25.4 DHCP Snooping

Use this screen to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping**.

Figure 146 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 90 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Database Status	This section displays the current settings for the DHCP snooping database. You can configure them in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 25.5 on page 209.
Agent URL	This field displays the location of the DHCP snooping database.
Write delay timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Abort timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database after the current bindings change.
	This section displays information about the current update and the next update of the DHCP snooping database.

Table 90 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Agent running	This field displays the status of the current update or access of the DHCP snooping database. **none**: The Switch is not accessing the DHCP snooping database. **read**: The Switch is loading dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database. **write**: The Switch is updating the DHCP snooping database.
Delay timer expiry	This field displays how much longer (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete the current update before it gives up. It displays **Not Running** if the Switch is not updating the DHCP snooping database right now.
Abort timer expiry	This field displays when (in seconds) the Switch is going to update the DHCP snooping database again. It displays **Not Running** if the current bindings have not changed since the last update.
	This section displays information about the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database.
Last succeeded time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Last failed time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
Last failed reason	This field displays the reason the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
	This section displays historical information about the number of times the Switch successfully or unsuccessfully read or updated the DHCP snooping database.
Total attempts	This field displays the number of times the Switch has tried to access the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Startup failures	This field displays the number of times the Switch could not create or read the DHCP snooping database when the Switch started up or a new URL is configured for the DHCP snooping database.
Successful transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from or updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from or update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Successful reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from the DHCP snooping database.
Successful writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Database detail	
First successful access	This field displays the first time the Switch accessed the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Last ignored bindings counters	This section displays the number of times and the reasons the Switch ignored bindings the last time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.

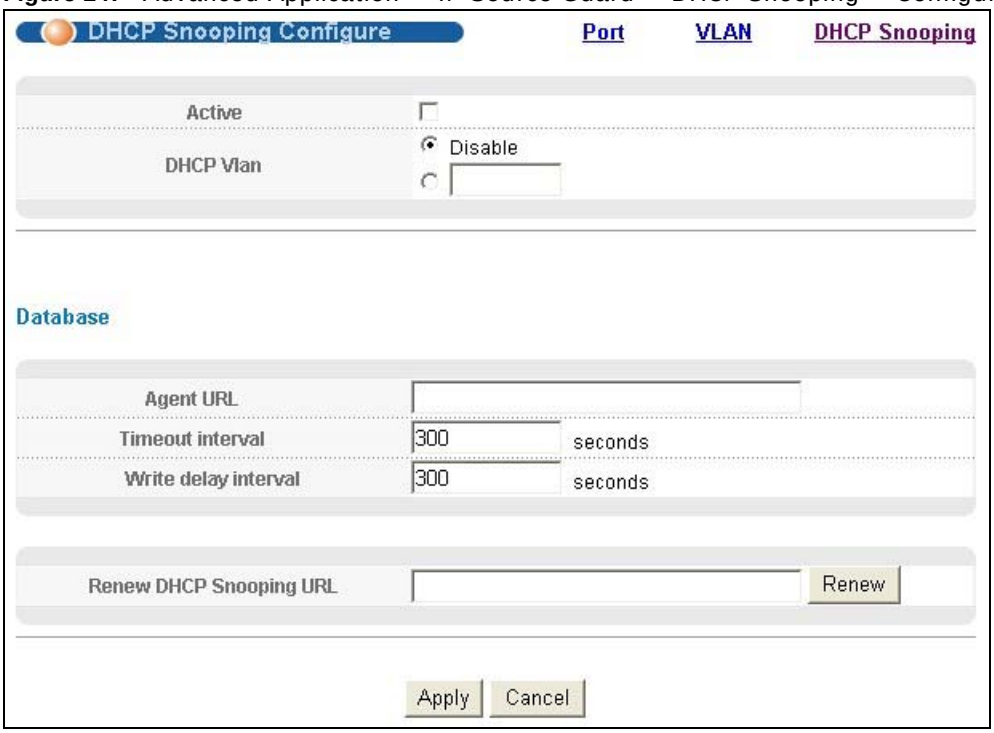
Table 90 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.
Last ignored time	This field displays the last time the Switch ignored any bindings for any reason from the DHCP binding database.
Total ignored bindings counters	This section displays the reasons the Switch has ignored bindings any time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.

25.5 DHCP Snooping Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database. The DHCP snooping database stores the current bindings on a secure, external TFTP server so that they are still available after a restart. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure**.

Figure 147 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 91 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports. Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.
DHCP Vlan	Select a VLAN ID if you want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to DHCP servers on a specific VLAN. Note: You have to enable DHCP snooping on the DHCP VLAN too. You can enable **Option82** in the **DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure** screen (Section 25.5.2 on page 213) to help the DHCP servers distinguish between DHCP requests from different VLAN. Select **Disable** if you do not want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to a specific VLAN.
Database	If **Timeout interval** is greater than **Write delay interval**, it is possible that the next update is scheduled to occur before the current update has finished successfully or timed out. In this case, the Switch waits to start the next update until it completes the current one.
Agent URL	Enter the location of the DHCP snooping database. The location should be expressed like this: **tftp://{domain name or IP address}/directory, if applicable/file name**; for example, **tftp://192.168.10.1/database.txt**.
Timeout interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.

Table 91 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Write delay interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database the first time the current bindings change after an update. Once the next update is scheduled, additional changes in current bindings are automatically included in the next update.
Renew DHCP Snooping URL	Enter the location of a DHCP snooping database, and click **Renew** if you want the Switch to load it. You can use this to load dynamic bindings from a different DHCP snooping database than the one specified in **Agent URL**. When the Switch loads dynamic bindings from a DHCP snooping database, it does not discard the current dynamic bindings first. If there is a conflict, the Switch keeps the dynamic binding in volatile memory and updates the **Binding collisions** counter in the **DHCP Snooping** screen (Section 25.4 on page 206).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

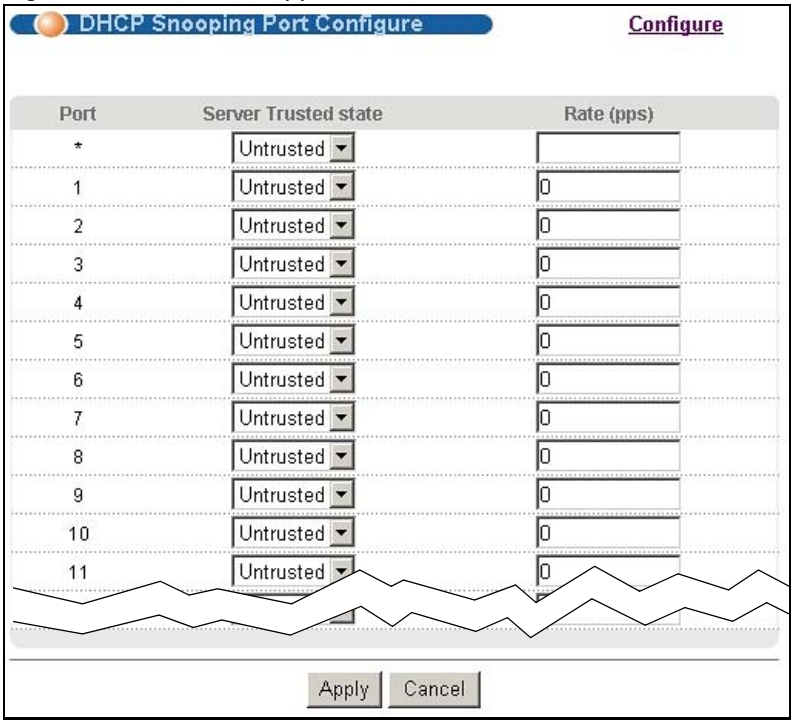
25.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

Note: If DHCP snooping is enabled but there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests cannot reach the DHCP server.

You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port**.

Figure 148 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

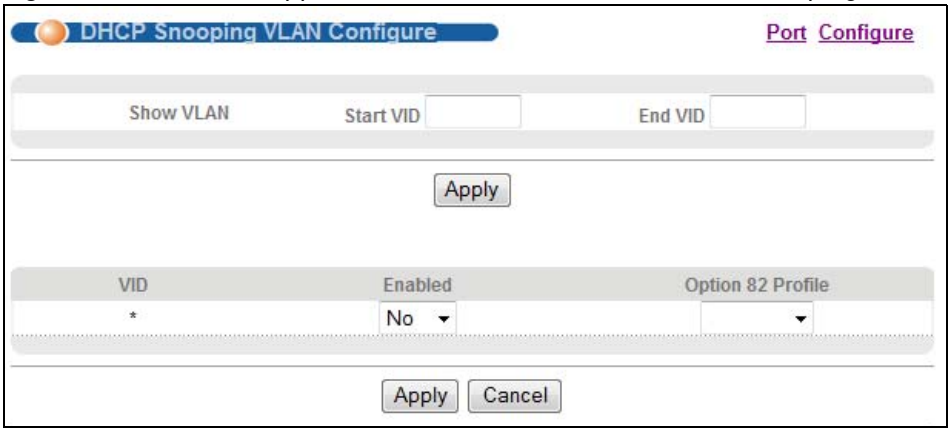
Table 92 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Server Trusted state	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations: • The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK). • The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings. • The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum number for DHCP packets (1-2048) that the Switch receives from each port each second. The Switch discards any additional DHCP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit, which is recommended for trusted ports.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information (Chapter 35 on page 283) to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 149 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

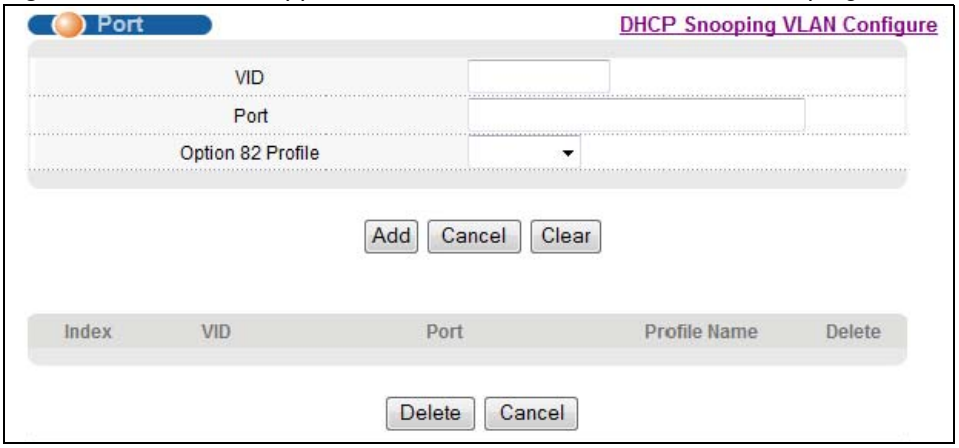
Table 93 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable DHCP snooping on the VLAN. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch and specify trusted ports. Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports in the specified VLAN(s). The Switch adds the information (such as slot number, port number, VLAN ID and/or system name) specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen (see Section 25.5 on page 209).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25.5.3 DHCP Snooping VLAN Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports in a VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port.**

Figure 150 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

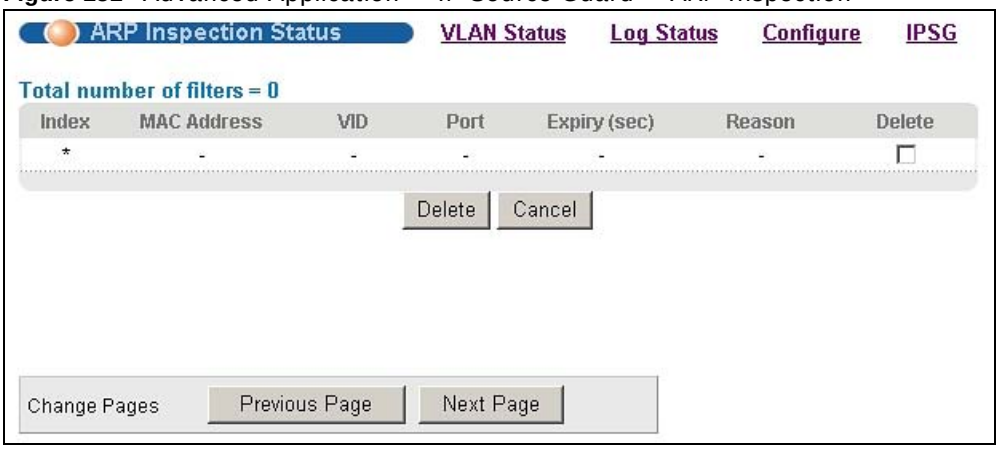
Table 94 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter “3-5” for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter “3,5,7” for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN. The Switch adds the information (such as slot number, port number, VLAN ID and/or system name) specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen (see Section 25.5 on page 209). The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the **DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN** screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the port(s) belongs.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the port(s).
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

25.6 ARP Inspection Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection**.

Figure 151 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

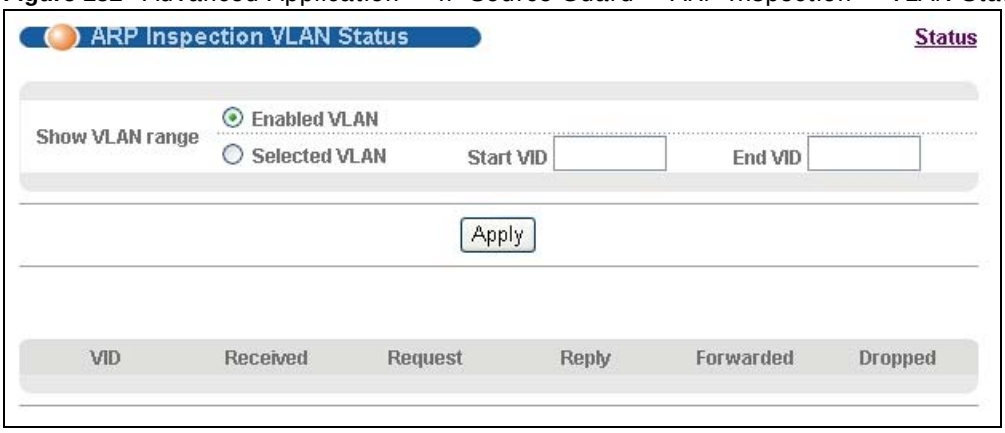
Table 95 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total number of filters	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC address filter.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC address filter.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.
Expiry (sec)	This field displays how long (in seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch. You can also delete the record manually (**Delete**).
Reason	This field displays the reason the ARP packet was discarded. **MAC+VLAN**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were not in the binding table. **IP**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were in the binding table, but the IP address was not valid. **Port**: The MAC address, VLAN ID, and IP address were in the binding table, but the port number was not valid.
Delete	Select this, and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.
Change Pages	Click **Previous** or **Next** to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

25.7 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

Use this screen to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status**.

Figure 152 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

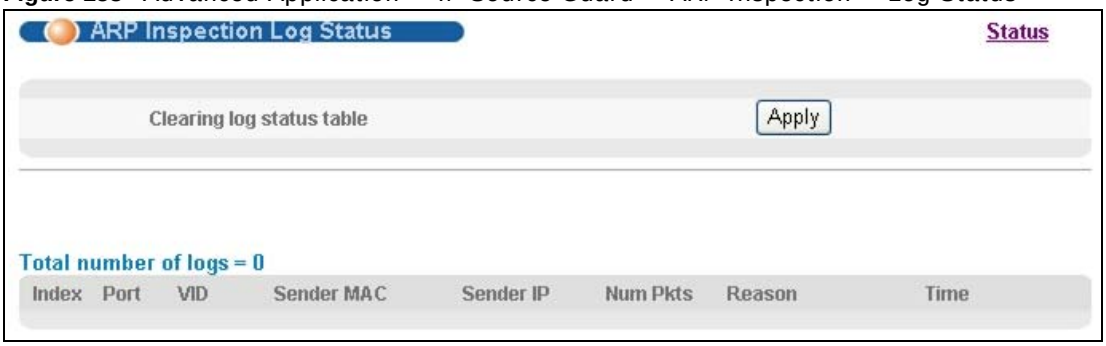
Table 96 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN range	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to look at in the section below.
Enabled VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs on which ARP inspection is enabled in the section below.
Selected VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs in a specific range in the section below. Then, enter the lowest VLAN ID (**Start VID**) and the highest VLAN ID (**End VID**) you want to look at.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above.
Received	This field displays the total number of ARP packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Request	This field displays the total number of ARP Request packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Reply	This field displays the total number of ARP Reply packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Forwarded	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch forwarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Dropped	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch discarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

25.8 ARP Inspection Log Status

Use this screen to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status**.

Figure 153 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

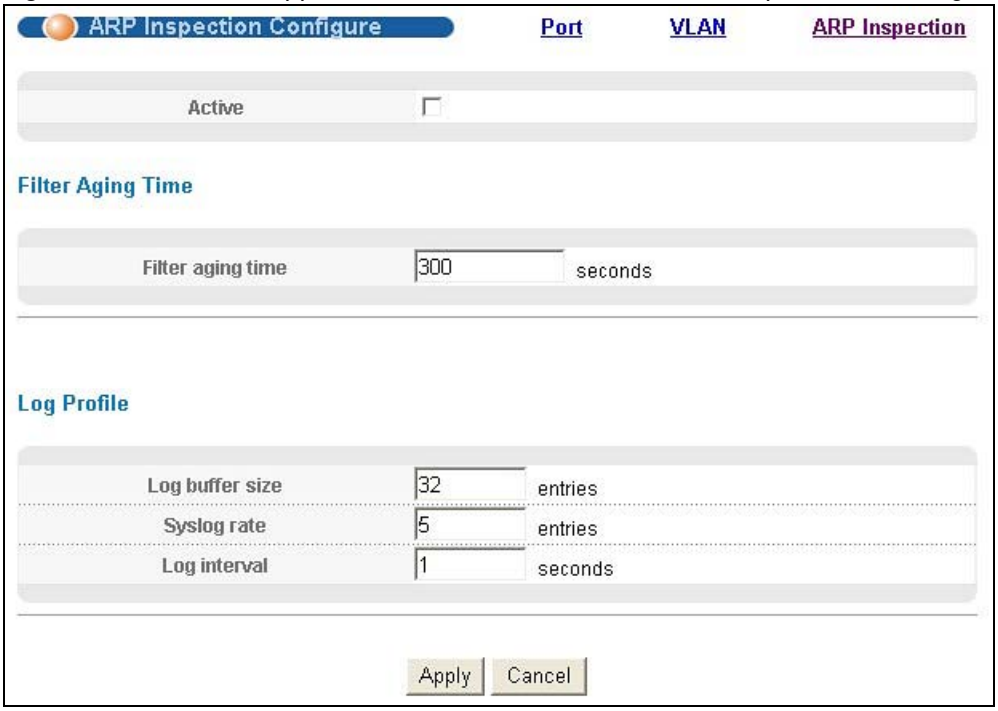
Table 97 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clearing log status table	Click **Apply** to remove all the log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
Total number of logs	This field displays the number of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. If one or more log messages are dropped due to unavailable buffer, there is an entry called **overflow** with the current number of dropped log messages.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each log message.
Port	This field displays the source port of the ARP packet.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID of the ARP packet.
Sender MAC	This field displays the source MAC address of the ARP packet.
Sender IP	This field displays the source IP address of the ARP packet.
Num Pkts	This field displays the number of ARP packets that were consolidated into this log message. The Switch consolidates identical log messages generated by ARP packets in the log consolidation interval into one log message. You can configure this interval in the **ARP Inspection Configure** screen. See Section 25.9 on page 218.
Reason	This field displays the reason the log message was generated. **dhcp deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a dynamic binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **static deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because there were no bindings with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **dhcp permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a dynamic binding. **static permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a static binding. In the **ARP Inspection VLAN Configure** screen, you can configure the Switch to generate log messages when ARP packets are discarded or forwarded based on the VLAN ID of the ARP packet. See Section 25.9.2 on page 221.
Time	This field displays when the log message was generated.

25.9 ARP Inspection Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global settings for the ARP inspection log. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure**.

Figure 154 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 98 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You still have to enable ARP inspection on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.
Filter Aging Time	
Filter aging time	This setting has no effect on existing MAC address filters. Enter how long (1~2147483647 seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically deletes the MAC address filter afterwards. Enter 0 if you want the MAC address filter to be permanent.
Log Profile	
Log buffer size	Enter the maximum number (1~1024) of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and have not been sent to the syslog server yet. Make sure this number is appropriate for the specified **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**. If the number of log messages in the Switch exceeds this number, the Switch stops recording log messages and simply starts counting the number of entries that were dropped due to unavailable buffer. Click **Clearing log status table** in the **ARP Inspection Log Status** screen to clear the log and reset this counter. See Section 25.8 on page 216.

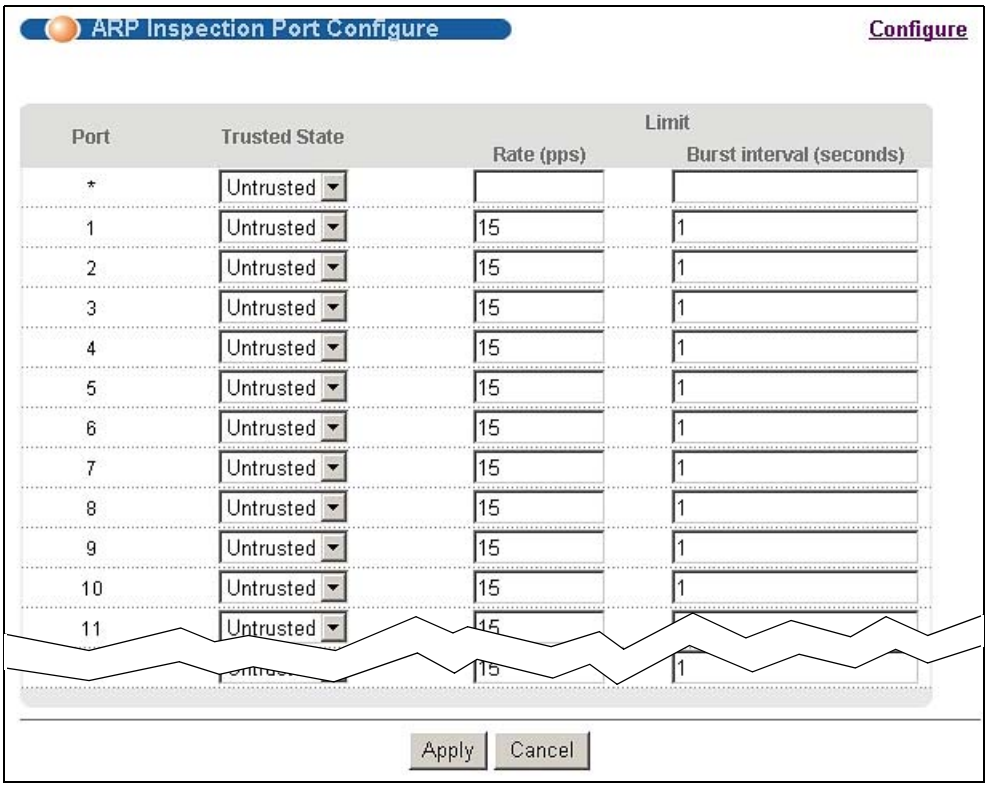
Table 98 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog rate	Enter the maximum number of syslog messages the Switch can send to the syslog server in one batch. This number is expressed as a rate because the batch frequency is determined by the **Log Interval**. You must configure the syslog server (Chapter 40 on page 335) to use this. Enter 0 if you do not want the Switch to send log messages generated by ARP packets to the syslog server. The relationship between **Syslog rate** and **Log interval** is illustrated in the following examples: • 4 invalid ARP packets per second, **Syslog rate** is 5, **Log interval** is 1: the Switch sends 4 syslog messages every second. • 6 invalid ARP packets per second, **Syslog rate** is 5, **Log interval** is 2: the Switch sends 5 syslog messages every 2 seconds.
Log interval	Enter how often (1-86400 seconds) the Switch sends a batch of syslog messages to the syslog server. Enter 0 if you want the Switch to send syslog messages immediately. See **Syslog rate** for an example of the relationship between **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25.9.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on each untrusted port. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port**.

Figure 155 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 99 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the ***** port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Trusted State	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason. The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations: • The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports.
Limit	These settings have no effect on trusted ports.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum rate (1-2048 packets per second) at which the Switch receives ARP packets from each port. The Switch discards any additional ARP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit.
Burst interval (seconds)	The burst interval is the length of time over which the rate of ARP packets is monitored for each port. For example, if the rate is 15 pps and the burst interval is 1 second, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 15 ARP packets in every one-second interval. If the burst interval is 5 seconds, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 75 ARP packets in every five-second interval. Enter the length (1-15 seconds) of the burst interval.

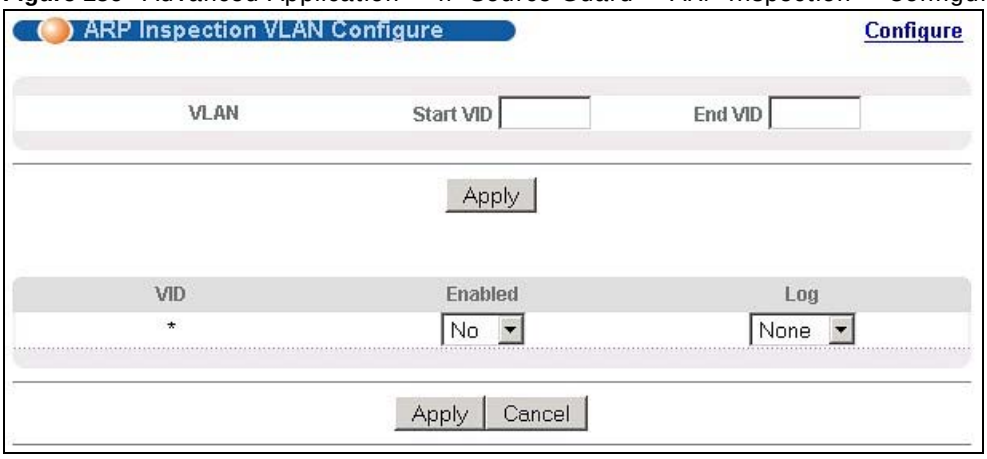
Table 99 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25.9.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 156 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 100 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable ARP inspection on the VLAN. Select **No** to disable ARP inspection on the VLAN.

Table 100 Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Log	Specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from the VLAN. **None**: The Switch does not generate any log messages when it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Deny**: The Switch generates log messages when it discards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Permit**: The Switch generates log messages when it forwards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **All**: The Switch generates log messages every time it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25.10 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

25.10.1 DHCP Snooping Overview

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

25.10.1.1 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

25.10.1.2 DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again. As a result, it is recommended you configure the DHCP snooping database.

The DHCP snooping database maintains the dynamic bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection in a file on an external TFTP server. If you set up the DHCP snooping database, the Switch can reload the dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database after the Switch restarts.

You can configure the name and location of the file on the external TFTP server. The file has the following format:

Figure 157 DHCP Snooping Database File Format

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<binding-1> <checksum-1>
<binding-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
...
<binding-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

The <initial-checksum> helps distinguish between the bindings in the latest update and the bindings from previous updates. Each binding consists of 72 bytes, a space, and another checksum that is used to validate the binding when it is read. If the calculated checksum is not equal to the checksum in the file, that binding and all others after it are ignored.

25.10.1.3 DHCP Relay Option 82 Information

The Switch can add information to DHCP requests that it does not discard. This provides the DHCP server more information about the source of the requests. The Switch can add the following information:

- Slot ID (1 byte), port ID (1 byte), and source VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes)

This information is stored in an Agent Information field in the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames. See Chapter 35 on page 283 for more information about DHCP relay option 82.

When the DHCP server responds, the Switch removes the information in the Agent Information field before forwarding the response to the original source.

You can configure this setting for each source VLAN. This setting is independent of the DHCP relay settings (Chapter 35 on page 283).

25.10.1.4 Configuring DHCP Snooping

Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

1 Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.

2 Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN, and configure DHCP relay option 82.

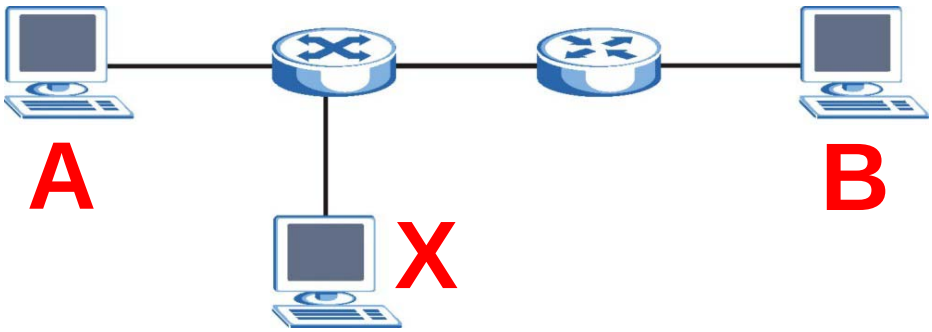
3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of DHCP packets that each port can receive per second.

4 Configure static bindings.

25.10.2 ARP Inspection Overview

Use ARP inspection to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network. This can prevent many kinds of man-in-the-middle attacks, such as the one in the following example.

Figure 158 Example: Man-in-the-middle Attack



In this example, computer **B** tries to establish a connection with computer **A**. Computer **X** is in the same broadcast domain as computer **A** and intercepts the ARP request for computer **A**. Then, computer **X** does the following things:

- It pretends to be computer **A** and responds to computer **B**.
- It pretends to be computer **B** and sends a message to computer **A**.

As a result, all the communication between computer **A** and computer **B** passes through computer **X**. Computer **X** can read and alter the information passed between them.

25.10.2.1 ARP Inspection and MAC Address Filters

When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. You can configure how long the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.

These MAC address filters are different than regular MAC address filters (Chapter 12 on page 112).

- They are stored only in volatile memory.
- They do not use the same space in memory that regular MAC address filters use.
- They appear only in the **ARP Inspection** screens and commands, not in the **MAC Address Filter** screens and commands.

25.10.2.2 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for ARP inspection. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on untrusted ports.

The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.

The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high.

25.10.2.3 Syslog

The Switch can send syslog messages to the specified syslog server (Chapter 40 on page 335) when it forwards or discards ARP packets. The Switch can consolidate log messages and send log messages in batches to make this mechanism more efficient.

25.10.2.4 Configuring ARP Inspection

Follow these steps to configure ARP inspection on the Switch.

1. Configure DHCP snooping. See Section 25.10.1.4 on page 224.

   Note: It is recommended you enable DHCP snooping at least one day before you enable ARP inspection so that the Switch has enough time to build the binding table.

2. Enable ARP inspection on each VLAN.

3. Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of ARP packets that each port can receive per second.

26

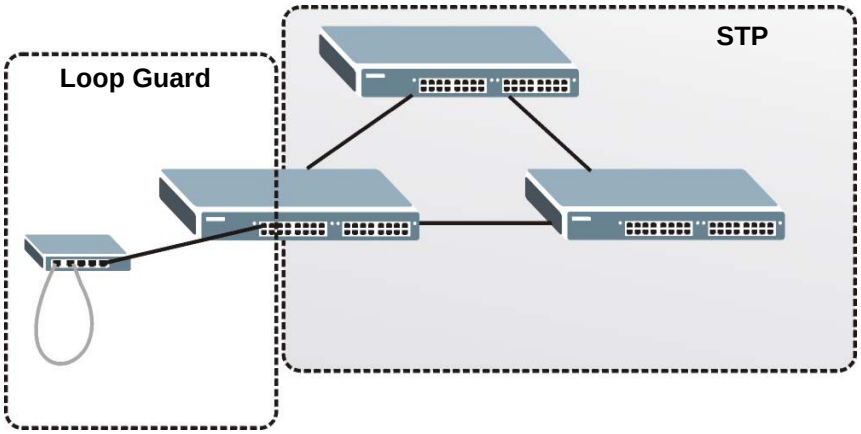
Loop Guard

26.1 Loop Guard Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to guard against loops on the edge of your network.

Loop guard allows you to configure the Switch to shut down a port if it detects that packets sent out on that port loop back to the Switch. While you can use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to prevent loops in the core of your network. STP cannot prevent loops that occur on the edge of your network.

Figure 159 Loop Guard vs. STP



Refer to Section 26.1.2 on page 226 for more information.

26.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **Loop Guard** screen (Section 26.2 on page 228) to enable loop guard on the Switch and in specific ports.

26.1.2 What You Need to Know

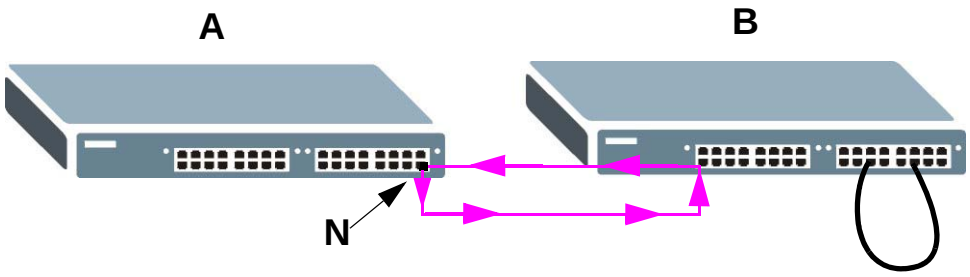
Loop guard is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

If a switch (not in loop state) connects to a switch in loop state, then it will be affected by the switch in loop state in the following way:

- It will receive broadcast messages sent out from the switch in loop state.
- It will receive its own broadcast messages that it sends out as they loop back. It will then re-broadcast those messages again.

The following figure shows port **N** on switch **A** connected to switch **B**. Switch **B** is in loop state. When broadcast or multicast packets leave port **N** and reach switch **B**, they are sent back to port **N** on **A** as they are rebroadcast from B.

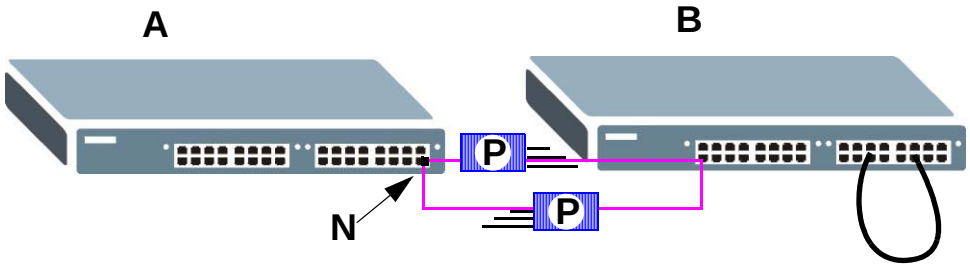
Figure 160 Switch in Loop State



The loop guard feature checks to see if a loop guard enabled port is connected to a switch in loop state. This is accomplished by periodically sending a probe packet and seeing if the packet returns on the same port. If this is the case, the Switch will shut down the port connected to the switch in loop state.

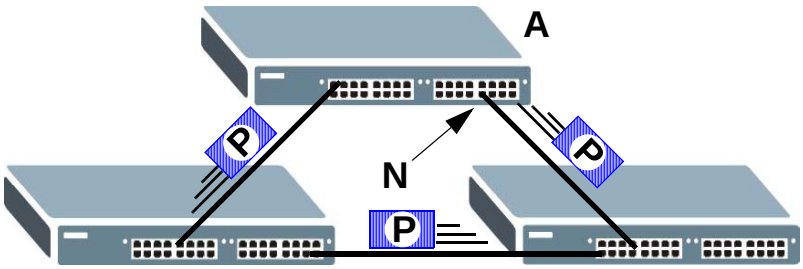
The following figure shows a loop guard enabled port **N** on switch **A** sending a probe packet **P** to switch **B**. Since switch **B** is in loop state, the probe packet **P** returns to port **N** on **A**. The Switch then shuts down port **N** to ensure that the rest of the network is not affected by the switch in loop state.

Figure 161 Loop Guard - Probe Packet



The Switch also shuts down port **N** if the probe packet returns to switch **A** on any other port. In other words loop guard also protects against standard network loops. The following figure illustrates three switches forming a loop. A sample path of the loop guard probe packet is also shown. In this example, the probe packet is sent from port **N** and returns on another port. As long as loop guard is enabled on port **N**. The Switch will shut down port **N** if it detects that the probe packet has returned to the Switch.

Figure 162 Loop Guard - Network Loop



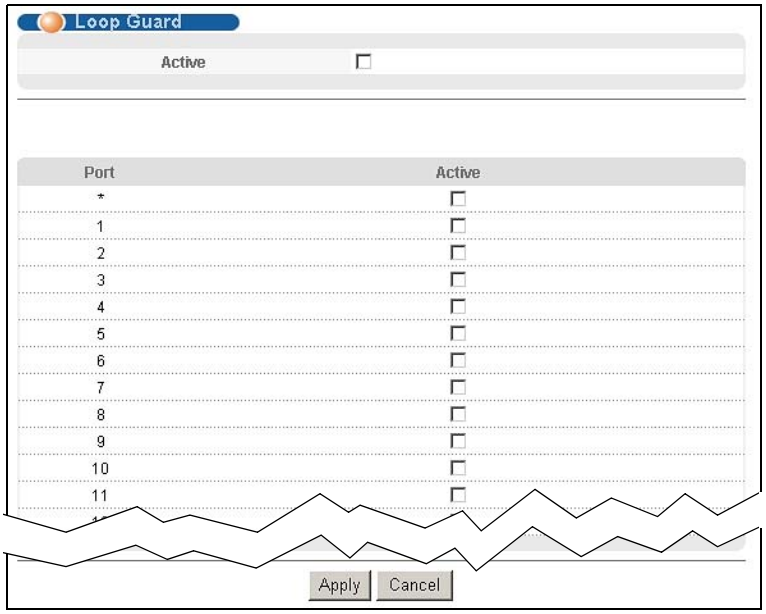
Note: After resolving the loop problem on your network you can re-activate the disabled port via the web configurator (see Section 8.7 on page 68) or via commands (See the CLI Reference Guide).

26.2 Loop Guard Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Loop Guard** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: The loop guard feature can not be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) enabled.

Figure 163 Advanced Application > Loop Guard



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 101 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable loop guard on the Switch. The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop guard feature.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the loop guard feature on this port. The Switch sends probe packets from this port to check if the switch it is connected to is in loop state. If the switch that this port is connected is in loop state the Switch will shut down this port. Clear this check box to disable the loop guard feature.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

27

Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

27.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.

Layer 2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices.

27.1.1 What You Can Do

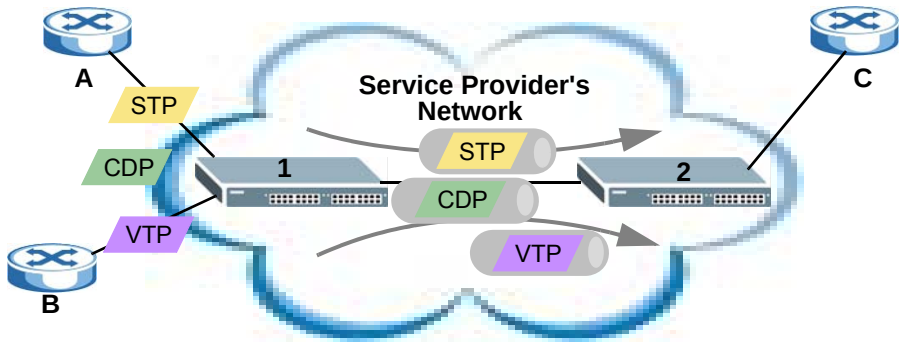
Use the **Layer 2 Protocol Tunnel** screen (Section 27.2 on page 231) to enable layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch and specify a MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer 2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets.

27.1.2 What You Need to Know

Layer 2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices.

L2PT allows edge switches (**1** and **2** in the following figure) to tunnel layer 2 STP (Spanning Tree Protocol), CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets between customer switches (**A**, **B** and **C** in the following figure) connected through the service provider's network. The edge switch encapsulates layer 2 protocol packets with a specific MAC address before sending them across the service provider's network to other edge switches.

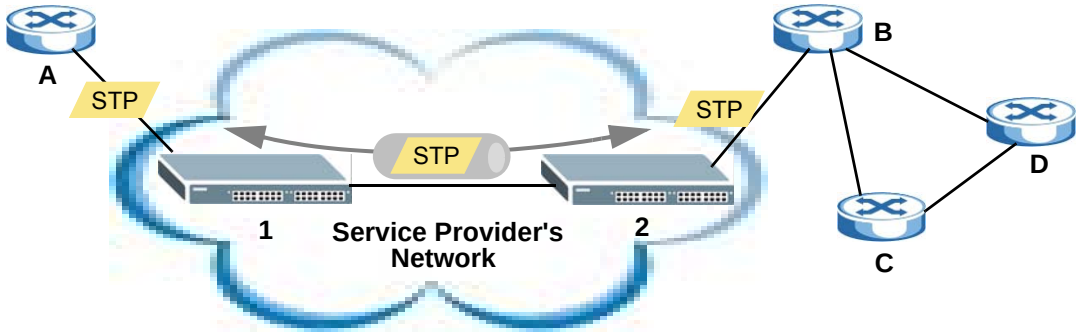
Figure 164 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Network Scenario



In the following example, if you enable L2PT for STP, you can have switches **A**, **B**, **C** and **D** in the same spanning tree, even though switch **A** is not directly connected to switches **B**, **C** and **D**. Topology change information can be propagated throughout the service provider's network.

To emulate a point-to-point topology between two customer switches at different sites, such as **A** and **B**, you can enable protocol tunneling on edge switches **1** and **2** for PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP or UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection).

Figure 165 L2PT Network Example



27.1.2.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Mode

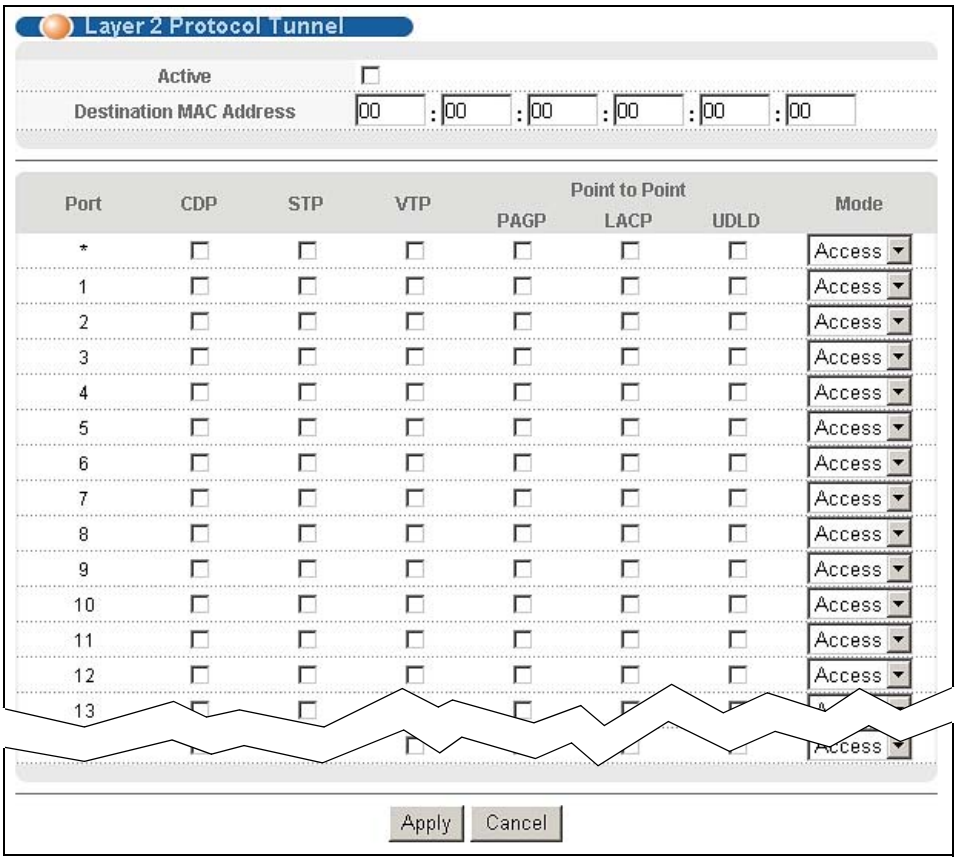
Each port can have two layer 2 protocol tunneling modes, **Access** and **Tunnel**.

- The **Access** port is an ingress port on the service provider's edge device (**1** or **2** in Figure 165 on page 231) and connected to a customer switch (**A** or **B**). Incoming layer 2 protocol packets received on an access port are encapsulated and forwarded to the tunnel ports.
- The **Tunnel** port is an egress port at the edge of the service provider's network and connected to another service provider's switch. Incoming encapsulated layer 2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port are decapsulated and sent to an access port.

27.2 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Click **Advanced Application** > **Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 166 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 102 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.
Destination MAC Address	Specify a MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer 2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets. Note: The MAC address can be either a unicast MAC address or multicast MAC address. If you use a unicast MAC address, make sure the MAC address does not exist in the address table of a switch on the service provider's network. Note: All the edge switches in the service provider's network should be set to use the same MAC address for encapsulation.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
CDP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) packets so that other Cisco devices can be discovered through the service provider's network.
STP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) packets so that STP can run properly across the service provider's network and spanning trees can be set up based on bridge information from all (local and remote) networks.

Table 102 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VTP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets so that all customer switches can use consistent VLAN configuration through the service provider's network.
Point to Point	The Switch supports PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) and UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection) tunneling for a point-to-point topology. Both PAgP and UDLD are Cisco's proprietary data link layer protocols. PAgP is similar to LACP and used to set up a logical aggregation of Ethernet ports automatically. UDLD is to determine the link's physical status and detect a unidirectional link.
PAGP	Select this option to have the Switch send PAgP packets to a peer to automatically negotiate and build a logical port aggregation.
LACP	Select this option to have the Switch send LACP packets to a peer to dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.
UDLD	Select this option to have the Switch send UDLD packets to a peer's port it connected to monitor the physical status of a link.
Mode	Select **Access** to have the Switch encapsulate the incoming layer 2 protocol packets and forward them to the tunnel port(s). Select **Access** for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Note: You can enable L2PT services for STP, LACP, VTP, CDP, UDLD, and PAGP on the access port(s) only. Select **Tunnel** for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch decapsulates the encapsulated layer 2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port by changing the destination MAC address to the original one, and then forward them to an access port. If the service(s) is not enabled on an access port, the protocol packets are dropped.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

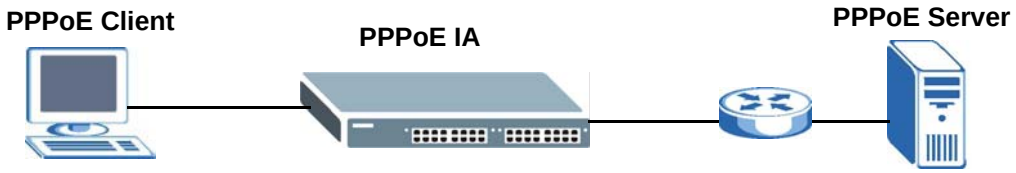
28

PPPoE

28.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Overview

This chapter describes how the Switch gives a PPPoE termination server additional information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.

A PPPoE Intermediate Agent (PPPoE IA) is deployed between a PPPoE server and PPPoE clients. It helps the PPPoE server identify and authenticate clients by adding subscriber line specific information to PPPoE discovery packets from clients on a per-port or per-port-per-VLAN basis before forwarding them to the PPPoE server.



28.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **PPPoE** screen (Section 28.2 on page 236) to display the main PPPoE screen.
- Use the **Intermediate Agent** screen (Section 28.3 on page 237) to enable the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch.
- Use the **PPPoE IA Per-Port** screen (Section 28.3.1 on page 238) to set the port state and configure PPPoE intermediate agent sub-options on a per-port basis.
- Use the **PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN** screen (Section 28.3.2 on page 239) to configure PPPoE IA settings that apply to a specific VLAN on a port.
- Use the **PPPoE IA for VLAN** (Section 28.3.3 on page 241) to enable the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on a VLAN.

28.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on ARP that can help you configure the screen in this chapter.

28.1.2.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Tag Format

If the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to PADI (PPPoE Active Discovery Initialization) and PADR (PPPoE Active Discovery Request) packets from PPPoE clients. This tag is defined in RFC 2516 and has the following format for this feature.

Table 103 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Vendor-specific Tag Format

Tag_Type (0x0105)	Tag_Len	Value	i1	i2

The Tag_Type is 0x0105 for vendor-specific tags, as defined in RFC 2516. The Tag_Len indicates the length of Value, i1 and i2. The Value is the 32-bit number 0x00000DE9, which stands for the “ADSL Forum” IANA entry. i1 and i2 are PPPoE intermediate agent sub-options, which contain additional information about the PPPoE client.

28.1.2.2 Sub-Option Format

There are two types of sub-option: “Agent Circuit ID Sub-option” and “Agent Remote ID Sub-option”. They have the following formats.

Table 104 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: User-defined String

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	String (63 bytes)

Table 105 PPPoE IA Remote ID Sub-option Format

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x02 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	MAC Address or String (63 bytes)

The 1 in the first field identifies this as an Agent Circuit ID sub-option and 2 identifies this as an Agent Remote ID sub-option. The next field specifies the length of the field. The Switch takes the Circuit ID string you manually configure for a VLAN on a port as the highest priority and the Circuit ID string for a port as the second priority. In addition, the Switch puts the PPPoE client’s MAC address into the Agent Remote ID Sub-option if you do not specify any user-defined string.

Flexible Circuit ID Syntax with Identifier String and Variables

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a VLAN on a specific port or for a specific port, the Switch adds the user-defined identifier string and variables into the Agent Circuit ID Sub-option. The variables can be the slot ID of the PPPoE client, the port number of the PPPoE client and/or the VLAN ID on the PPPoE packet.

The identifier-string, slot ID, port number and VLAN ID are separated from each other by a pound key (#), semi-colon (;), period (.), comma (,), forward slash (/) or space. An Agent Circuit ID Sub-option example is “Switch/07/0123” and indicates the PPPoE packets come from a PPPoE client which is connected to the Switch’s port 7 and belong to VLAN 123.

Table 106 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Using Identifier String and Variables

SubOpt	Length	Value						
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Identifier String (53 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

WT-101 Default Circuit ID Syntax

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a specific VLAN on a port or for a specific port, and disable the flexible Circuit ID syntax in the **PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** screen, the Switch automatically generates a Circuit ID string according to the default Circuit ID syntax which is

defined in the DSL Forum Working Text (WT)-101. The default access node identifier is the host name of the PPPoE intermediate agent and the eth indicates “Ethernet”.

Table 107 PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Defined in WT-101

SubOpt	Length	Value								
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Access Node Identifier (20 byte)	Space (1 byte)	eth (3 byte)	Space (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	/ (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	: (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

28.1.2.3 Port State

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for the PPPoE intermediate agent. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping or ARP inspection. You can also specify the agent sub-options (circuit ID and remote ID) that the Switch adds to PADI and PADR packets from PPPoE clients.

Trusted ports are connected to PPPoE servers.

- If a PADO (PPPoE Active Discovery Offer), PADS (PPPoE Active Discovery Session-confirmation), or PADT (PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate) packet is sent from a PPPoE server and received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to all other ports.
- If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s).

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE discovery packets if you enable the PPPoE intermediate agent and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers.

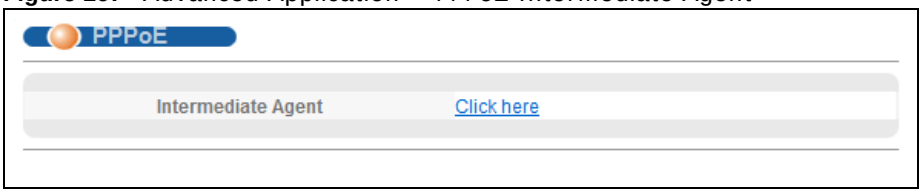
- If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s).
- The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.

28.2 The PPPoE Screen

Use this screen to configure the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch.

Click **Advanced Application** > **PPPoE** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click **Click Here** to go to the **Intermediate Agent** screen.

Figure 167 Advanced Application > PPPoE Intermediate Agent

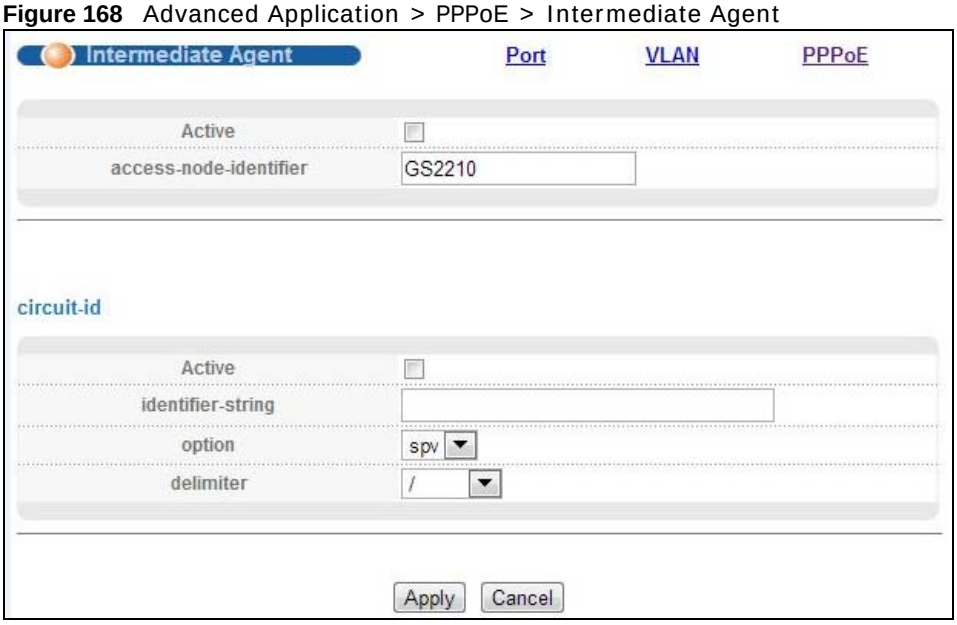


28.3 PPPoE Intermediate Agent

Use this screen to configure the Switch to give a PPPoE termination server additional subscriber information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.

Click **Advanced Application** > **PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 168 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 108 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the PPPoE intermediate agent globally on the Switch.
access-node-identifier	Enter up to 20 ASCII characters to identify the PPPoE intermediate agent. Hyphens (-) and spaces are also allowed. The default is the Switch's host name.
circuit-id	Use this section to configure the Circuit ID field in the PADI and PADR packets. The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port or for a specific VLAN on a port has priority over this. The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port (in the **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port** screen) or for a specific VLAN on a port (in the **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN** screen) has priority over this. That means, if you also want to configure PPPoE IA Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN setting, leave the fields here empty and configure circuit-id and remote-id in the Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN screen.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch add the user-defined identifier string and variables (specified in the **option** field) to PADI or PADR packets from PPPoE clients. If you leave this option unselected and do not configure any Circuit ID string (using CLI commands) on the Switch, the Switch will use the string specified in the **access-node-identifier** field.
identifier-string	Specify a string that the Switch adds in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. You can enter up to 53 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.

Table 108 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
option	Select the variables that you want the Switch to generate and add in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. The variable options include **sp**, **sv**, **pv** and **spv** which indicate combinations of slot-port, slot-VLAN, port-VLAN and slot-port-VLAN respectively. The Switch enters a zero into the PADI and PADR packets for the slot value.
delimiter	Select a delimiter to separate the identifier-string, slot ID, port number and/or VLAN ID from each other. You can use a pound key (**#**), semi-colon (**;**), period (**.**), comma (**,**), forward slash (**/**) or space.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

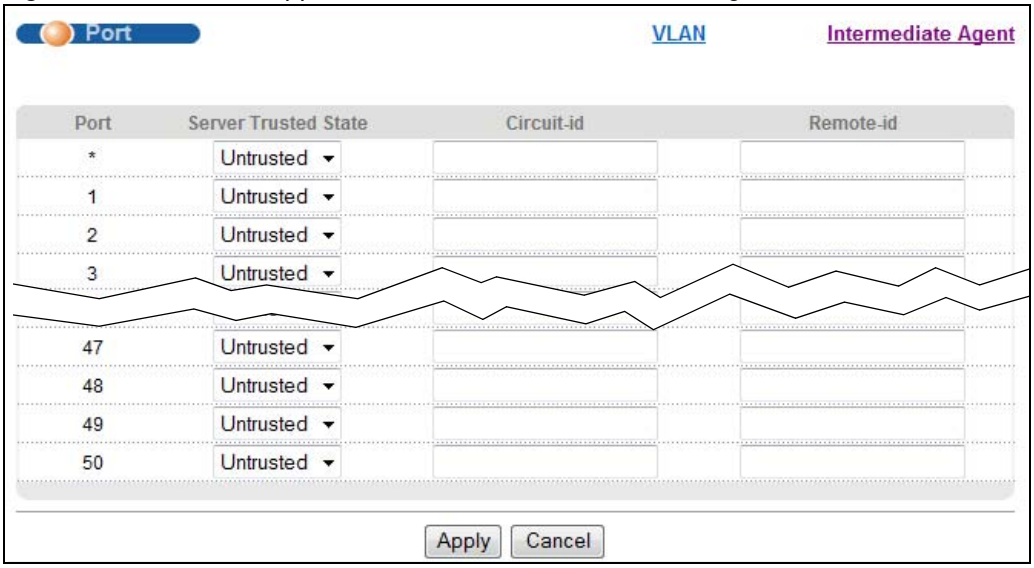
28.3.1 PPPoE IA Per-Port

Use this screen to specify whether individual ports are trusted or untrusted ports and have the Switch add extra information to PPPoE discovery packets from PPPoE clients on a per-port basis.

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE packets if you enable the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch and there are no trusted ports.

Click the **Port** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 169 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 109 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 109 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port (continued)

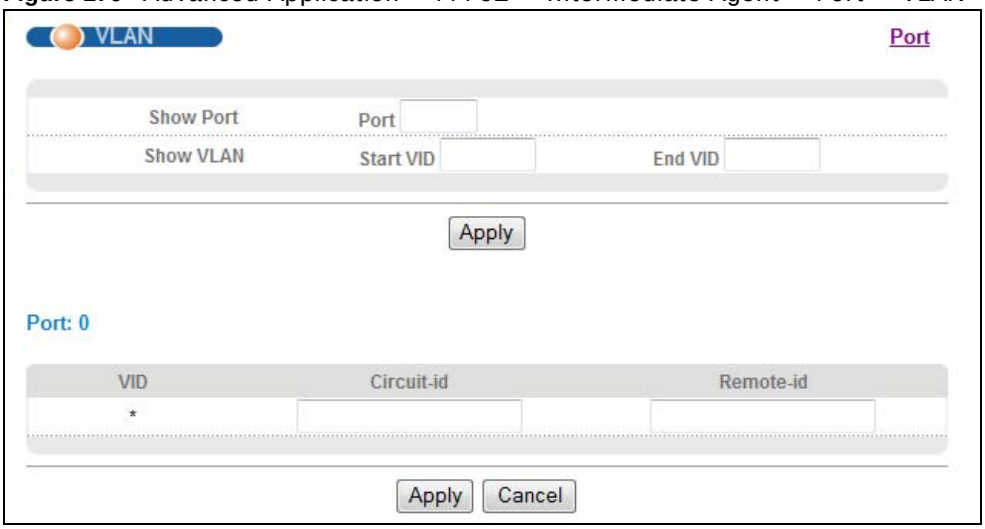
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Trusted State	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). Trusted ports are uplink ports connected to PPPoE servers. If a PADO (PPPoE Active Discovery Offer), PADS (PPPoE Active Discovery Session-confirmation), or PADT (PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate) packet is sent from a PPPoE server and received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to all other ports. If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s). Untrusted ports are downlink ports connected to subscribers. If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s). The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.
Circuit-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed. The Circuit ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN** screen) has the highest priority.
Remote-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed. If you do not specify a string here or in the **Remote-id** field for a VLAN on a port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address. The Remote ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN** screen) has the highest priority.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28.3.2 PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN

Use this screen to configure PPPoE IA settings that apply to a specific VLAN on a port.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent > Port** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 170 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 110 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN

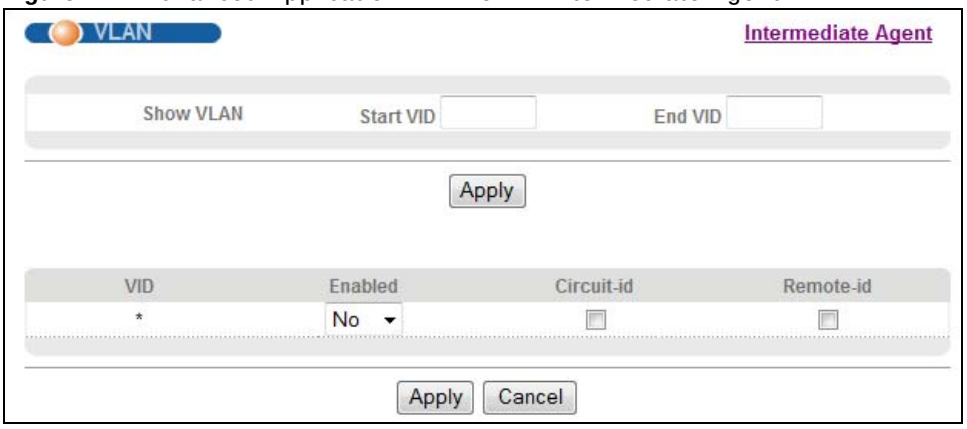
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show Port	Enter a port number to show the PPPoE Intermediate Agent settings for the specified VLAN(s) on the port.
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click **Apply** to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
Port	This field displays the port number specified above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Circuit-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed. The Circuit ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Remote-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed. If you do not specify a string here or in the **Remote-id** field for a specific port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address. The Remote ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28.3.3 PPPoE IA for VLAN

Use this screen to set whether the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled on a VLAN and whether the Switch appends the Circuit ID and/or Remote ID to PPPoE discovery packets from a specific VLAN.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 171 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 111 Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click **Apply** to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Enabled	Select this option to turn on the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on a VLAN.
Circuit-id	Select this option to make the Circuit ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Remote-id	Select this option to make the Remote ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29

Error Disable

29.1 Error Disable Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the rate limit for control packets on a port, and set the Switch to take an action (such as to shut down a port or stop sending packets) on a port when the Switch detects a pre-configured error. It also shows you how to configure the Switch to automatically undo the action after the error is gone.

29.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Errdisable Status** screen (Section 29.2 on page 242) to view whether the Switch detected that control packets exceeded the rate limit configured for a port and related information.
- Use the **CPU Protection** screen (Section 29.3 on page 244) to limit the maximum number of control packets (ARP, BPDU and/or IGMP) that the Switch can receive or transmit on a port.
- Use the **Errdisable Detect** screen (Section 29.4 on page 245) to have the Switch detect whether the control packets exceed the rate limit configured for a port and configure the action to take once the limit is exceeded.
- Use the **Errdisable Recovery** screen (Section 29.5 on page 246) to set the Switch to automatically undo an action after the error is gone.

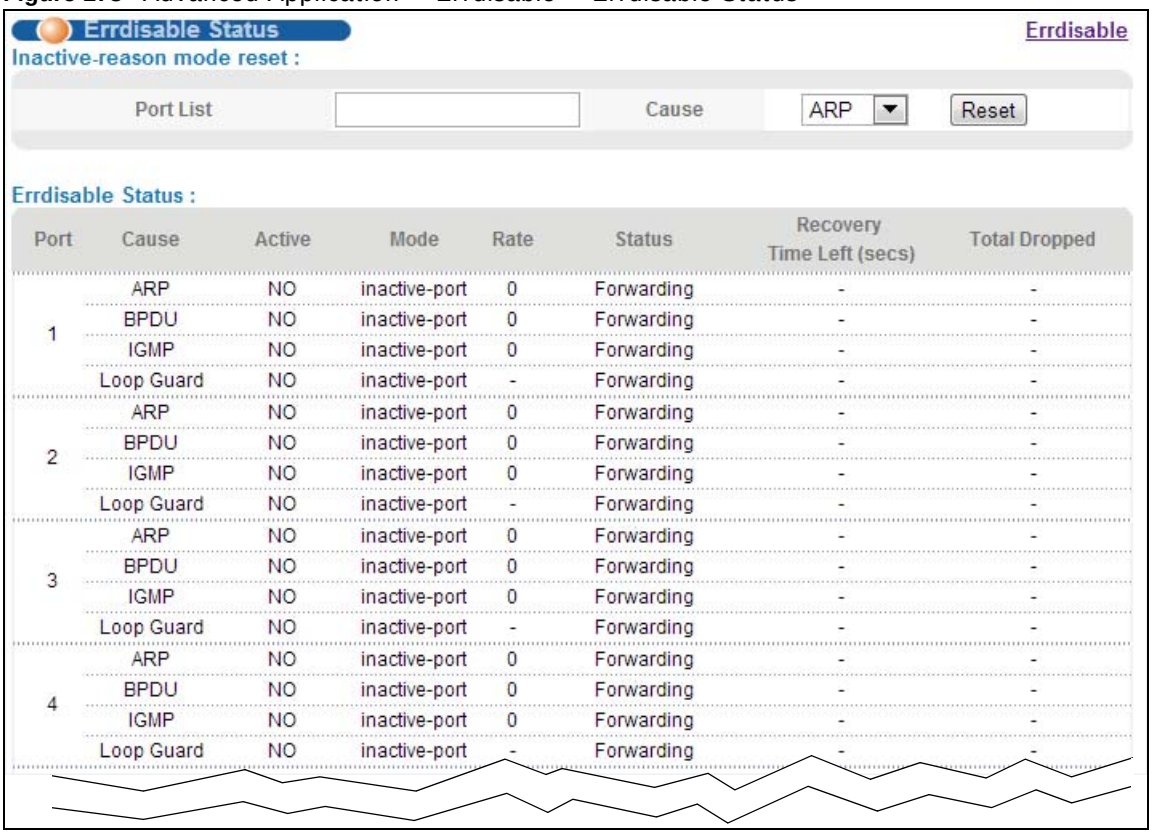
Use this screen to configure error disable related settings. Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 172 Advanced Application > Errdisable

29.2 Error-Disable Status

Use this screen to view whether the Switch detected that control packets exceeded the rate limit configured for a port and related information. Click the **Click here** link next to **Errdisable Status** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 173 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 112 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Inactive-reason mode reset	
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to reset inactive-reason status.
Cause	Select the cause of inactive-reason mode you want to reset here.
Reset	Press to reset the specified port(s) to handle ARP, BPDU or IGMP packets instead of ignoring them, if the port(s) is in inactive-reason mode.
Errdisable Status	
Port	This is the number of the port on which you want to configure Errdisable Status.
Cause	This refers to the cause of Errdisable Detect or Errdisable Recovery on the Switch.
Active	This field displays whether ARP, BPDU, IGMP and LOOP GUARD on the port is being detected or not.
Mode	This field shows the mode of the cause. • **inactive-port** - The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received. • **inactive-reason** - The Switch drops all the specified control packets (such as BPDU) on the port. • **rate-limitation** - The Switch drops the additional control packets the port(s) has to handle in every one second.
Rate	This field displays how many control packets this port can receive or transmit per second. It can be adjusted in CPU Protection. **0** means no rate limit.

Table 112 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Status (continued)

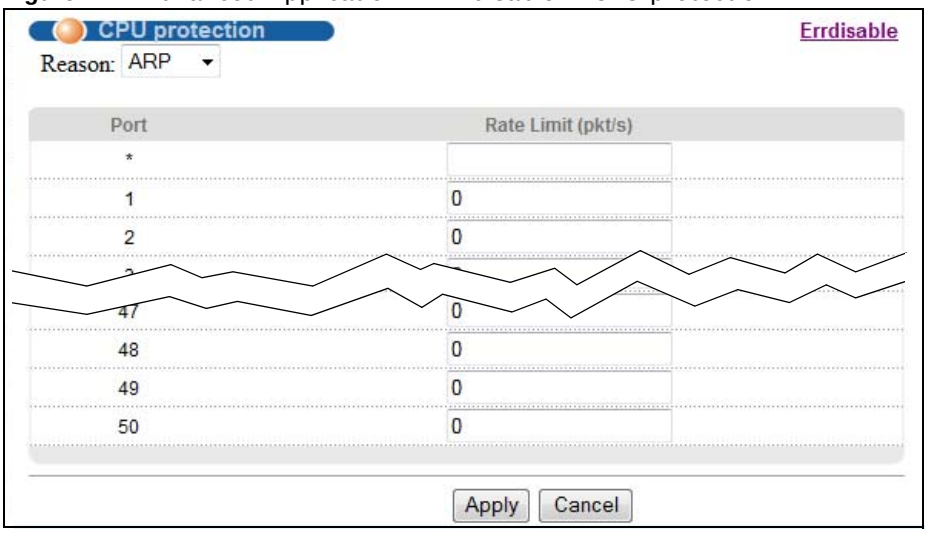
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the errdisable status • **Forwarding**: The Switch is forwarding packets. Rate-limitation mode is always in **Forwarding** status. • **Err-disable**: The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received (inactive-port) or drops specified control packets on the port (inactive-reason)
Recovery Time	This field displays the time (seconds) left before the port(s) becomes active of Errdisable Recovery.
Total Dropped	This field displays the total packet number dropped by this port where the packet rate exceeds the rate of mode rate-limitation.

29.3 CPU Protection Configuration

Use this screen to limit the maximum number of control packets (ARP, BPDU and/or IGMP) that the Switch can receive or transmit on a port. Click the **Click Here** link next to **CPU protection** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Note: After you configure this screen, make sure you also enable error detection for the specific control packets in the **Advanced Application** > **Errdisable** > **Errdisable Detect** screen.

Figure 174 Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 113 Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	Select the type of control packet you want to configure here.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

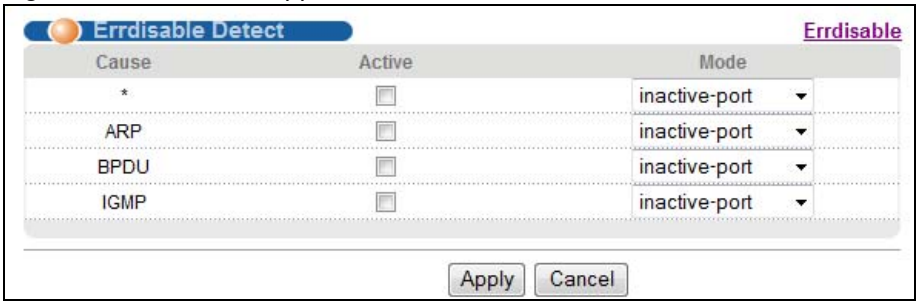
Table 113 Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rate Limit (pkt/s)	Enter a number from 0 to 256 to specify how many control packets this port can receive or transmit per second. **0** means no rate limit. You can configure the action that the Switch takes when the limit is exceeded. See Section 29.4 on page 245 for detailed information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29.4 Error-Disable Detect Configuration

Use this screen to have the Switch detect whether the control packets exceed the rate limit configured for a port and configure the action to take once the limit is exceeded. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Detect** link in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 175 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 114 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cause	This field displays the types of control packet that may cause CPU overload.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch detect if the configured rate limit for a specific control packet is exceeded and take the action selected below.
Mode	Select the action that the Switch takes when the number of control packets exceed the rate limit on a port, set in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection** screen. • **inactive-port** - The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received. • **inactive-reason** - The Switch drops all the specified control packets (such as BPDU) on the port. • **rate-limitation** - The Switch drops the additional control packets the port(s) has to handle in every one second.

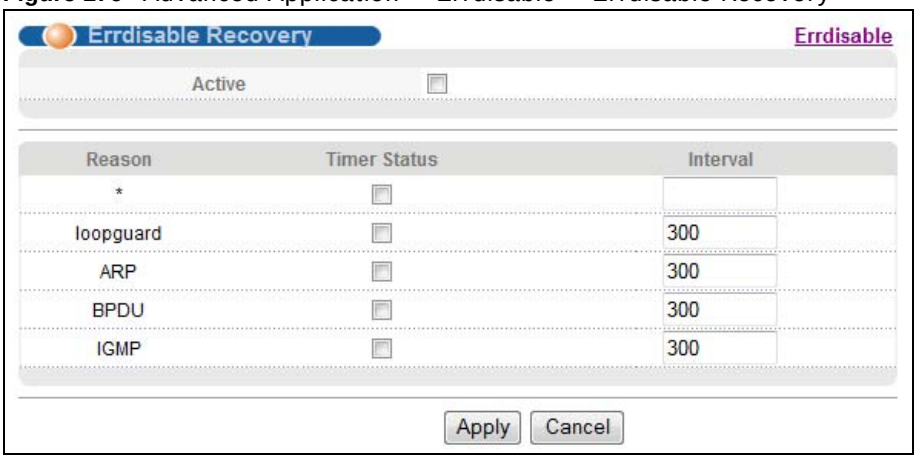
Table 114 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29.5 Error-Disable Recovery Configuration

Use this screen to configure the Switch to automatically undo an action after the error is gone. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Recovery** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Figure 176 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 115 Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to turn on the error-disable recovery function on the Switch.
Reason	This field displays the supported features that allow the Switch to shut down a port or discard packets on a port according to the feature requirements and what action you configure.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Timer Status	Select this option to allow the Switch to wait for the specified time interval to activate a port or allow specific packets on a port, after the error was gone. Deselect this option to turn off this rule.
Interval	Enter the number of seconds (from 30 to 2592000) for the time interval.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

30

Private VLAN

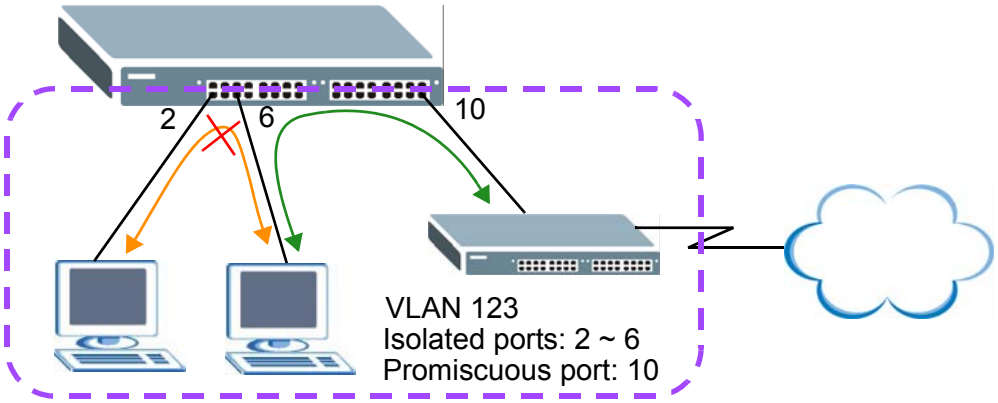
This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to prevent communications between ports in a VLAN.

30.1 Private VLAN Overview

Private VLAN allows you to do port isolation within a VLAN in a simple way. You specify which port(s) in a VLAN is not isolated by adding it to the promiscuous port list. The Switch automatically adds other ports in this VLAN to the isolated port list and blocks traffic between the isolated ports. A promiscuous port can communicate with any port in the same VLAN. An isolated port can communicate with the promiscuous port(s) only.

Note: You can have up to one private VLAN rule for each VLAN.

Figure 177 Private VLAN Example

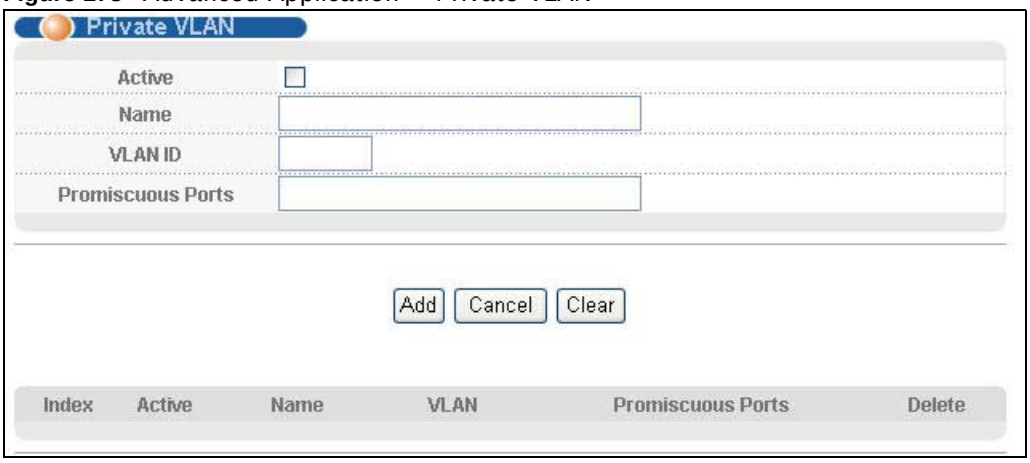


Note: Make sure you keep at least one port in the promiscuous port list for a VLAN with private VLAN enabled. Otherwise, this VLAN is blocked from the whole network.

30.2 Configuring Private VLAN

Click **Advanced Application** > **Private VLAN** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 178 Advanced Application > Private VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 116 Advanced Application > Private VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to enable private VLAN in a VLAN.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN to which this rule applies.
Promiscuous Ports	Enter the number of the port(s) that can communicate with any ports in the same VLAN. Other ports belonging to this VLAN will be added to the isolation list and can only send and receive traffic from the port(s) you specify here.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the rule.
Active	This shows whether this rule is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
VLAN	This is the VLAN to which this rule is applied.
Promiscuous Ports	This shows the port(s) that can communicate with any ports in the same VLAN.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

31

Green Ethernet

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to reduce the power consumed by switch ports.

31.1 Green Ethernet Overview

Green Ethernet reduces switch port power consumption in the following ways.

IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)

If EEE is enabled, both sides of a link support EEE and there is no traffic, the port enters Low Power Idle (LPI) mode. LPI mode turns off some functions of the physical layer (becomes quiet) to save power. Periodically the port transmits a REFRESH signal to allow the link partner to keep the link alive. When there is traffic to be sent, a WAKE signal is sent to the link partner to return the link to active mode.

Auto Power Down

Auto Power Down turns off almost all functions of the port's physical layer functions when the link is down, so the port only uses power to check for a link up pulse from the link partner. After the link up pulse is detected, the port wakes up from **Auto Power Down** and operates normally.

Short Reach

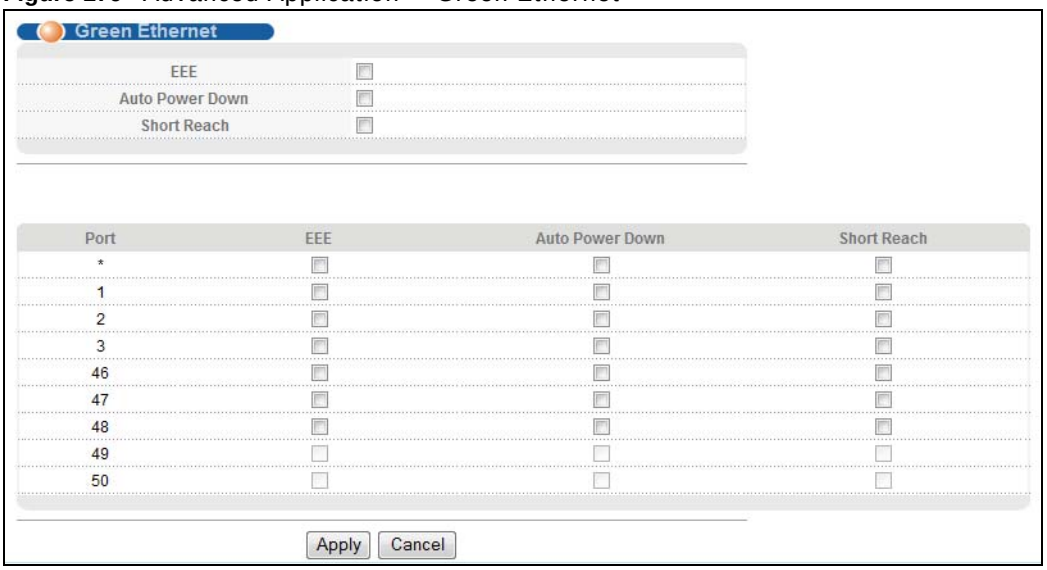
Traditional Ethernet transmits all data with enough power to reach the maximum cable length. Shorter cables lose less power, so **Short Reach** saves power by adjusting the transmit power of each port according to the length of cable attached to that port.

31.2 Configuring Green Ethernet

Click **Advanced Application** > **Green Ethernet** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: EEE, Auto Power Down and Short Reach are not supported on an uplink port.

Figure 179 Advanced Application > Green Ethernet



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Advanced Application > Green Ethernet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet globally.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down globally.
Short Reach	Select this to activate Short Reach globally.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet on this port.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down on this port.
Short Reach	Select this to activate Short Reach on this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

31

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)

32.1 LLDP Overview

The LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) is a layer 2 protocol. It allows a network device to advertise its identity and capabilities on the local network. It also allows the device to maintain and store information from adjacent devices which are directly connected to the network device. This helps an administrator discover network changes and perform necessary network reconfiguration and management. The device information is encapsulated in the LLDPDUs (LLDP data units) in the form of TLV (Type, Length, Value). Device information carried in the received LLDPDUs is stored in the standard MIB.

The Switch supports these basic management TLVs.

- End of LLDPDU (mandatory)
- Chassis ID (mandatory)
- Port ID (mandatory)
- Time to Live (mandatory)
- Port Description (optional)
- System Name (optional)
- System Description (optional)
- System Capabilities (optional)
- Management Address (optional)

The Switch also supports the IEEE 802.1 and IEEE 802.3 organizationally-specific TLVs.

IEEE 802.1 specific TLVs:

- Port VLAN ID TLV (optional)
- Port and Protocol VLAN ID TLV (optional)

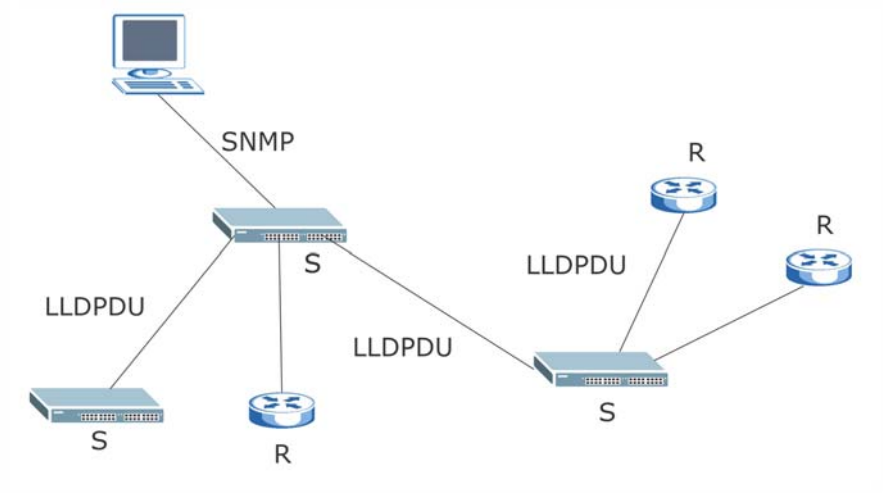
IEEE 802.3 specific TLVs:

- MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV (optional)
- Power via MDI TLV (optional, For PoE models only)
- Link Aggregation TLV (optional)
- Maximum Frame Size TLV (optional)

The optional TLVs are inserted between the Time To Live TLV and the End of LLDPDU TLV.

The next figure demonstrates that the network devices Switches and Routers (S and R) transmit and receive device information via LLDPDU and the network manager can query the information using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

Figure 180 LLDP Overview



32.2 LLDP-MED Overview

LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) is an extension to the standard LLDP developed by the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) TR-41.4 subcommittee which defines the enhanced discovery capabilities, such as VoIP applications, to enable network administrators manage their network topology application more efficiently. Unlike the traditional LLDP, which has some limitations when handling multiple application devices, the LLDP-MED offers display of accurate physical topology, interoperability of devices, and easy trouble shooting for misconfigured IP addresses. There are three classes of endpoint devices that the LLDP-MED supports:

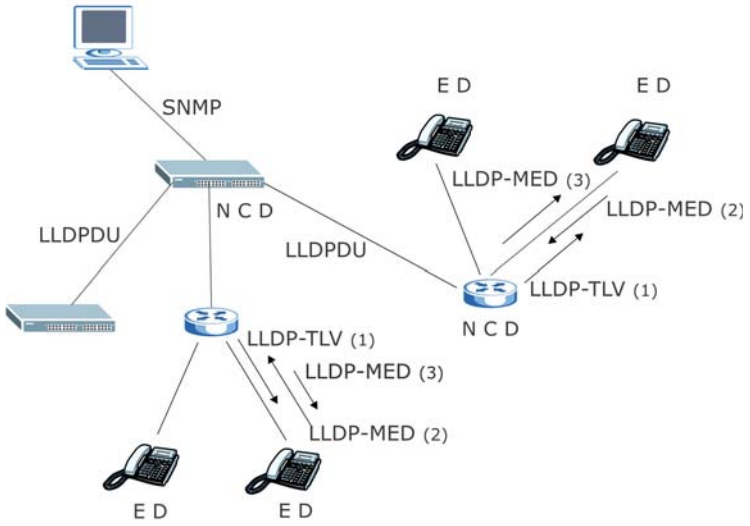
Class I: IP Communications Controllers or other communication related servers

Class II: Voice Gateways, Conference Bridges or Media Servers

Class III: IP-Phones, PC-based Softphones, End user Communication Appliances supporting IP Media

The following figure shows that with the LLDP-MED, network connectivity devices (NCD) like Switches and Routers will transmit LLDP TLV to endpoint device (ED) like IP Phone first (1), to get its device type and capabilities information, then it will receive that information in LLDP-MED TLV back from endpoint devices (2), after that the network connectivity devices will transmit LLDP-MED TLV (3) to provision the endpoint device to such that the endpoint device's network policy and location identification information is updated. Since LLDPDU updates status and configuration information periodically, network managers may check the result of provision via remote status. The remote status is updated by receiving LLDP-MED TLVs from endpoint devices.

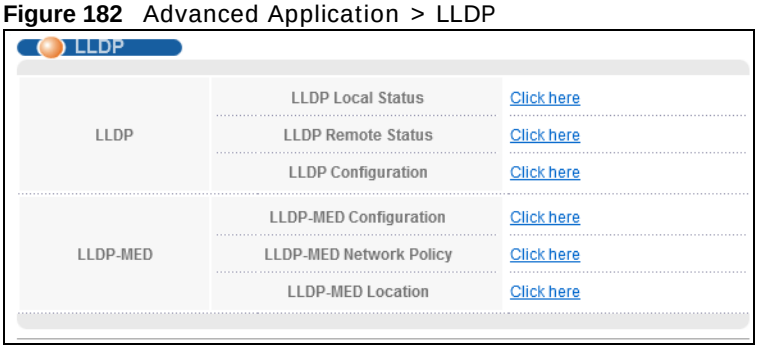
Figure 181 LLDP-MED Overview



32.3 LLDP Screens

Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 182 Advanced Application > LLDP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 117 Advanced Application > LLDP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LLDP	
LLDP Local Status	Click here to show a screen with the Switch's LLDP information.
LLDP Remote Status	Click here to show a screen with LLDP information from the neighboring devices.
LLDP Configuration	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP parameters.
LLDP-MED	
LLDP-MED Configuration	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) parameters.

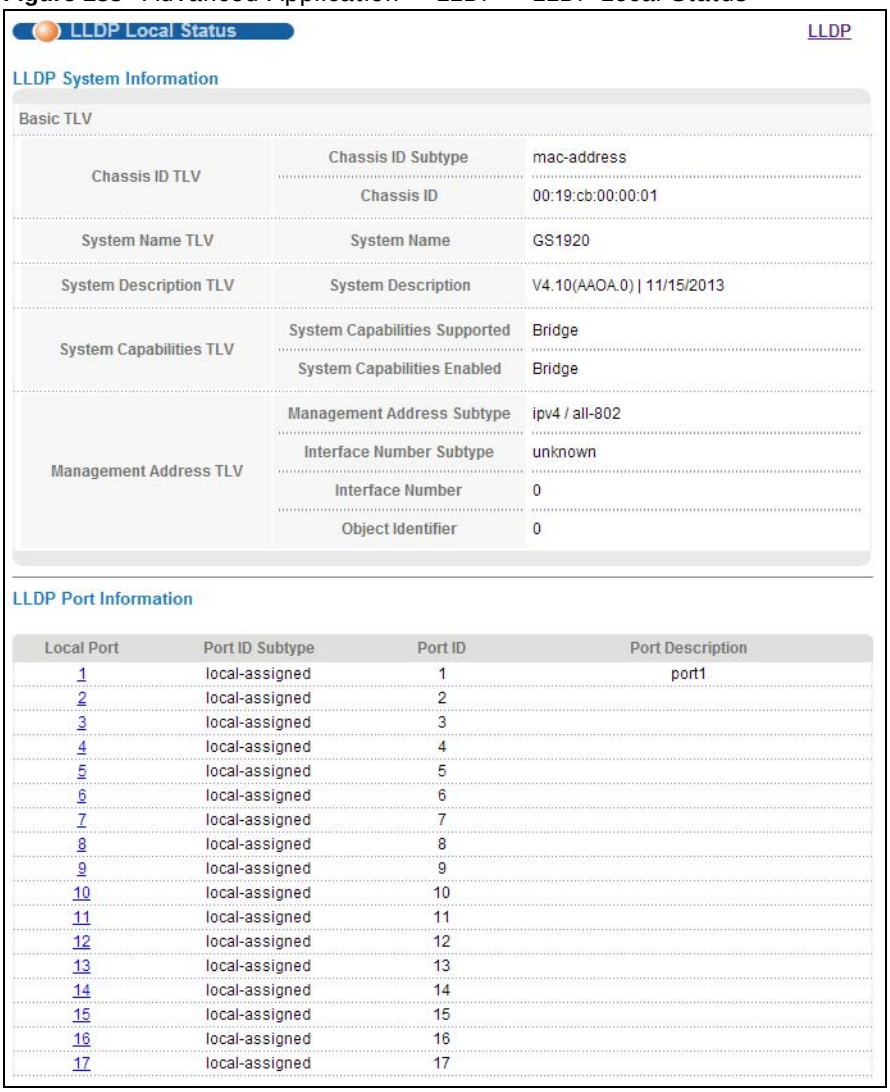
Table 117 Advanced Application > LLDP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LLDP-MED Network Policy	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) network policy parameters.
LLDP-MED Location	Click here to show a screen to configure LLDP-MED (Link Layer Discovery Protocol for Media Endpoint Devices) location parameters.

32.4 LLDP Local Status

This screen displays a summary of LLDP status on this Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Local Status (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 183 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 118 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic TLV	
Chassis ID TLV	This displays the chassis ID of the local Switch, that is the Switch you're configuring. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype. Chassis ID Subtype - this displays how the chassis of the remote Switch is identified. Chassis ID - This displays the chassis ID of the local Switch. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype.
System Name TLV	This shows the Host Name of the Switch.
System Description TLV	This shows the System Description which is the firmware version of the Switch.
System Capabilities TLV	This shows the System Capabilities enabled and supported on the local Switch. • System Capabilities Supported - Bridge • System Capabilities Enabled - Bridge
Management Address TLV	The Management Address TLV identifies an address associated with the local LLDP agent that may be used to reach higher layer entities to assist discovery by network management. The TLV may also include the system interface number and an object identifier (OID) that are associated with this management address This field displays the Management Address settings on the specified port(s). • Management Address Subtype - ipv4 / all-802 • Interface Number Subtype - unknown • Interface Number - 0 (not supported) • Object Number - 0 (not supported)
LLDP Port Information	This displays the local port information.
Local Port	This displays the local port number which receives the LLDPDU from the remote device. Click a port number to view the detailed LLDP status on this port at **LLDP Local Port Status Detail** screen.
Port ID Subtype	This indicates how the port ID field is identified.
Port ID	This is an alpha-numeric string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.
Port Description	This shows the port description that the Switch will advertise from this port.

32.4.1 LLDP Local Port Status Detail

This screen displays detailed LLDP status for each port on this Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Local Status** and then, click a port number, for example 1 (Port) in the local port column to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 184 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

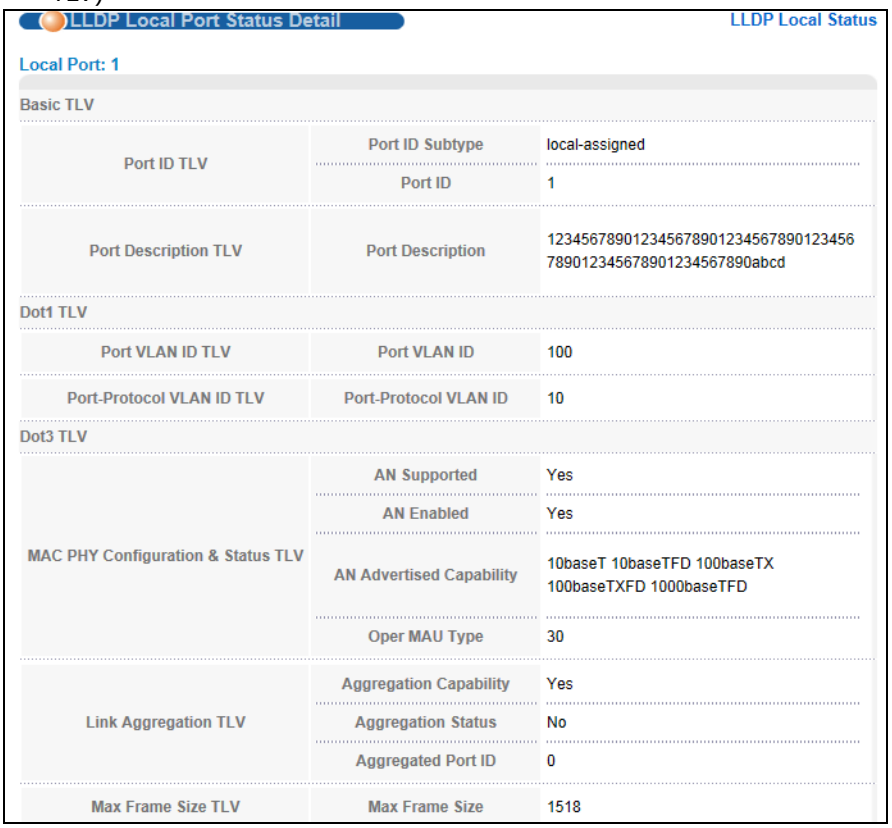


Figure 185 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

MED TLV

Capabilities TLV	Network Policy	Yes
	Location	Yes
	Extend Power via MDI PSE	No
	Extend Power via MDI PD	No
	Inventory Management	No
Device Type TLV	Device Type	Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	Voice	VLAN ID 10, tagged, L2-priority 7, DSCP 63
	Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 100, tagged, L2-priority 2, DSCP 10
	Guest-Voice	VLAN ID 20, tagged, L2-priority 3, DSCP 12
	Guest-Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 0, untagged, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Softphone-Voice	VLAN ID 200, tagged, L2-priority 1, DSCP 1
	Video-Conferencing	VLAN ID 0, untagged, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Streaming-Video	VLAN ID 300, tagged, L2-priority 4, DSCP 20
	Video-Signaling	VLAN ID 400, tagged, L2-priority 6, DSCP 55
Location Identification TLV	Coordinate-base LCI	latitute north 24.0 longitute east 120.0 altitute meter 13.0 datum WGS84
	Civic LCI	country TW city HSINCHU building ZYXEL
	ELIN	1234567890

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 119 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic TLV	These are the Basic TLV flags
Port ID TLV	The port ID TLV identifies the specific port that transmitted the LLDP frame. • Port ID Subtype: This shows how the port is identified. • Port ID: This is the ID of the port.
Port Description TLV	This displays the local port description.
Dot1 TLV	
Port VLAN ID TLV	This displays the VLAN ID sent by the IEEE 802.1 Port VLAN ID TLV.
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	This displays the IEEE 802.1 Port Protocol VLAN ID TLVs, which indicates whether the VLAN is enabled and supported.
Dot3 TLV	
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	The MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV advertises the bit-rate and duplex capability of the sending 802.3 node. It also advertises the current duplex and bit-rating of the sending node. Lastly, it advertises whether these setting were the result of auto-negotiation during link initiation or manual override. • AN Supported - Displays if the port supports or does not support auto-negotiation. • AN Enabled - The current auto-negotiation status of the port. • AN Advertised Capability - The auto-negotiation capabilities of the port. • Oper MAU Type - The current Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) type of the port
Link Aggregation TLV	The Link Aggregation TLV indicates whether the link is capable of being aggregated, whether the link is currently in an aggregation, and if in an aggregation, the port identification of the aggregation. • Aggregation Capability — The current aggregation capability of the port. • Aggregation Status — The current aggregation status of the port. • Aggregation Port ID — The aggregation ID of the current port.
Max Frame Size TLV	This displays the maximum supported frame size in octets.
MED TLV	LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) is an extension of LLDP that provides additional capabilities to support media endpoint devices. MED enables advertisement and discovery of network policies, device location discovery to allow creation of location databases, and information for troubleshooting.
Capabilities TLV	This field displays which LLDP-MED TLV are capable to transmit on the Switch. • Network Policy • Location
Device Type TLV	This is the LLDP-MED device class. The Zyxel Switch device type is: • Network Connectivity

Table 119 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Local Status > LLDP Local Port Status Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network Policy TLV	This displays a network policy for the specified application. • Voice • Voice-Signaling • Guest-Voice • Guest-Voice-Signaling • Softphone-Voice • Video-Conferencing • Streaming-Video • Video-Signaling
Location Identification TLV	This shows the location information of a caller by its ELIN (Emergency Location Identifier Number) or the IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information (Civic Address LCI). • Civic LCI - IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information • ELIN - (Emergency Location Identifier Number) • Coordinate-based LCI - latitude, longitude and altitude coordinates of the location Configuration Information (LCI)

32.5 LLDP Remote Status

This screen displays a summary of LLDP status for each LLDP connection to a neighboring Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Remote Status (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 186 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 120 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	The index number shows the number of remote devices that are connected to the Switch. Click on an index number to view the detailed LLDP status for this remote device at **LLDP Remote Port Status Detail** screen.
Local Port	This is the port number of local Switch that received LLDPDU from the remote device.
Chassis ID	This displays the chassis ID of the remote device associated with the transmitting LLDP agent. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype. For example, the MAC address of the remote device.
Port ID	This is an alpha-numeric string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted. The port ID is identified by the port ID subtype.
Port Description	This displays a description for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.

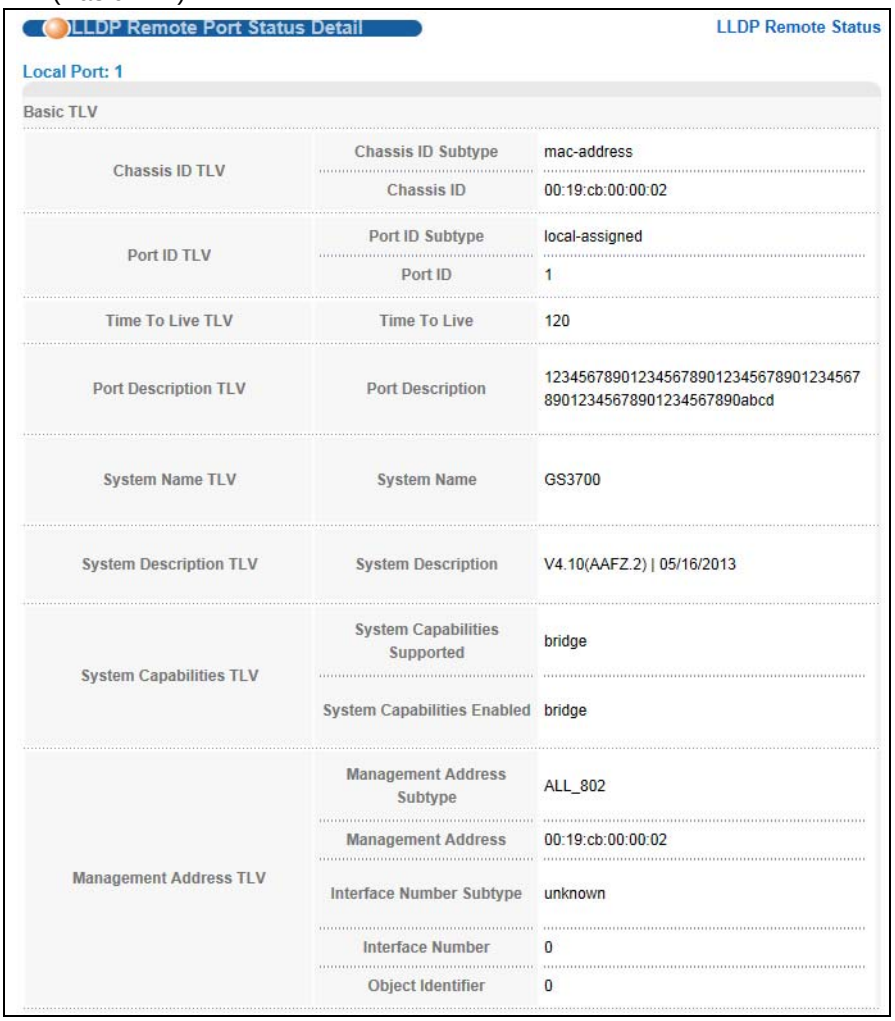
Table 120 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This displays the system name of the remote device.
Management Address	This displays the management address of the remote device. It could be the MAC address or IP address. You can click on the IP address hyperlink directly.

32.5.1 LLDP Remote Port Status Detail

This screen displays detailed LLDP status received from remote device. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Remote Status (Click Here)** and then click an index number, for example 1, in the Index column in the **LLDP Remote Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 187 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

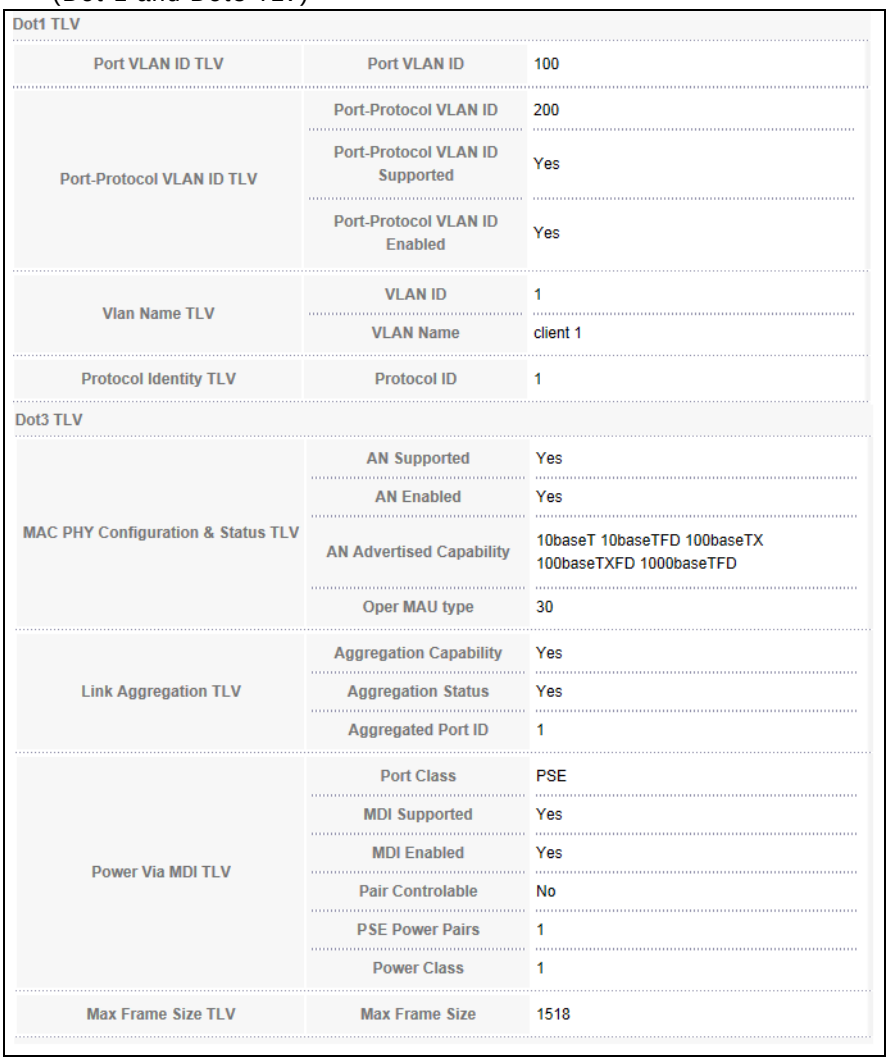


The following table describes the labels in Basic TLV part of the screen.

Table 121 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Basic TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic TLV	
Chassis ID TLV	• Chassis ID Subtype - this displays how the chassis of the remote device is identified. • Chassis ID - this displays the chassis ID of the remote device. The chassis ID is identified by the chassis ID subtype
Port ID TLV	• Port ID Subtype - this displays how the port of the remote device is identified. • Port ID - this displays the port ID of the remote device. The port ID is identified by the port ID subtype.
Time To Live TLV	This displays the time-to-live (TTL) multiplier of LLDP frames. The device information on the neighboring devices ages out and is discarded when its corresponding TTL expires. The TTL value is to multiply the TTL multiplier by the LLDP frames transmitting interval.
Port Description TLV	This displays the remote port description.
System Name TLV	This displays the system name of the remote device.
System Description TLV	This displays the system description of the remote device.
System Capabilities TLV	This displays whether the system capabilities are enabled and supported on the remote device. • System Capabilities Supported • System Capabilities Enabled
Management Address TLV	This displays the following management address parameters of the remote device. • Management Address Subtype • Management Address • Interface Number Subtype • Interface Number • Object Identifier

Figure 188 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail> (Dot 1 and Dot3 TLV)



Dot1 TLV		
Port VLAN ID TLV	Port VLAN ID	100
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	Port-Protocol VLAN ID	200
	Port-Protocol VLAN ID Supported	Yes
	Port-Protocol VLAN ID Enabled	Yes
Vlan Name TLV	VLAN ID	1
	VLAN Name	client 1
Protocol Identity TLV	Protocol ID	1
Dot3 TLV		
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	AN Supported	Yes
	AN Enabled	Yes
	AN Advertised Capability	10baseT 10baseTFD 100baseTX 100baseTXFD 1000baseTFD
	Oper MAU type	30
Link Aggregation TLV	Aggregation Capability	Yes
	Aggregation Status	Yes
	Aggregated Port ID	1
Power Via MDI TLV	Port Class	PSE
	MDI Supported	Yes
	MDI Enabled	Yes
	Pair Controlable	No
	PSE Power Pairs	1
	Power Class	1
Max Frame Size TLV	Max Frame Size	1518

The following table describes the labels in the Dot1 and Dot3 parts of the screen.

Table 122 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Dot1 and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dot1 TLV	
Port VLAN ID TLV	This displays the VLAN ID of this port on the remote device.
Port-Protocol VLAN ID TLV	This displays the IEEE 802.1 Port Protocol VLAN ID TLV, which indicates whether the VLAN ID and whether it is enabled and supported on the port of remote Switch which sent the LLDPDU. • Port-Protocol VLAN ID • Port-Protocol VLAN ID Supported • Port-Protocol VLAN ID Enabled
Vlan Name TLV	This shows the VLAN ID and name for remote device port. • VLAN ID • VLAN Name

Table 122 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (Dot1 and Dot3 TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Protocol Identity TLV	The Protocol Identity TLV allows the Switch to advertise the particular protocols that are accessible through its port.
Dot3 TLV	
MAC PHY Configuration & Status TLV	The MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV advertises the bit-rate and duplex capability of the sending 802.3 node. It also advertises the current duplex and bit-rating of the sending node. Lastly, it advertises whether these setting were the result of auto-negotiation during link initiation or manual override. • AN Supported - Displays if the port supports or does not support auto-negotiation. • AN Enabled - The current auto-negotiation status of the port. • AN Advertised Capability - The auto-negotiation capabilities of the port. • Oper MAU Type - The current Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) type of the port
Link Aggregation TLV	The Link Aggregation TLV indicates whether the link is capable of being aggregated, whether the link is currently in an aggregation, and if in an aggregation, the port identification of the aggregation. • Aggregation Capability — The current aggregation capability of the port. • Aggregation Status — The current aggregation status of the port. • Aggregation Port ID — The aggregation ID of the current port.
Power Via MDI TLV	The Power Via MDI TLV allows network management to advertise and discover the MDI power support capabilities of the sending port on the remote device. • Port Class • MDI Supported • MDI Enabled • Pair Controlable • PSE Power Pairs • Power Class
Max Frame Size TLV	This displays the maximum supported frame size in octets.

Figure 189 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

MED TLV

Capabilities TLV	Network Policy	Yes
	Location	Yes
	Extend Power via MDI PSE	No
	Extend Power via MDI PD	No
	Inventory Management	No
Device Type TLV	Device Type	Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	Voice	VLAN ID 10, tagged, known, L2-priority 7, DSCP 63
	Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 100, tagged, known, L2-priority 2, DSCP 10
	Guest-Voice	VLAN ID 20, tagged, known, L2-priority 3, DSCP 12
	Guest-Voice-Signaling	VLAN ID 0, untagged, known, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Softphone-Voice	VLAN ID 200, tagged, known, L2-priority 1, DSCP 1
	Video-Conferencing	VLAN ID 0, untagged, known, L2-priority 0, DSCP 0
	Streaming-Video	VLAN ID 300, tagged, known, L2-priority 4, DSCP 20
	Video-Signaling	VLAN ID 400, tagged, known, L2-priority 6, DSCP 55
Location Identification TLV	Coordinate-base LCI	latitude north 0.0 longitude east 0.9995 altitude meters 0.0 datum NAD83-MLLW
	Civic LCI	country TW city HSINCHU building ZYXEL
	ELIN	1234567890
Inventory TLV	Hardware Revision	V20131114 | 11/14/2013
	Software Revision	V4.10(AAOA.0) | 11/15/2013
	Firmware Revision	V4.10(AAOA.0) | 11/15/2013
	Model Name	GS3700-HP
	Manufacturer	123456789

The following table describes the labels in the MED TLV part of the screen.

Table 123 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MED TLV	LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) is an extension of LLDP that provides additional capabilities to support media endpoint devices. MED enables advertisement and discovery of network policies, device location discovery to allow creation of location databases, and information for troubleshooting.
Capabilities TLV	This displays the MED capabilities the remote port supports. • Network Policy • Location • Extend Power via MDI PSE • Extend Power via MDI PD • Inventory Management
Device Type TLV	LLDP-MED endpoint device classes: • Endpoint Class I • Endpoint Class II • Endpoint Class III • Network Connectivity
Network Policy TLV	This displays a network policy for the specified application. • Voice • Voice-Signaling • Guest-Voice • Guest-Voice-Signaling • Softphone-Voice • Video-Conferencing • Streaming-Video • Video-Signaling
Location Identification TLV	This shows the location information of a caller by its: • Coordinate-base LCI - latitude and longitude coordinates of the Location Configuration Information (LCI) • Civic LCI - IETF Geopriv Civic Address based Location Configuration Information • ELIN - (Emergency Location Identifier Number)

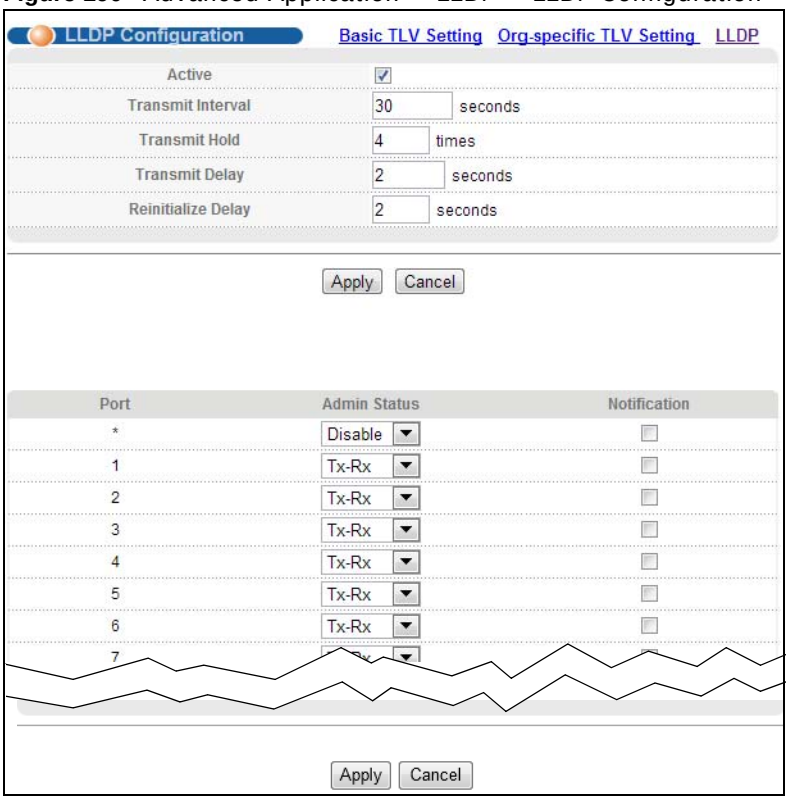
Table 123 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Remote Status > LLDP Remote Port Status Detail (MED TLV)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Inventory TLV	The majority of IP Phones lack support of management protocols such as SNMP, so LLDP-MED inventory TLVs are used to provide their inventory information to the Network Connectivity Devices such as the Switch. The Inventory TLV may contain the following information. • Hardware Revision • Software Revision • Firmware Revision • Model Name • Manufacturer • Serial Number • Asset ID
Extended Power via MDI TLV	Extended Power Via MDI Discovery enables detailed power information to be advertised by Media Endpoints, such as IP phones and Network Connectivity Devices such as the Switch. • Power Type - whether it is currently operating from primary power or is on backup power (backup power may indicate to the Endpoint Device that it should move to a power conservation mode). • Power Source - whether or not the Endpoint is currently operating from an external power source. • Power Priority - the Endpoint Device's power priority (which the Network Connectivity Device may use to prioritize which devices will remain in service during power shortages) • Power Value - power requirement, in fractions of Watts, in current configuration

32.6 LLDP Configuration

Use this screen to configure global LLDP settings on the Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 190 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 124 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select to enable LLDP on the Switch. It is enabled by default.
Transmit Interval	Enter how many seconds the Switch waits before sending LLDP packets.
Transmit Hold	Enter the time-to-live (TTL) multiplier of LLDP frames. The device information on the neighboring devices ages out and is discarded when its corresponding TTL expires. The TTL value is to multiply the TTL multiplier by the LLDP packets transmitting interval.
Transmit Delay	Enter the delay (in seconds) between successive LLDPDU transmissions initiated by value or status changes in the Switch MIB.
Reinitialize Delay	Enter the number of seconds for LLDP to wait before initializing on a port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port	This displays the port number with this LLDP configuration. * means all ports.
Admin Status	Select whether LLDP transmission and/or reception is allowed on this port. • Disable - not allowed • Tx-Only - transmit only • Rx-Only - receive only • Tx-Rx - transmit and receive
Notification	Select whether LLDP notification is enabled on this port.

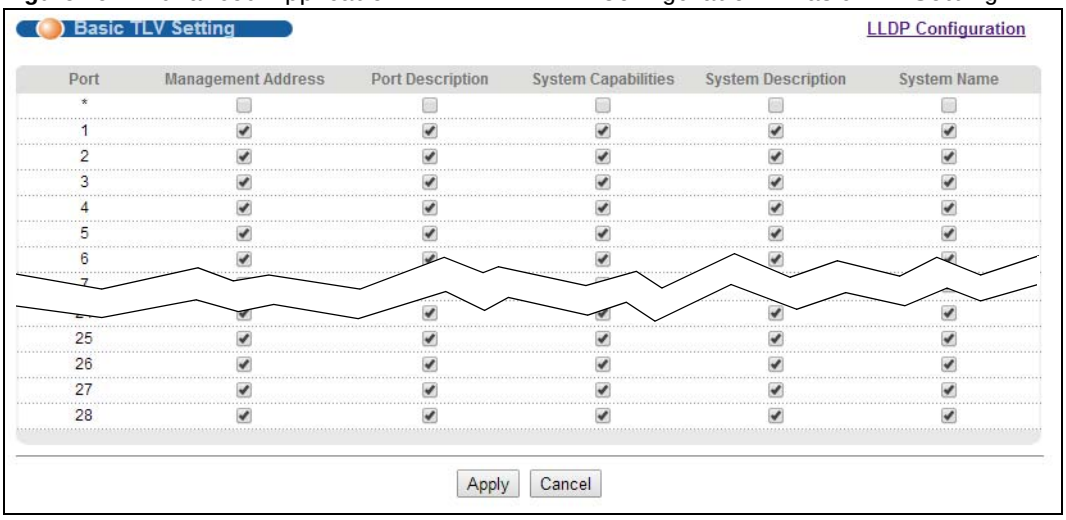
Table 124 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.6.1 LLDP Configuration Basic TLV Setting

Use this screen to configure Basic TLV settings. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here) > Basic TLV Setting** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 191 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration> Basic TLV Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

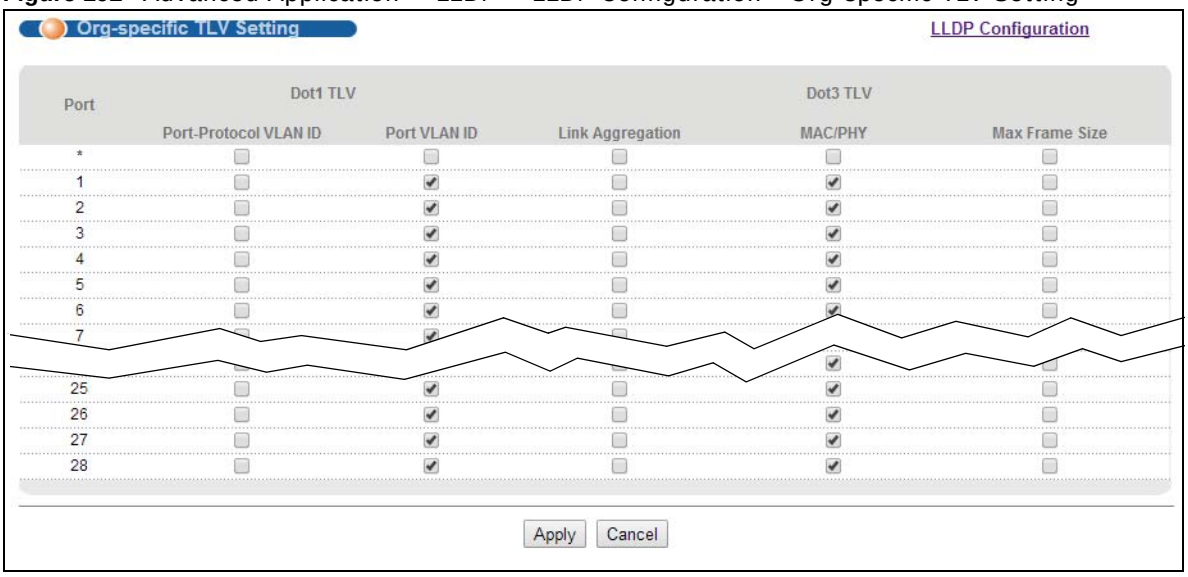
Table 125 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Basic TLV Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the port number on which you're configuring LLDP. Select check boxes in the * row to configure all ports simultaneously. All check boxes below * row are enabled by default.
Management Address	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of Management Address TLVs on the port(s).
Port Description	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of Port Description TLVs on the port(s).
System Capabilities	Select check box to enable or to disable the sending of System Capabilities TLVs on the port(s).
System Description	Select check box to enable or to disable the sending of System Description TLVs on the port(s).
System Name	Select check box to enable or to disable the sending of System Name TLVs on the port(s).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.6.2 LLDP Configuration Basic Org-specific TLV Setting

Use this screen to configure organization-specific TLV settings. Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP Configuration (Click Here) > Org-specific TLV Setting** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 192 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration> Org-specific TLV Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 126 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Org-specific TLV Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the port number on which you're configuring LLDP. Select check boxes in the * row to configure all ports simultaneously.
Dot1 TLV	
Port-Protocol VLAN ID	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.1 Port and Protocol VLAN ID TLVs on the port(s).
Port VLAN ID	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.1 Port VLAN ID TLVs on the port(s). All check boxes in this column are enabled by default.
Dot3 TLV	
Power Via MDI TLV	**Note**: For PoE models only. The Power Via MDI TLV allows network management to advertise and discover the MDI power support capabilities of the sending port on the remote device. • Port Class • MDI Supported • MDI Enabled • Pair Controlable • PSE Power Pairs • Power Class
Link Aggregation	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 Link Aggregation TLVs on the port(s).
MAC/PHY	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 MAC/PHY Configuration/ Status TLVs on the port(s). All check boxes in this column are enabled by default.
Max Frame Size	Select check box to enable or disable the sending of IEEE 802.3 Max Frame Size TLVs on the port(s).

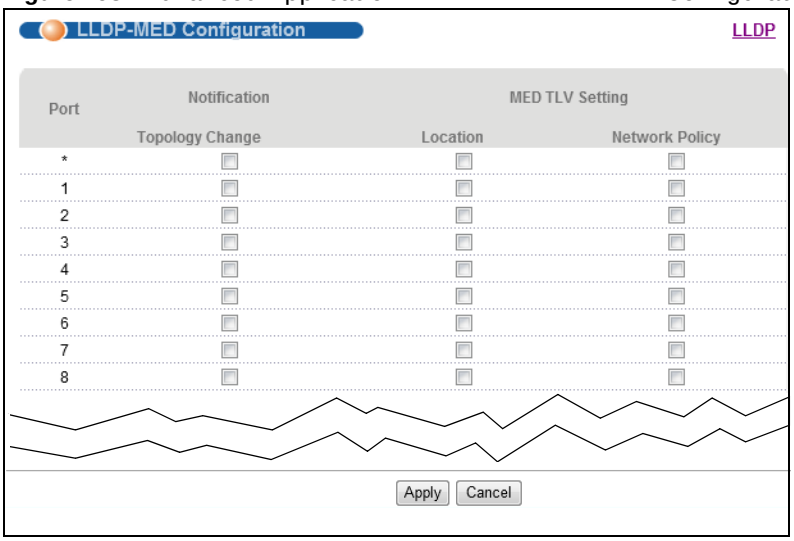
Table 126 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP Configuration > Org-specific TLV Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.7 LLDP-MED Configuration

Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 193 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

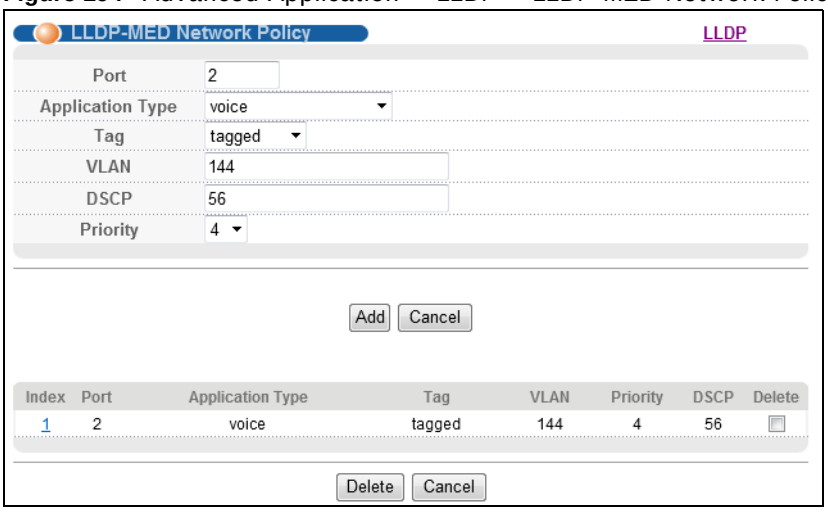
Table 127 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the port number on which you're configuring LLDP-MED. Select * to configure all ports simultaneously.
Notification	
Topology Change	Select to enable LLDP-MED topology change traps on this port.
MED TLV Setting	
Location	Select to enable transmitting LLDP-MED location TLV.
Network Policy	Select to enable transmitting LLDP-MED Network Policy TLV.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the Save link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.8 LLDP-MED Network Policy

Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 194 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 128 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the port number to set up the LLDP-MED network policy.
Application Type	Select the type of application used in the network policy. • voice • voice-signaling • guest-voice • guest-voice-signaling • softphone-voice • video-conferencing • streaming-video • video-signaling
Tag	Select to tag or untag in the network policy. • tagged • untagged
VLAN	Enter the VLAN ID number. It should be from 1 to 4094. For priority tagged frames, enter “0”.
DSCP	Enter the DSCP value of the network policy. The value is defined from 0 through 63 with the 0 representing use of the default DSCP value.
Priority	Enter the priority value for the network policy.
Add	Click Add after finish entering the network policy information. A summary table will list all the Switch you’ve added.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin entering the information afresh.
Index	This field displays the of index number of the network policy. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Port	This field displays the port number of the network policy.

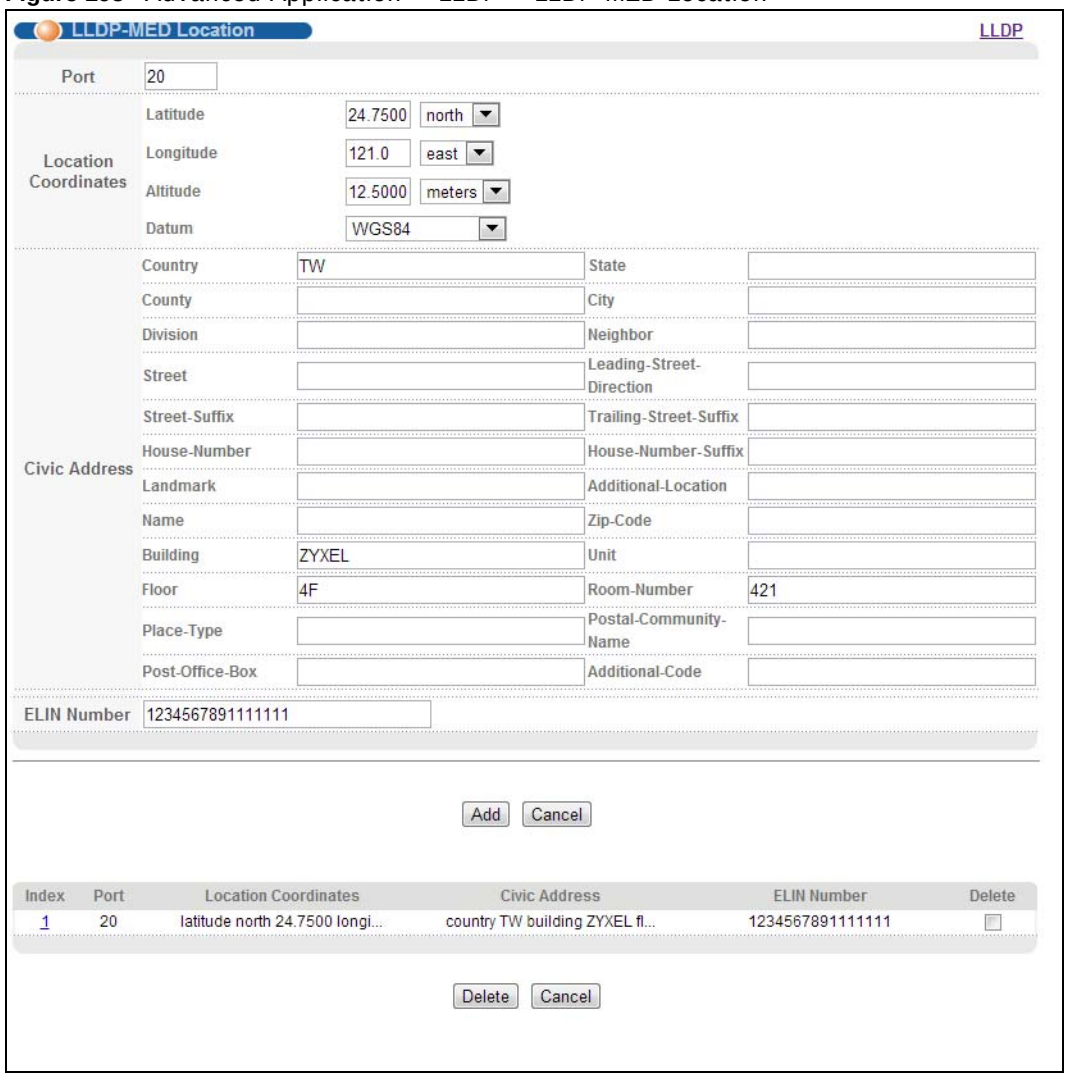
Table 128 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Network Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Application Type	This field displays the application type of the network policy.
Tag	This field displays the Tag Status of the network policy.
VLAN	This field displays the VLANID of the network policy.
Priority	This field displays the priority value of the network policy.
DSCP	This field displays the DSCP value of the network policy.
Delete	Check the rules that you want to remove in the delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes in the **Delete** column.

32.9 LLDP-MED Location

Click **Advanced Application** > **LLDP > LLDP-MED Location (Click Here)** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 195 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 129 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the port number you want to set up the location within the LLDP-MED network.
Location Coordinates	The LLDP-MED uses geographical coordinates and Civic Address to set the location information of the remote device. Geographical based coordinates includes latitude, longitude, altitude and datum. Civic Address includes Country, State, County, City, Street and other related information.
Latitude	Enter the latitude information. The value should be from 0° to 90°. The negative value represents the South. • north • south
Longitude	Enter the longitude information. The value should be from 0° to 180°. The negative value represents the West. • west • east

Table 129 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Altitude	Enter the altitude information. The value should be from -2097151 to 2097151 in meters or in floors. • meters • floor
Datum	Select the appropriate geodetic datum used by GPS. • WGS84 • NAD83-NAVD88 • NAD83-MLLW
Civic Address	Enter the Civic Address by providing information such as Country, State, County, City, Street, Number, ZIP code and other additional information. Enter at least two field in this configuration including the Country. The valid length of the Country field is 2 characters and all other fields are up to 32 characters. • Country • State • County • City • Division • Neighbor • Street • Leading-Street-Direction • Street-Suffix • Trailing-Street-Suffix • House-Number • House-Number-Suffix • Landmark • Additional-Location • Name • Zip-Code • Building • Unit • Floor • Room-Number • Place-Type • Postal-Community-Name • Post-Office-Box • Additional-Code
ELIN Number	Enter a numerical digit string, corresponding to the ELIN identifier which is used during emergency call setup to a traditional CAMA or ISDN trunk-based PSAP. The valid length is from 10 to 25 characters.
Add	Click Add after finish entering the location information.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin entering the location information afresh.
Index	This lists the index number of the location configuration. Click an index number to view or edit the location.
Port	This lists the port number of the location configuration.
Location Coordinates	This field displays the location configuration information based on geographical coordinates that includes longitude, latitude, altitude and datum.
Civic Address	This field displays the Civic Address for the remote device using information such as Country, State, County, City, Street, Number, ZIP code and additional information.
ELIN Number	This field shows the Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN), which is used to identify endpoint devices when they issue emergency call services. The valid length is form 10 to 25 characters.

Table 129 Advanced Application > LLDP > LLDP-MED Location

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check the locations that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected check boxes in the delete column.

33

Static Route

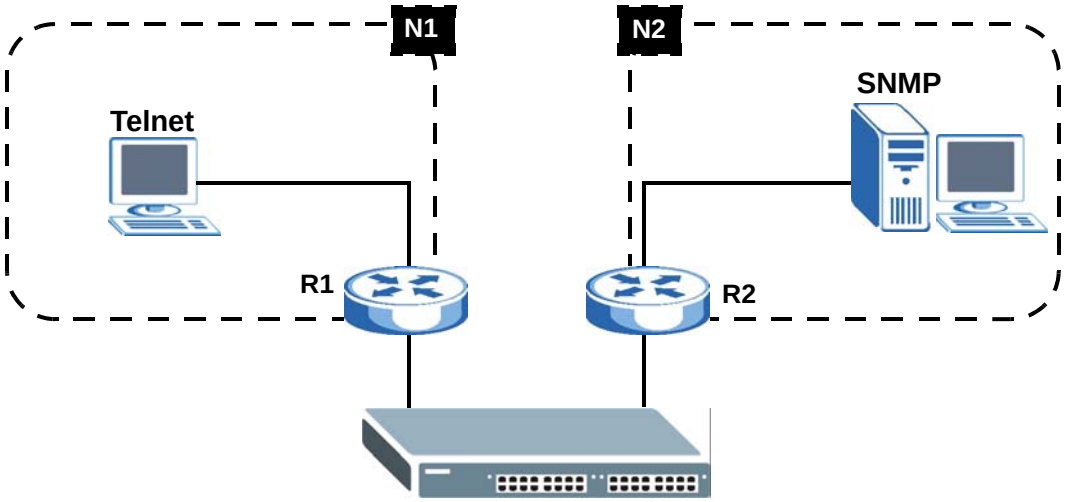
33.1 Static Route Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

The Switch uses IP for communication with management computers, for example using HTTP, Telnet, SSH, or SNMP. Use IP static routes to have the Switch respond to remote management stations that are not reachable through the default gateway. The Switch can also use static routes to send data to a server or device that is not reachable through the default gateway, for example when sending SNMP traps or using ping to test IP connectivity.

This figure shows a **Telnet** session coming in from network **N1**. The Switch sends reply traffic to default gateway **R1** which routes it back to the manager's computer. The Switch needs a static route to tell it to use router **R2** to send traffic to an SNMP trap server on network **N2**.

Figure 196 Static Routing Overview



33.1.1 What You Can Do

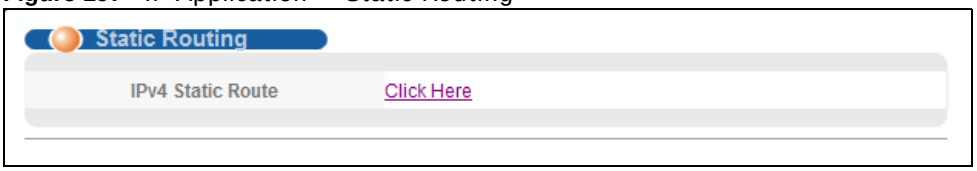
- Use the **Static Routing** screen (Section 33.2 on page 277) to check if IPv4 static route is activated.
- Use the **IPv4 Static Route** screen (Section 33.3 on page 277) to activate/deactivate this static route.

33.2 Static Routing

To enable IPv4 static route, configure the static route settings in the **IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route** screen.

Click **IP Application > Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

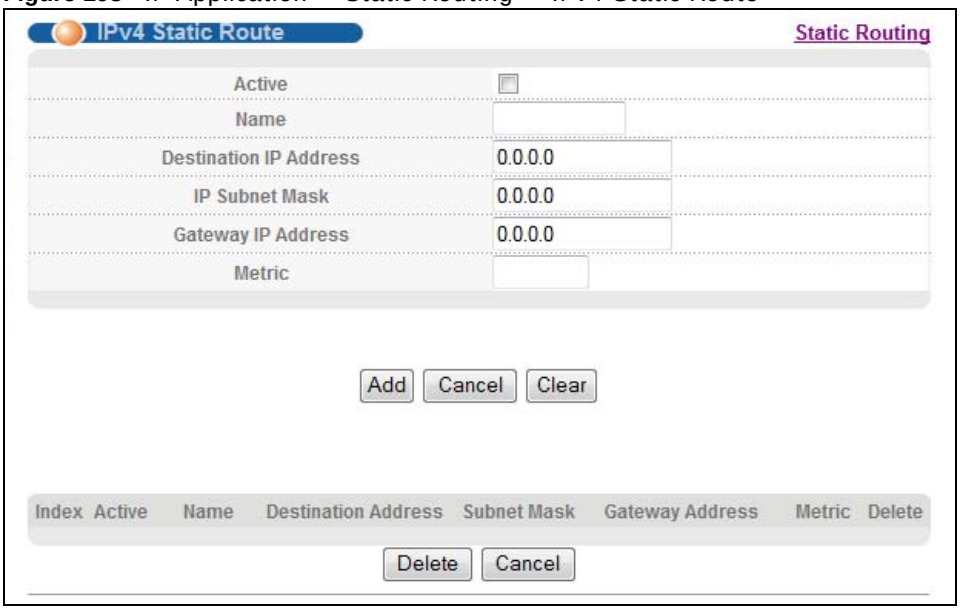
Figure 197 IP Application > Static Routing



33.3 Configuring Static Routing

Click **IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 198 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route



The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

Table 130 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 10 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.

Table 130 IP Application > Static Routing > IPv4 Static Route (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your Switch.
Metric	The metric represents the “cost” of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click **Add** to insert a new static route to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the static route is activated and **NO** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purposes only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

34

Differentiated Services

34.1 Differentiated Services Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the Switch.

Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

34.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **DiffServ** screen (Section 34.2 on page 280) to activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the Switch.
- Use the **DSCP** screen (Section 34.3.1 on page 282) to change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping.

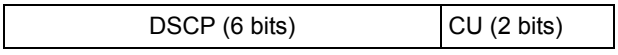
34.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on Differentiated Services that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels and the remaining 2 bits are defined as currently unused (CU). The following figure illustrates the DS field.

Figure 199 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



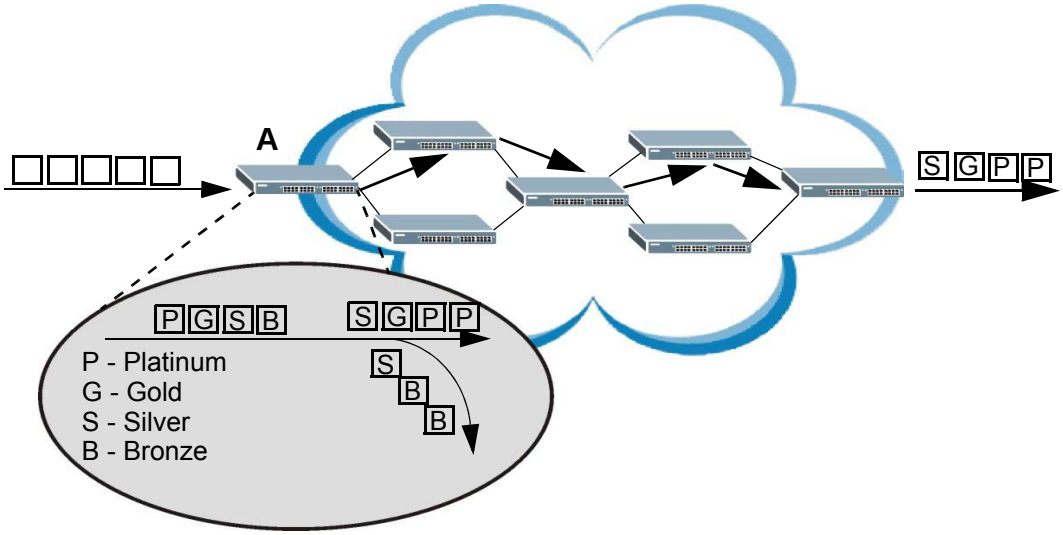
DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

The DSCP value determines the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets as it is forwarded across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a DiffServ network consisting of a group of directly connected DiffServ-compliant network devices. The boundary node (**A** in Figure 200) in a DiffServ network classifies (marks with a DSCP value) the incoming packets into different traffic flows (**Platinum**, **Gold**, **Silver**, **Bronze**) based on the configured marking rules. A network administrator can then apply various traffic policies to the traffic flows. An example traffic policy, is to give higher drop precedence to one traffic flow over others. In our example, packets in the **Bronze** traffic flow are more likely to be dropped when congestion occurs than the packets in the **Platinum** traffic flow as they move across the DiffServ network.

Figure 200 DiffServ Network

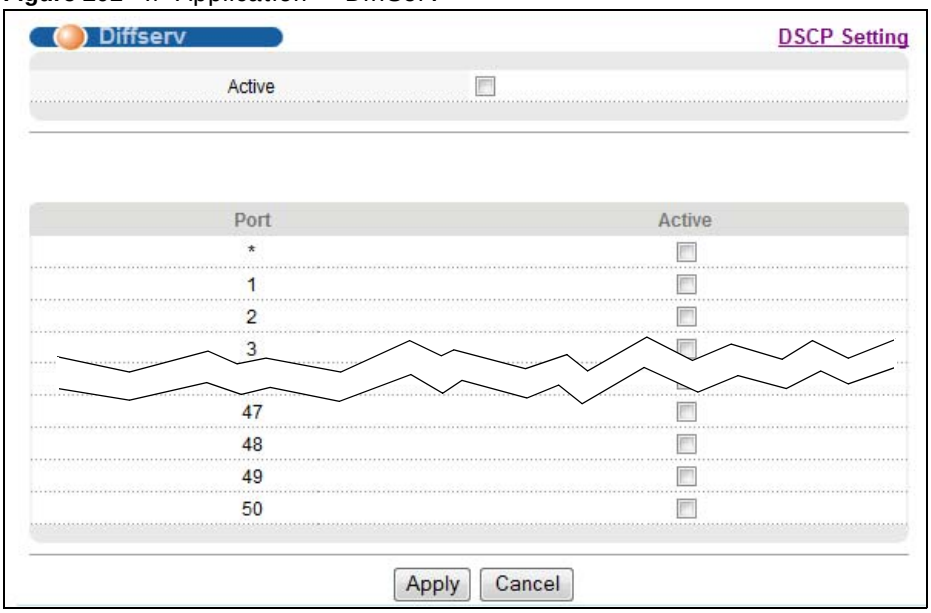


34.2 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the Switch.

Click **IP Application** > **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 201 IP Application > DiffServ



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 131 IP Application > DiffServ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select **Active** to enable Diffserv on the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

34.3 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE 802.1p mapping to allow the Switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE 802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping.

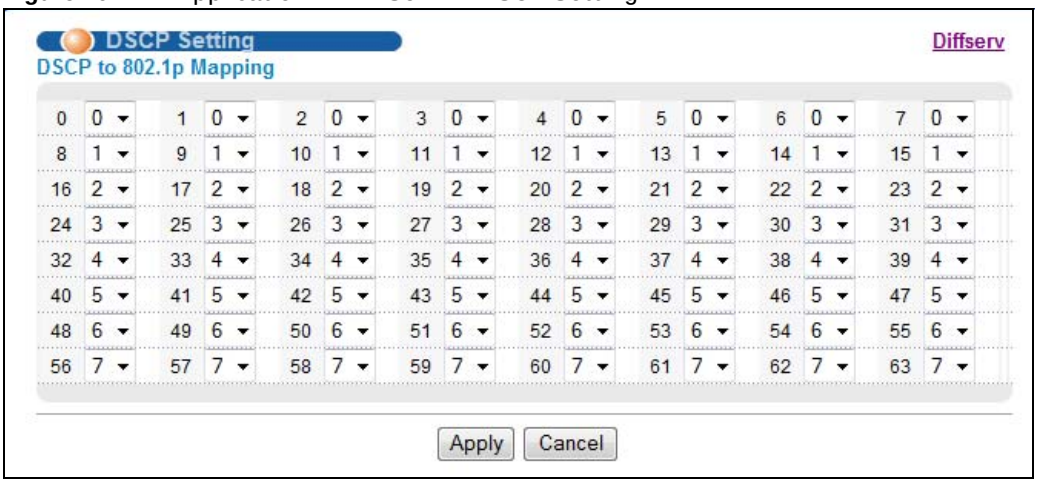
Table 132 Default DSCP-IEEE 802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE 802.1p	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

34.3.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 202 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 133 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 ... 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number. To set the IEEE 802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

35

DHCP

35.1 DHCP Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. If you configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent, then the Switch forwards DHCP requests to DHCP server on your network. If you don't configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent then you must have a DHCP server in the broadcast domain of the client computers or else the client computers must be configured manually.

35.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **DHCPv4 Status** screen (Section 35.3 on page 285) to display the relay mode.
- Use the **DHCPv4 Relay** screen (Section 35.4 on page 285) to enable and configure global DHCP relay.
- Use the **VLAN Setting** screen (Section 35.5 on page 291) to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients.
- Use the **DHCPv6 Relay** screen (Section 35.6 on page 295) to enable and configure DHCPv6 relay.

35.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on DHCP that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

DHCP Modes

If there is already a DHCP server on your network, then you can configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the Switch receives a request from a computer on your network, it contacts the DHCP server for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

DHCP Configuration Options

The DHCP configuration on the Switch is divided into **Global** and **VLAN** screens. The screen you should use for configuration depends on the DHCP services you want to offer the DHCP clients on your network. Choose the configuration screen based on the following criteria:

- **Global** - The Switch forwards all DHCP requests to the same DHCP server.
- **VLAN** - The Switch is configured on a VLAN by VLAN basis. The Switch can be configured to relay DHCP requests to different DHCP servers for clients in different VLAN.

DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

DHCP Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field to the **Option 82** field. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

Relay Agent Information can include the **System Name** of the Switch if you select this option. You can change the **System Name** in **Basic Settings** > **General Setup**.

The following describes the DHCP relay information that the Switch sends to the DHCP server:

Table 134 Relay Agent Information

FIELD LABELS	DESCRIPTION
Slot ID	(1 byte) This value is always 0 for stand-alone switches.
Port ID	(1 byte) This is the port that the DHCP client is connected to.
VLAN ID	(2 bytes) This is the VLAN that the port belongs to.
Information	(up to 64 bytes) This optional, read-only field is set according to system name set in **Basic Settings > General Setup.**

35.2 DHCP Configuration

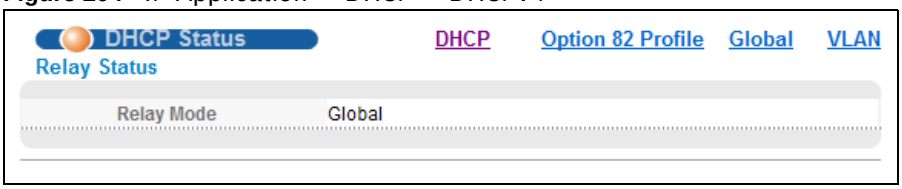
Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click the link next to **DHCPv4** to open screens where you can enable and configure DHCPv4 relay settings and create option 82 profiles. Click the link next to **DHCPv6** to open a screen where you can configure DHCPv6 relay settings.

Figure 203 IP Application > DHCP

35.3 DHCPv4 Status

Click **IP Application** > **DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Status** screen displays.

Figure 204 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 135 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Relay Status	This section displays configuration settings related to the Switch's DHCP relay mode.
Relay Mode	This field displays: **None** - if the Switch is not configured as a DHCP relay agent. **Global** - if the Switch is configured as a DHCP relay agent only. **VLAN** - followed by a VLAN ID or multiple VLAN IDs if it is configured as a relay agent for specific VLAN(s).

35.4 DHCPv4 Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

35.4.1 DHCPv4 Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field (also known as the **Option 82** field) to DHCP requests. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

35.4.1.1 DHCPv4 Relay Agent Information Format

A DHCP Relay Agent Information option has the following format.

Table 136 DHCP Relay Agent Information Option Format

Code (82)	Length (N)	i1	i2	...	iN

i1, i2 and iN are DHCP relay agent sub-options, which contain additional information about the DHCP client. You need to define at least one sub-option.

35.4.1.2 Sub-Option Format

There are two types of sub-option: “Agent Circuit ID Sub-option” and “Agent Remote ID Sub-option”. They have the following formats.

Table 137 DHCP Relay Agent Circuit ID Sub-option Format

SubOpt Code	Length	Value
1 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Slot ID, Port ID, VLAN ID, System Name or String

Table 138 DHCP Relay Agent Remote ID Sub-option Format

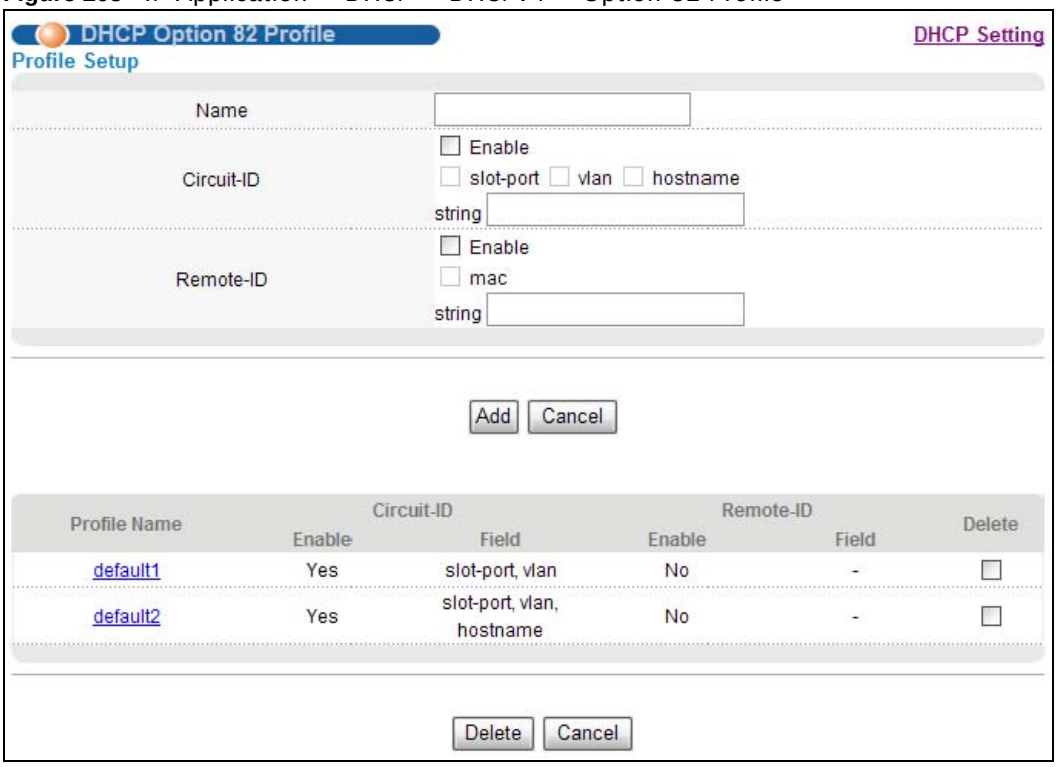
SubOpt Code	Length	Value
2 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	MAC Address or String

The 1 in the first field identifies this as an Agent Circuit ID sub-option and 2 identifies this as an Agent Remote ID sub-option. The next field specifies the length of the field.

35.4.2 DHCPv4 Option 82 Profile

Use this screen to create DHCPv4 option 82 profiles. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel and click the **Option 82 Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 205 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 139 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. You can use up to 32 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Circuit-ID	Use this section to configure the Circuit ID sub-option to include information that is specific to the relay agent (the Switch).
Enable	Select this option to have the Switch add the Circuit ID sub-option to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
slot-port	Select this option to have the Switch add the number of port that the DHCP client is connected to.
vlan	Select this option to have the Switch add the ID of VLAN which the port belongs to.
hostname	This is the system name you configure in the **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** screen. Select this option for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
string	Enter a string of up to 64 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the client DHCP requests. Spaces are allowed.
Remote-ID	Use this section to configure the Remote ID sub-option to include information that identifies the relay agent (the Switch).
Enable	Select this option to have the Switch append the Remote ID sub-option to the option 82 field of DHCP requests.
mac	Select this option to have the Switch add its MAC address to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
string	Enter a string of up to 64 ASCII characters for the remote ID information in this field. Spaces are allowed.

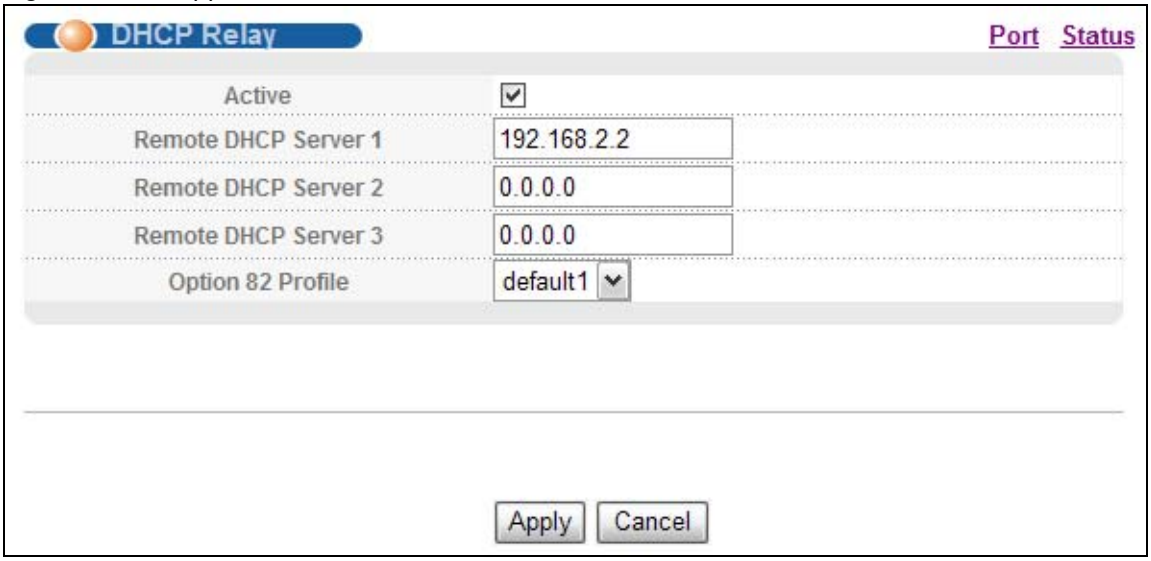
Table 139 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Option 82 Profile (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile. Click the name to change the settings.
Circuit-ID	
Enable	This field displays whether the Circuit ID sub-option is added to client DHCP requests.
Field	This field displays the information that is included in the Circuit ID sub-option.
Remote-ID	
Enable	This field displays whether the Remote ID sub-option is added to client DHCP requests.
Field	This field displays the information that is included in the Remote ID sub-option.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected check box(es) in the **Delete** column.

35.4.3 Configuring DHCPv4 Global Relay

Use this screen to configure global DHCPv4 relay. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4** in the navigation panel and click the **Global** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 206 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

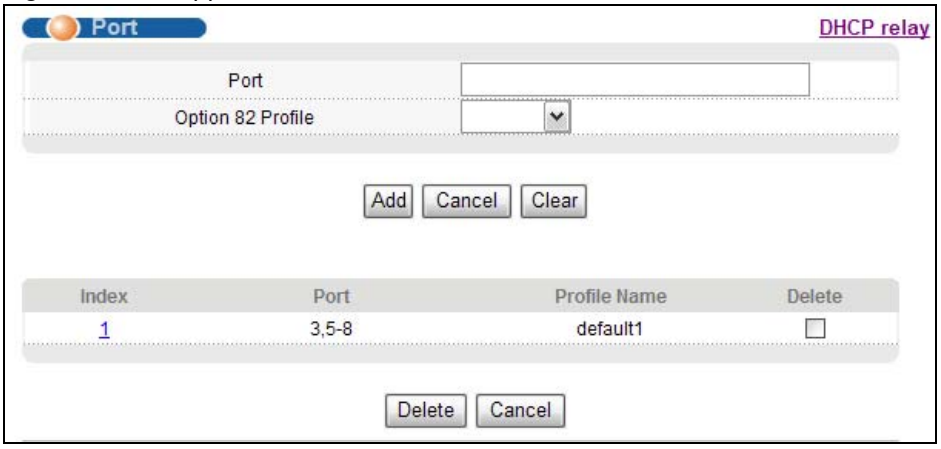
Table 140 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCPv4 relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCPv4 server in dotted decimal notation.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCPv4 option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

35.4.4 DHCPv4 Global Relay Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports on the Switch. To open this screen, click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port**.

Figure 207 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 141 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s). The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the **DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global** screen.

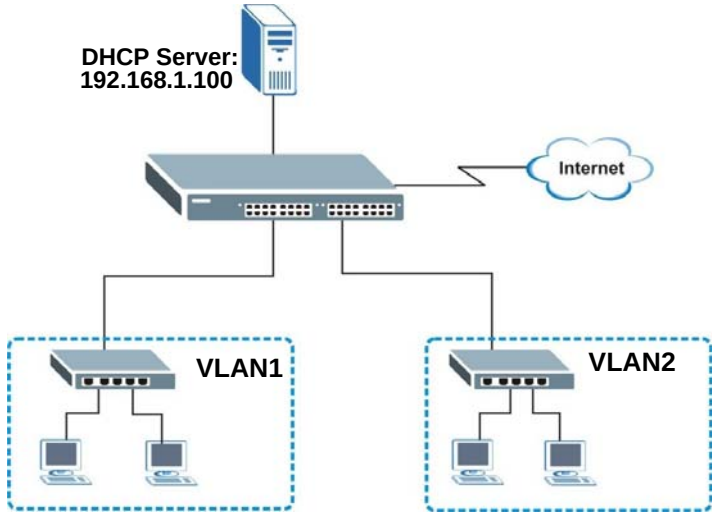
Table 141 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > Global > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the port(s).
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

35.4.5 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example

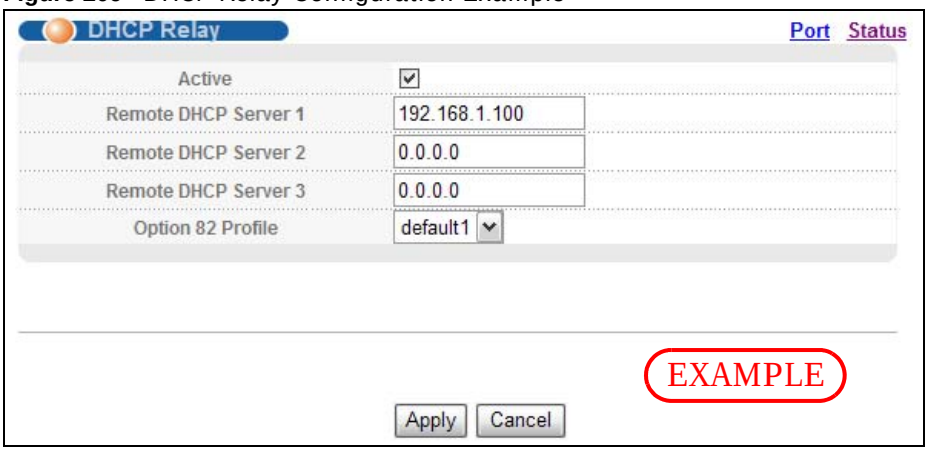
The follow figure shows a network example where the Switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **VLAN1** and **VLAN2** domains. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both domains.

Figure 208 Global DHCP Relay Network Example



Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select a DHCP option 82 profile (**default1** in this example) to set the Switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

Figure 209 DHCP Relay Configuration Example

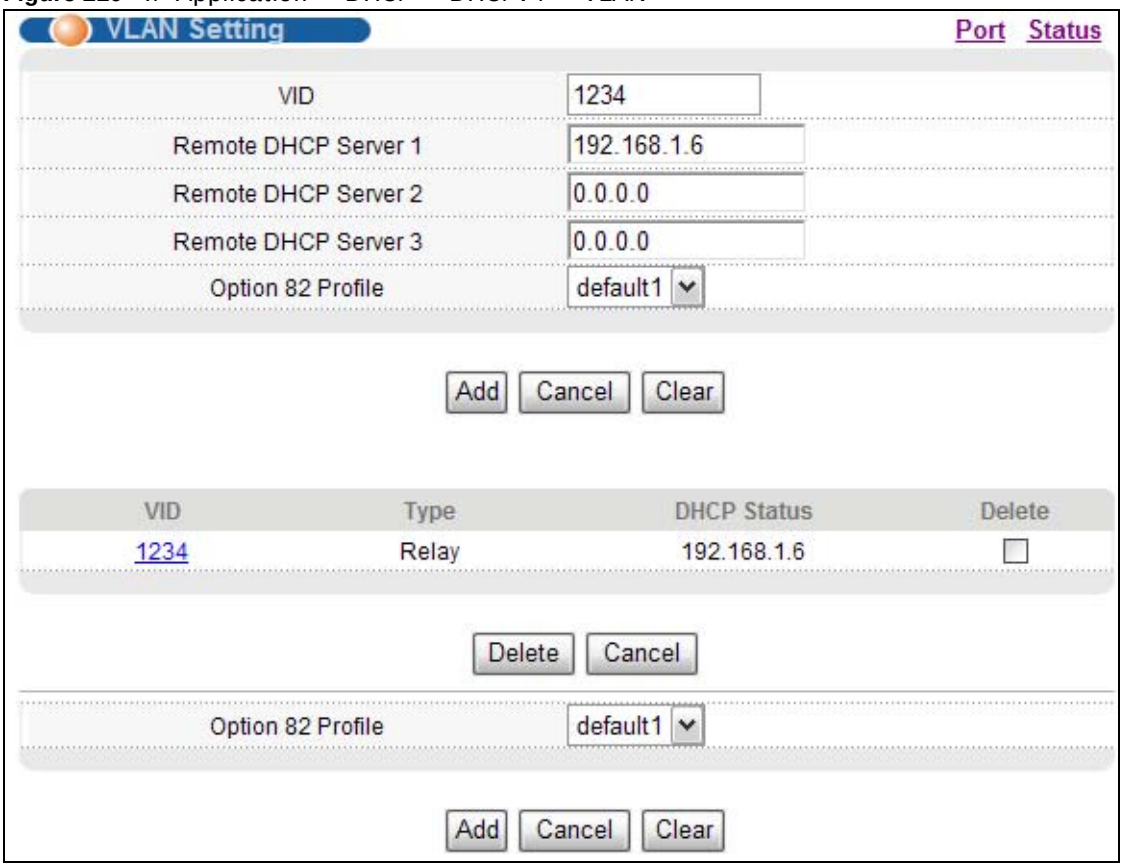


35.5 Configuring DHCPv4 VLAN Settings

Use this screen to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients. Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** > **DHCPv4** in the navigation panel, then click the **VLAN** link In the **DHCP Status** screen that displays.

Note: You must set up a management IP address for each VLAN that you want to configure DHCP settings for on the Switch. See Section 5.2 on page 42 for information on how to do this.

Figure 210 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 142 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which these DHCP settings apply.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to all ports in this VLAN. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Type	This field displays **Relay** for the DHCP mode.
DHCP Status	For DHCP server configuration, this field displays the starting IP address and the size of the IP address pool. For DHCP relay configuration, this field displays the first remote DHCP server IP address.

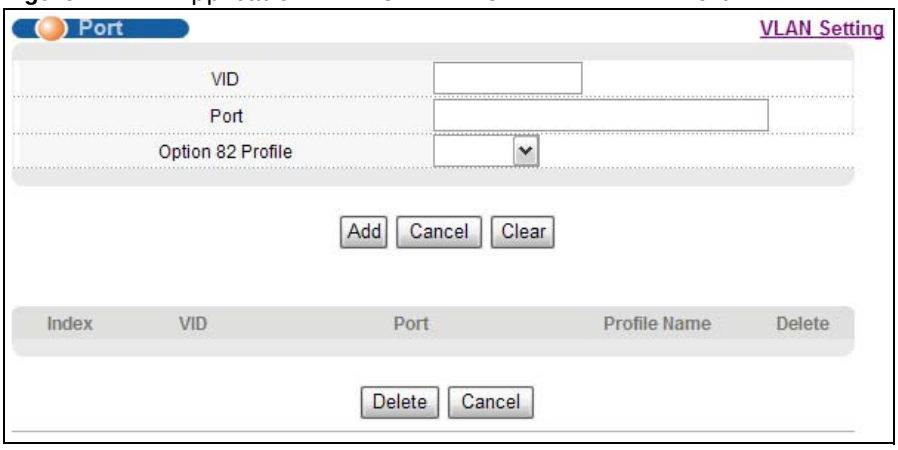
Table 142 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Select the configuration entries you want to remove and click **Delete** to remove them.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

35.5.1 DHCPv4 VLAN Port Configure

Use this screen to apply a different DHCP option 82 profile to certain ports in a VLAN. To open this screen, click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port**.

Figure 211 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 143 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Port	Enter the number of port(s) to which you want to apply the specified DHCP option 82 profile. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter “3-5” for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter “3,5,7” for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Option 82 Profile	Select a pre-defined DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the specified port(s) in this VLAN. The Switch adds the Circuit ID sub-option and/or Remote ID sub-option specified in the profile to DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. The profile you select here has priority over the one you select in the **DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN** screen.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected entry or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each entry. Click an index number to change the settings.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the port(s) belongs.

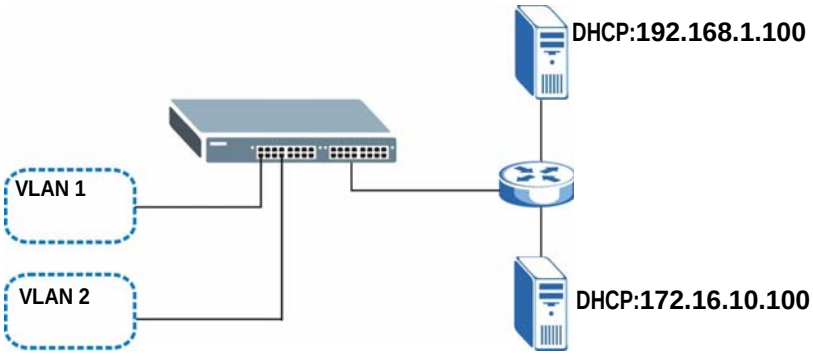
Table 143 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv4 > VLAN > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port(s) to which the Switch applies the settings.
Profile Name	This field displays the DHCP option 82 profile that the Switch applies to the port(s) in this VLAN.
Delete	Select the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

35.5.2 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs

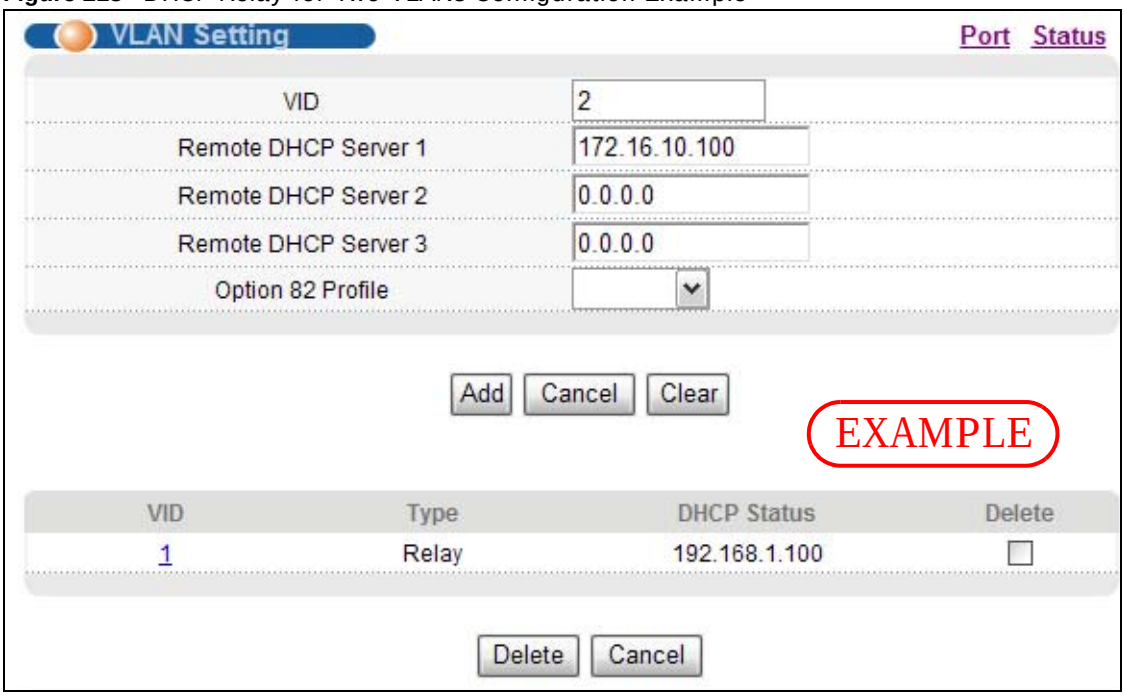
The following example displays two VLANs (VIDs 1 and 2) for a campus network. Two DHCP servers are installed to serve each VLAN. The system is set up to forward DHCP requests from the dormitory rooms (VLAN 1) to the DHCP server with an IP address of 192.168.1.100. Requests from the academic buildings (VLAN 2) are sent to the other DHCP server with an IP address of 172.16.10.100.

Figure 212 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs



For the example network, configure the **VLAN Setting** screen as shown.

Figure 213 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs Configuration Example



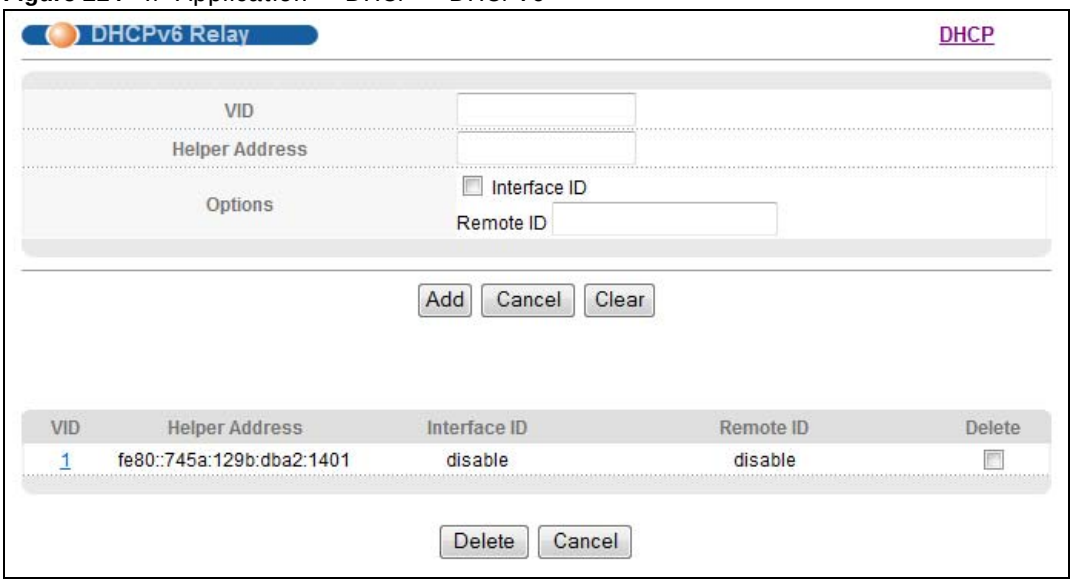
35.6 DHCPv6 Relay

A DHCPv6 relay agent is on the same network as the DHCPv6 clients and helps forward messages between the DHCPv6 server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCPv6 server on its network, it then needs a DHCPv6 relay agent to send a message to a DHCPv6 server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCPv6 relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string, such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCPv6 server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

Use this screen to configure DHCPv6 relay settings for a specific VLAN on the Switch. Click **IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 214 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 144 IP Application > DHCP > DHCPv6

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN you want to configure here.
Helper Address	Enter the remote DHCPv6 server address for the specified VLAN.
Options	
Interface ID	Select this option to have the Switch add the interface-ID option in the DHCPv6 requests from the clients in the specified VLAN before the Switch forwards them to a DHCPv6 server.
Remote ID	Enter a string of up to 64 printable characters to be carried in the remote-ID option. The Switch adds the remote-ID option in the DHCPv6 requests from the clients in the specified VLAN before the Switch forwards them to a DHCPv6 server.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID number. Click the VLAN ID to change the settings.
Helper Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the remote DHCPv6 server for this VLAN.
Interface ID	This field displays whether the interface-ID option is added to DHCPv6 requests from clients in this VLAN.
Remote ID	This field displays whether the remote-ID option is added to DHCPv6 requests from clients in this VLAN.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected check boxes) in the **Delete** column.

36

ARP Setup

36.1 ARP Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

36.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **ARP Learning** screen (Section 36.2.1 on page 299) to configure ARP learning mode on a per-port basis.

36.1.2 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on ARP that can help you configure the screen in this chapter.

36.1.2.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch looks in the ARP Table and if it finds the address, it sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

36.1.2.2 ARP Learning Mode

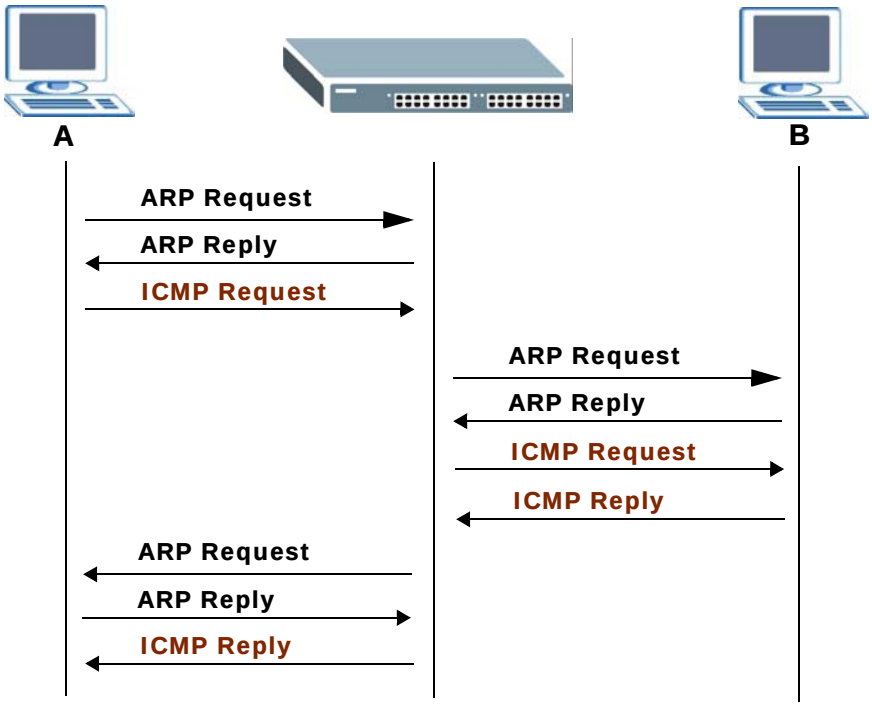
The Switch supports three ARP learning modes: ARP-Reply, Gratuitous-ARP, and ARP-Request.

ARP-Reply

By default, the Switch is in ARP-Reply learning mode and updates the ARP table only with the ARP replies to the ARP requests sent by the Switch. This can help prevent ARP spoofing.

In the following example, the Switch does not have IP address and MAC address mapping information for hosts **A** and **B** in its ARP table, and host **A** wants to ping host **B**. Host **A** sends an

ARP request to the Switch and then sends an ICMP request after getting the ARP reply from the Switch. The Switch finds no matched entry for host **B** in the ARP table and broadcasts the ARP request to all the devices on the LAN. When the Switch receives the ARP reply from host **B**, it updates its ARP table and also forwards host **A**'s ICMP request to host **B**. After the Switch gets the ICMP reply from host **B**, it sends out an ARP request to get host **A**'s MAC address and updates the ARP table with host **A**'s ARP reply. The Switch then can forward host **B**'s ICMP reply to host **A**.



Gratuitous-ARP

A gratuitous ARP is an ARP request in which both the source and destination IP address fields are set to the IP address of the device that sends this request and the destination MAC address field is set to the broadcast address. There will be no reply to a gratuitous ARP request.

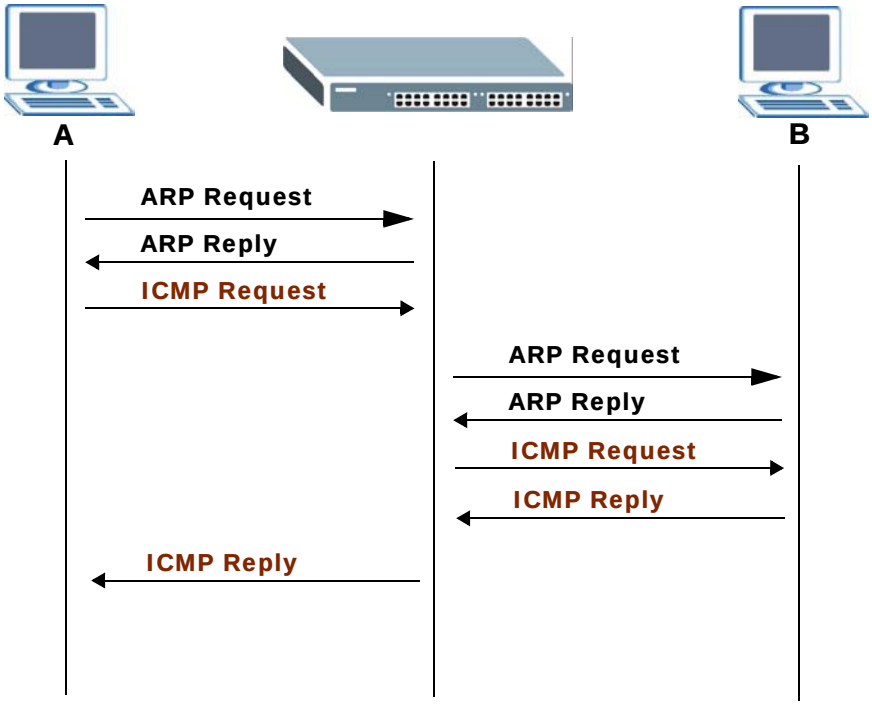
A device may send a gratuitous ARP packet to detect IP collisions. If a device restarts or its MAC address is changed, it can also use gratuitous ARP to inform other devices in the same network to update their ARP table with the new mapping information.

In Gratuitous-ARP learning mode, the Switch updates its ARP table with either an ARP reply or a gratuitous ARP request.

ARP-Request

When the Switch is in ARP-Request learning mode, it updates the ARP table with both ARP replies, gratuitous ARP requests and ARP requests.

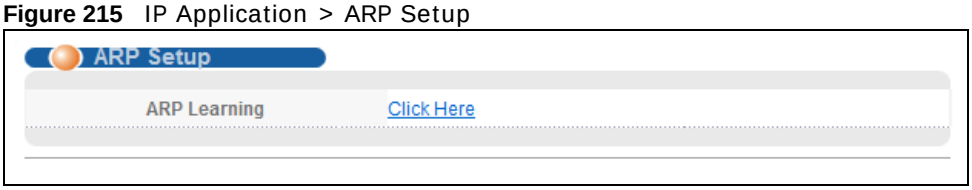
Therefore in the following example, the Switch can learn host **A**'s MAC address from the ARP request sent by host **A**. The Switch then forwards host **B**'s ICMP reply to host **A** right after getting host **B**'s MAC address and ICMP reply.



36.2 ARP Setup

Click **IP Application** > **ARP Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click the link next to **ARP Learning** to open a screen where you can set the ARP learning mode for each port.

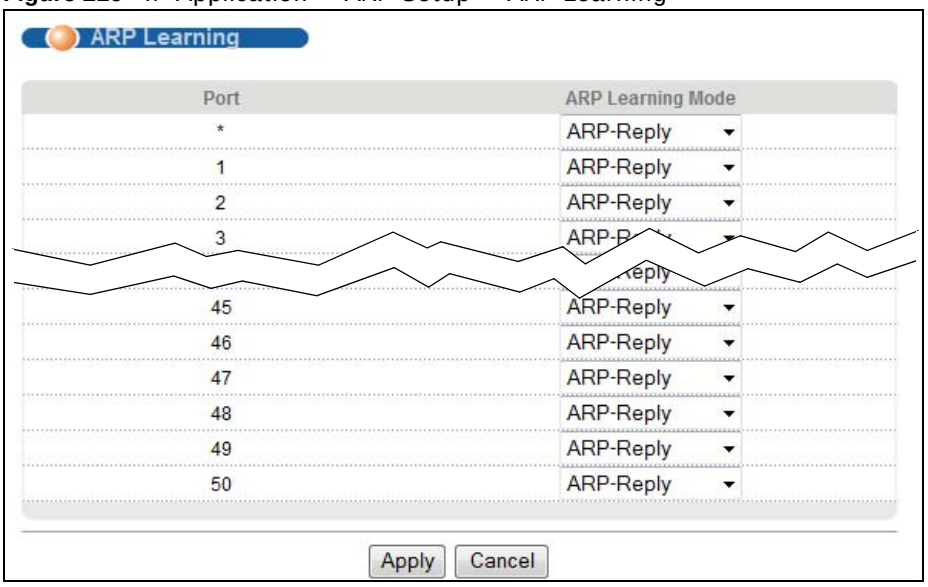
Figure 215 IP Application > ARP Setup



36.2.1 ARP Learning

Use this screen to configure each port's ARP learning mode. Click the link next to **ARP Learning** in the **IP Application** > **ARP Setup** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 216 IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 145 IP Application > ARP Setup > ARP Learning

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
ARP Learning Mode	Select the ARP learning mode the Switch uses on the port. Select **ARP-Reply** to have the Switch update the ARP table only with the ARP replies to the ARP requests sent by the Switch. Select **Gratuitous-ARP** to have the Switch update its ARP table with either an ARP reply or a gratuitous ARP request. Select **ARP-Request** to have the Switch update the ARP table with both ARP replies, gratuitous ARP requests and ARP requests.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

37

Maintenance

37.1 Overview

This chapter explains how to configure the screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

37.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Maintenance** screen (Section 37.2 on page 301) to upload the latest firmware.
- Use the **Firmware Upgrade** screen (Section 37.3 on page 303) to upload the latest firmware.
- Use the **Restore Configuration** screen (Section 37.4 on page 305) to upload a stored device configuration file.
- Use the **Backup Configuration** screen (Section 37.5 on page 305) to save your configurations for later use.

37.2 The Maintenance Screen

Use this screen to manage firmware and your configuration files. Click **Management** > **Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 217 Management > Maintenance

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 146 Management > Maintenance

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current	This field displays which configuration (**Configuration 1** or **Configuration 2**) is currently operating on the Switch.
Firmware Upgrade	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.

Table 146 Management > Maintenance (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Restore Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Restore Configuration** screen.
Backup Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Backup Configuration** screen.
Load Factory Default	Click **Click Here** to reset the configuration to the factory default settings.
Save Configuration	Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.
Reboot System	Click **Config 1** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 2** on the Switch. Note: Make sure to click the **Save** button in any screen to save your settings to the current configuration on the Switch.
Tech-Support	Click **Click Here** to see the Tech-Support screen. You can set CPU and memory thresholds for log reports and download related log reports for issue analysis. Log reports include CPU history and utilization, crash and memory.

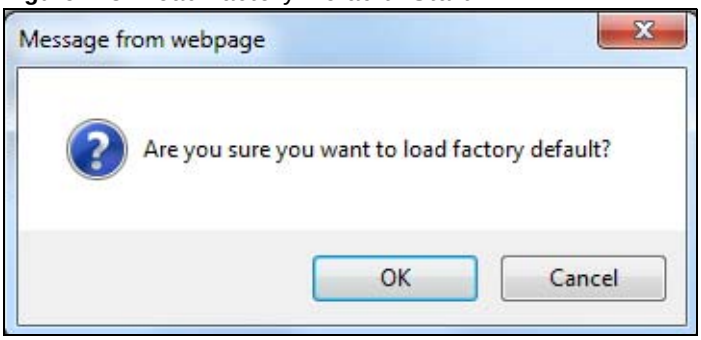
37.2.1 Load Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Default** to clear all Switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.

2 Click **OK** to reset all Switch configurations to the factory defaults.

Figure 218 Load Factory Default: Start



3 In the web configurator, click the **Save** button in the top of the screen to make the changes take effect. If you want to access the Switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

37.2.2 Save Configuration

Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings permanently to **Configuration 1** on the Switch.

Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.

Alternatively, click Save on the top right-hand corner in any screen to save the configuration changes to the current configuration.

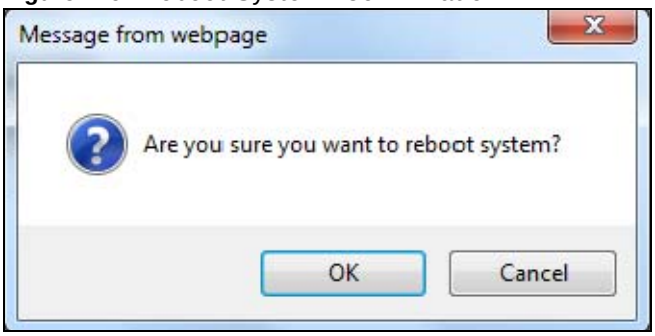
Note: Clicking the **Apply** or **Add** button does NOT save the changes permanently. All unsaved changes are erased after you reboot the Switch.

37.2.3 Reboot System

Reboot System allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. It also allows you to load configuration one (**Config 1**) or configuration two (**Config 2**) when you reboot. Follow the steps below to reboot the Switch.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Config 1** button next to **Reboot System** to reboot and load configuration one. The following screen displays.

Figure 219 Reboot System: Confirmation



2 Click **OK** again and then wait for the Switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the Switch's configuration.

Click **Config 2** and follow steps 1 to 2 to reboot and load configuration two on the Switch.

37.3 Firmware Upgrade

Use the following screen to upgrade your Switch to the latest firmware.

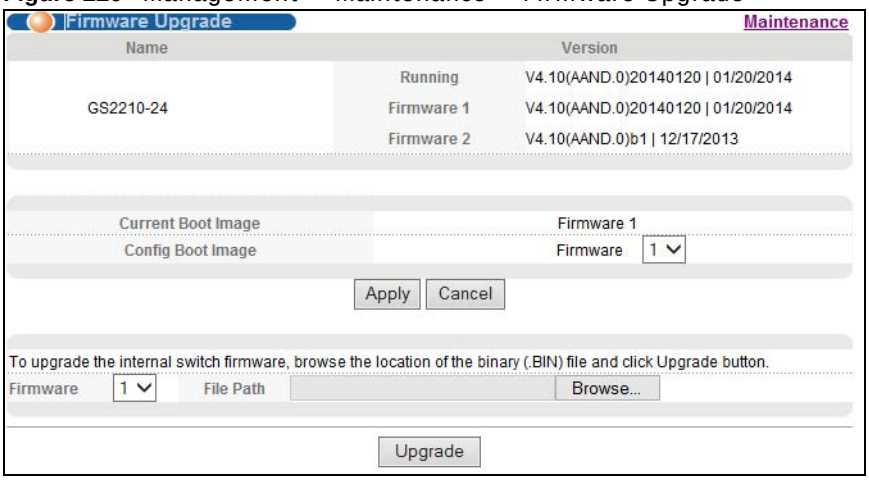
Use the following screen to upgrade your Switch to the latest firmware. The Switch supports dual firmware images, **Firmware 1** and **Firmware 2**. Use this screen to specify which image is updated when firmware is uploaded using the web configurator and to specify which image is loaded when the Switch starts up.

Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

Click **Management** > **Maintenance** > **Firmware Upgrade** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 220 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade



Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Select the **Rebooting** checkbox if you want to reboot the Switch and apply the new firmware immediately. (Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot). Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

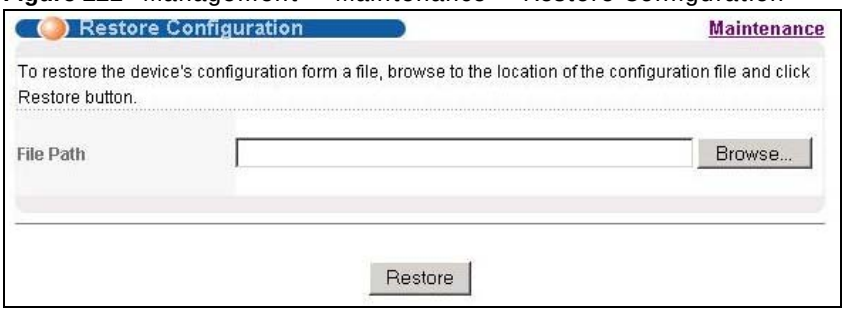
Table 147 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This is the name of the Switch that you're configuring.
Version	The Switch has two firmware sets, **Firmware 1** and **Firmware 2**, residing in flash. • **Running** shows the version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date of the firmware currently in use on the Switch (**Firmware 1** or **Firmware 2)**. The firmware information is also displayed at System Information in Basic Settings. • **Firmware 1** shows its version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date. • **Firmware 2** shows its version number (and model code) and MM/DD/YYYY creation date.
Current Boot Image	This displays which firmware is currently in use on the Switch (**Firmware 1** or **Firmware 2)**.
Config Boot Image	Select which firmware (**Firmware 1** or **Firmware 2)** should load, click Apply and reboot the switch to see changes, you will also see changes in the Current boot image field above as well.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Firmware	Choose to upload the new firmware to (Firmware) **1** or (Firmware) **2**.
File Path	Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it.
Upgrade	Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware. Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot. To reboot, go to **Management > Maintenance > Reboot System** and click **Config 1** or **Config 2** (**Config 1** and **Config 2** are the configuration files you want the Switch to use when it restarts.

37.4 Restore a Configuration File

Use this screen to restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the Switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

Figure 221 Management > Maintenance > Restore Configuration



Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the Switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

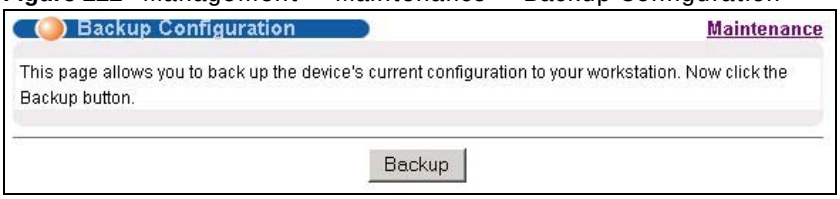
37.5 Backup a Configuration File

Use this screen to save and store your current device settings.

Backing up your Switch configurations allows you to create various “snap shots” of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current Switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Figure 222 Management > Maintenance > Backup Configuration



Follow the steps below to back up the current Switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

1 Click **Backup**.

2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.

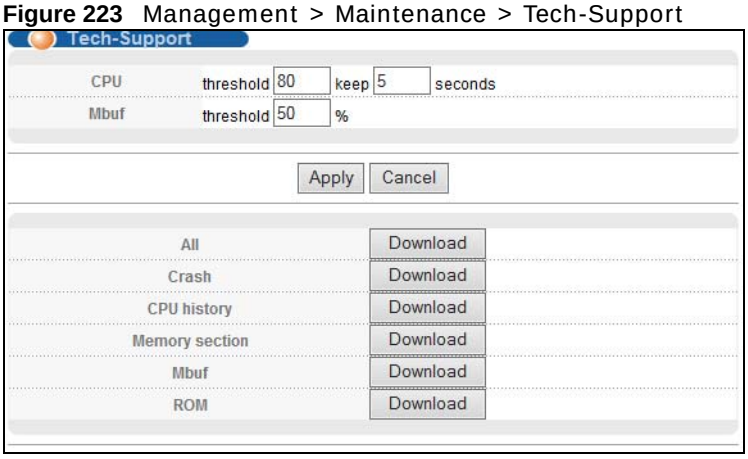
3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

37.6 Tech-Support

The Tech-Support feature is a log enhancement tool that logs useful information such as CPU utilization history, memory and Mbuf (Memory Buffer) log and crash reports for issue analysis by customer support should you have difficulty with your Switch. The Tech Support menu eases your effort in obtaining reports and it is also available in CLI command by typing “Show tech-support” command.

Click **Menu** > **Management** > **Maintenance** > **Tech-Support** to see the following screen.

Figure 223 Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support



You may need WordPad or similar software to see the log report correctly. The table below describes the fields in the above screen.

Table 148 Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support

CPU	Type a number ranging from 50 to 100 in the CPU threshold box, and type another number ranging from 5 to 60 in the seconds box then click **Apply**. For example, 80 for CPU threshold and 5 for seconds means a log will be created when CPU utilization reaches over 80% and lasts for 5 seconds. The log report holds 7 days of CPU log data and is stored in volatile memory (RAM). The data is lost if the Switch is turned off or in event of power outage. After 7 days, the logs wrap around and new ones and replace the earliest ones. The higher the CPU threshold number, the fewer logs will be created, and the less data technical support will have to analyze and vice versa.
Mbuf	Type a number ranging from 50 to 100 in the Mbuf (Memory Buffer) threshold box. The Mbuf log report is stored in flash (permanent) memory. For example, Mbuf 50 means a log will be created when the Mbuf utilization is over 50%. The higher the Mbuf threshold number, the fewer logs will be created, and the less data technical support will have to analyze and vice versa.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 148 Management > Maintenance > Tech-Support

All	Click **Download** to see all the log report and system status. This log report is stored in flash memory. If the **All** log report is too large, you can download the log reports separately below.
Crash	Click **Download** to see the crash log report. The log will include information of the last crash and is stored in flash memory.
CPU history	Click **Download** to see the CPU history log report. The 7-days log is stored in RAM and you will need to save it, otherwise it will be lost when the Switch is shutdown or during power outage.
Memory Section	Click **Download** to see the memory section log report. This log report is stored in flash memory.
Mbuf	Click **Download** to see the Mbuf log report. The log includes Mbuf over threshold information. This log report is stored in flash memory.
ROM	Click **Download** to see the Read Only Memory (ROM) log report. This report is stored in flash memory.

37.7 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

37.7.1 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the Switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

37.7.2 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (also known as the romfile or ROM) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, Switch setup, IP Setup, and so on. Once you have customized the Switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the "ras" file) is the system firmware and has a "bin" filename extension.

Table 149 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config	*.cfg	This is the configuration filename on the Switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your Switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the Switch.

37.7.2.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the Switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called “config.cfg” on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the Switch only recognizes “config” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

37.7.3 FTP Command Line Procedure

1. Launch the FTP client on your computer.
2. Enter open, followed by a space and the IP address of your Switch.
3. Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
4. Enter your password as requested (the default is “1234”).
5. Enter bin to set transfer mode to binary.
6. Use put to transfer files from the computer to the Switch, for example, `put firmware.bin ras` transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the Switch and renames it to “ras”. Similarly, `put config.cfg config` transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.cfg) to the Switch and renames it to “config”. Likewise `get config config.cfg` transfers the configuration file on the Switch to your computer and renames it to “config.cfg”. See Table 149 on page 307 for more information on filename conventions.
7. Enter quit to exit the ftp prompt.

37.7.4 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

37.7.5 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Service Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Switch will disconnect the FTP session immediately.

38

Access Control

38.1 Access Control Overview

This chapter describes how to control access to the Switch.

A console port and FTP are allowed one session each, Telnet and SSH share nine sessions, up to five Web sessions (five different user names and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions are allowed.

Table 150 Access Control Overview

Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	Share up to nine sessions		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist when multi-login is disabled. See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on disabling multi-login.

38.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Access Control** screen (Section 38.2 on page 310) to display the main screen.
- Use the **SNMP** screen (Section 38.3 on page 311) to configure your SNMP settings.
- Use the **Trap Group** screen (Section 38.3.1 on page 312) to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.
- Use the **User Information** screen (Section 38.3.3 on page 314) to create SNMP users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3 and associate them to SNMP groups.
- Use the **Logins** screens (Section 38.4 on page 316) to assign which users can access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.
- Use the **Service Access Control** screen (Section 38.5 on page 317) to decide what services you may use to access the Switch.
- Use the **Remote Management** screen (Section 38.6 on page 318) to specify a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.

38.2 The Access Control Main Screen

Use this screen to display the main screen.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

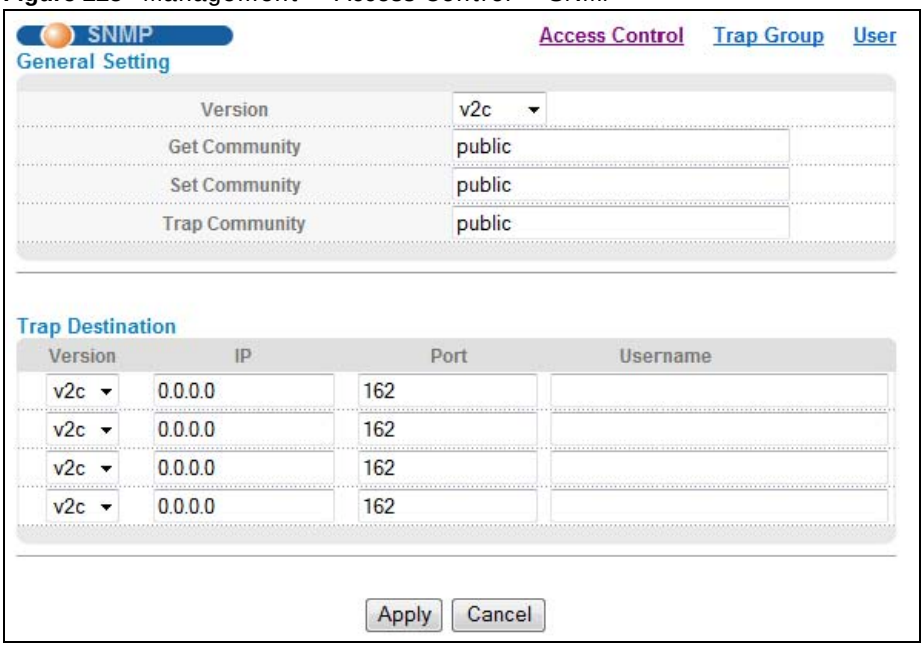
Figure 224 Management > Access Control

38.3 Configuring SNMP

Use this screen to configure your SNMP settings.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **SNMP** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 225 Management > Access Control > SNMP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 151 Management > Access Control > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setting	Use this section to specify the SNMP version and community (password) values.
Version	Select the SNMP version for the Switch. The SNMP version on the Switch must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 2c (**v2c**), SNMP version 3 (**v3**) or both (**v3v2c**). SNMP version 2c is backwards compatible with SNMP version 1.
Get Community	Enter the **Get Community** string, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext- requests from the management station. The **Get Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.

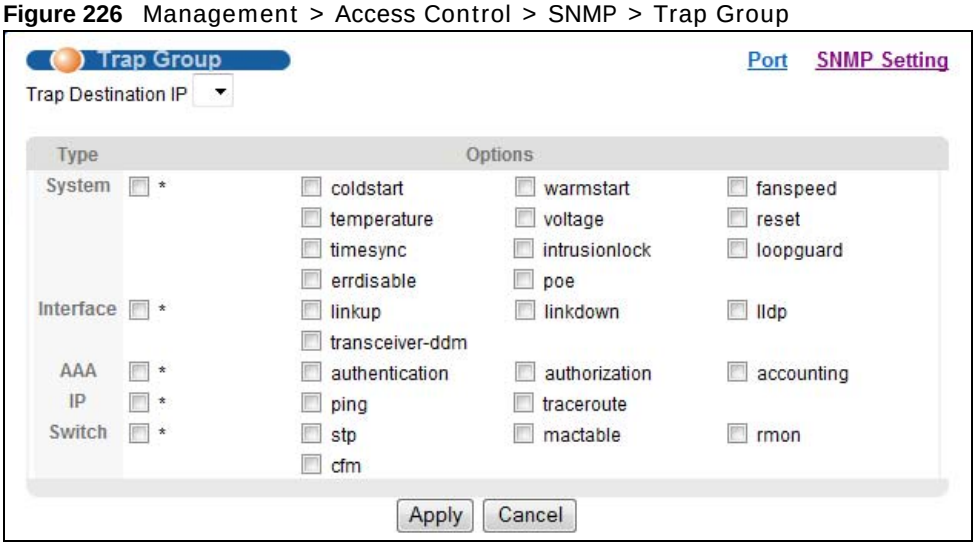
Table 151 Management > Access Control > SNMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Set Community	Enter the **Set Community**, which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station. The **Set Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Community	Enter the **Trap Community** string, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The **Trap Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Destination	Use this section to configure where to send SNMP traps from the Switch.
Version	Specify the version of the SNMP trap messages.
IP	Enter the IP addresses of up to four managers to send your SNMP traps to.
Port	Enter the port number upon which the manager listens for SNMP traps.
Username	Enter the username to be sent to the SNMP manager along with the SNMP v3 trap. This username must match an existing account on the Switch (configured in **Management** > **Access Control** > **Logins** screen).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

38.3.1 Configuring SNMP Trap Group

From the **SNMP** screen, click **Trap Group** to view the screen as shown. Use the **Trap Group** screen to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.

Figure 226 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

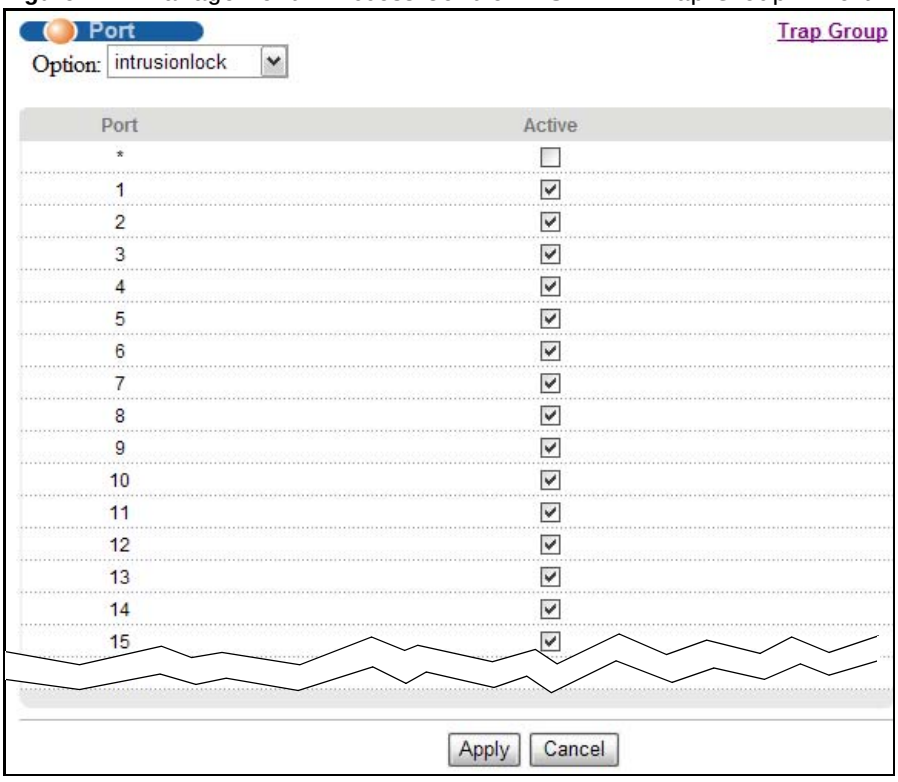
Table 152 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trap Destination IP	Select one of your configured trap destination IP addresses. These are the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. You must first configure a trap destination IP address in the **SNMP Setting** screen. Use the rest of the screen to select which traps the Switch sends to that SNMP manager.
Type	Select the categories of SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP manager.
Options	Select the individual SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP station. See SNMP Traps on page 321 for individual trap descriptions. The traps are grouped by category. Selecting a category automatically selects all of the category's traps. Clear the check boxes for individual traps that you do not want the Switch to send to the SNMP station. Clearing a category's check box automatically clears all of the category's trap check boxes (the Switch only sends traps from selected categories).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

38.3.2 Enabling/Disabling Sending of SNMP Traps on a Port

From the **SNMP > Trap Group** screen, click **Port** to view the screen as shown. Use this screen to set whether a trap received on the port(s) would be sent to the SNMP manager.

Figure 227 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group > Port



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

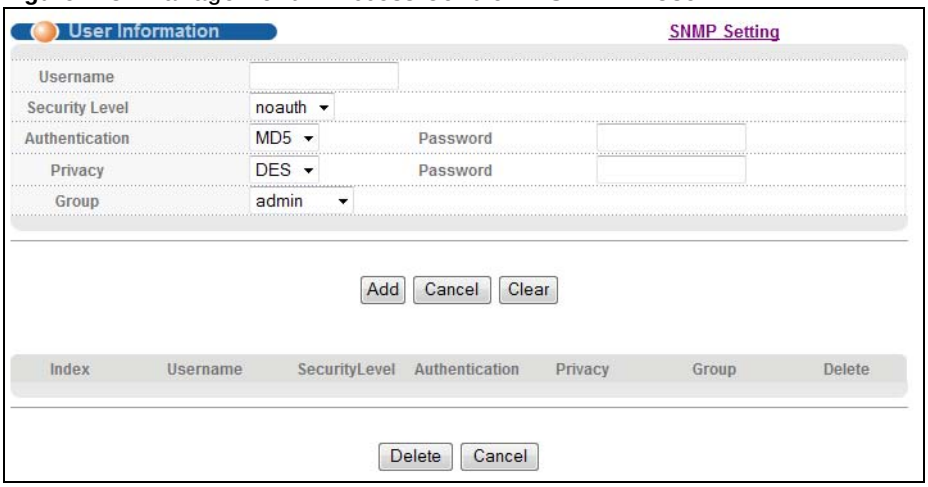
Table 153 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Option	Select the trap type you want to configure here.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some of the settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the trap type of SNMP traps on this port. Clear this check box to disable the sending of SNMP traps on this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

38.3.3 Configuring SNMP User

From the **SNMP** screen, click **User** to view the screen as shown. Use the **User** screen to create SNMP users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3 and associate them to SNMP groups. An SNMP user is an SNMP manager.

Figure 228 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 154 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Information	Note: Use the username and password of the login accounts you specify in this screen to create accounts on the SNMP v3 manager.
Username	Specify the username of a login account on the Switch.

Table 154 Management > Access Control > SNMP > User (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication from this user. Choose: • noauth -to use the username as the password string to send to the SNMP manager. This is equivalent to the Get, Set and Trap Community in SNMP v2c. This is the lowest security level. • auth - to implement an authentication algorithm for SNMP messages sent by this user. • priv - to implement authentication and encryption for SNMP messages sent by this user. This is the highest security level. Note: The settings on the SNMP manager must be set at the same security level or higher than the security level settings on the Switch.
Authentication	Select an authentication algorithm. **MD5** (Message Digest 5) and **SHA** (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for SNMP user authentication.
Privacy	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication from this user. You can choose one of the following: • DES - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. • AES - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data.
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for encrypting SNMP packets.
Group	SNMP v3 adopts the concept of View-based Access Control Model (VACM) group. SNMP managers in one group are assigned common access rights to MIBs. Specify in which SNMP group this user is. **admin** - Members of this group can perform all types of system configuration, including the management of administrator accounts. **readwrite** - Members of this group have read and write rights, meaning that the user can create and edit the MIBs on the Switch, except the user account and AAA configuration. **readonly** - Members of this group have read rights only, meaning the user can collect information from the Switch.
Add	Click this to create a new entry or to update an existing one. This saves your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is a read-only number identifying a login account on the Switch. Click on an index number to view more details and edit an existing account.
Username	This field displays the username of a login account on the Switch.
Security Level	This field displays whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication with this user.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication algorithm used for SNMP communication with this user.
Privacy	This field displays the encryption method used for SNMP communication with this user.
Group	This field displays the SNMP group to which this user belongs.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

38.4 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

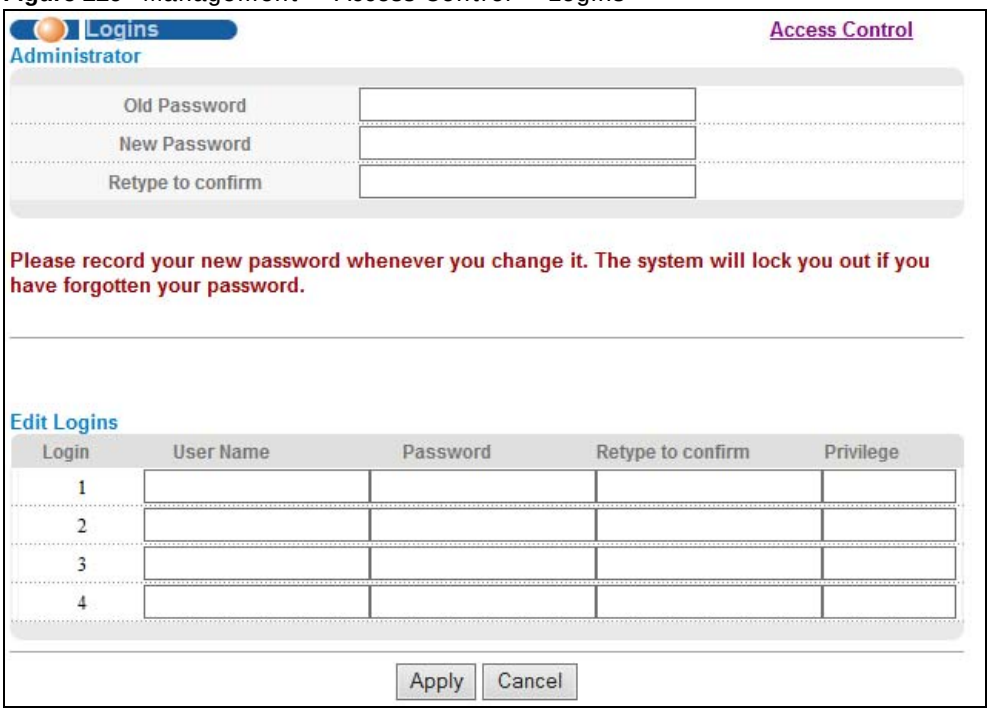
- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure Switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure Switch settings.

Click **Management > Access Control > Logins** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 229 Management > Access Control > Logins



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 155 Management > Access Control > Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator This is the default administrator account with the “admin” user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.	
Old Password	Type the existing system password (**1234** is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation

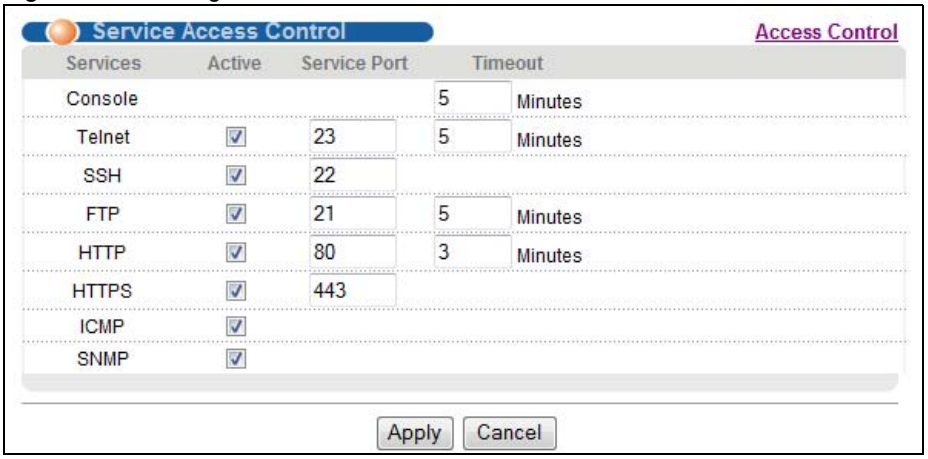
Table 155 Management > Access Control > Logins (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Edit Logins You may configure passwords for up to four users. These users have read-only access. You can give users higher privileges via the CLI. For more information on assigning privileges see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.	
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 ASCII characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Privilege	Type the privilege level for this user. At the time of writing, users may have a privilege level of 0, 3, 13, or 14 representing different configuration rights as shown below. • 0 - Display basic system information. • 3 - Display configuration or status. • 13 - Configure features except for login accounts, SNMP user accounts, the authentication method sequence and authorization settings, multiple logins, administrator and enable passwords, and configuration information display. • 14 - Configure login accounts, SNMP user accounts, the authentication method sequence and authorization settings, multiple logins, and administrator and enable passwords, and display configuration information. Users can run command lines if the session's privilege level is greater than or equal to the command's privilege level. The session privilege initially comes from the privilege of the login account. For example, if the user has a privilege of 5, he/she can run commands that requires privilege level of 5 or less but not more.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

38.5 Service Port Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the Switch. You may also change the default service port and configure "trusted computer(s)" for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Access Control** to go back to the main **Access Control** screen.

Figure 230 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 156 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the Switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the Switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the **Service Port** field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes (from 1 to 255) a management session can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

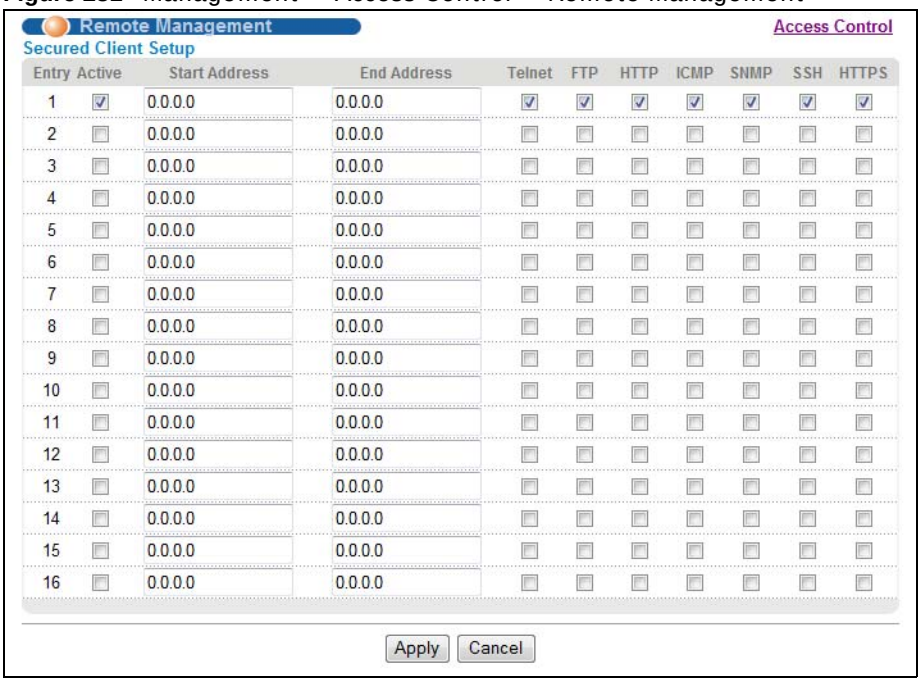
38.6 Remote Management

Use this screen to specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **Remote Management** to view the screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 231 Management > Access Control > Remote Management



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 157 Management > Access Control > Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A “client set” is a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this Switch. The Switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The Switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/ HTTP/ICMP/ SNMP/SSH/ HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the Switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

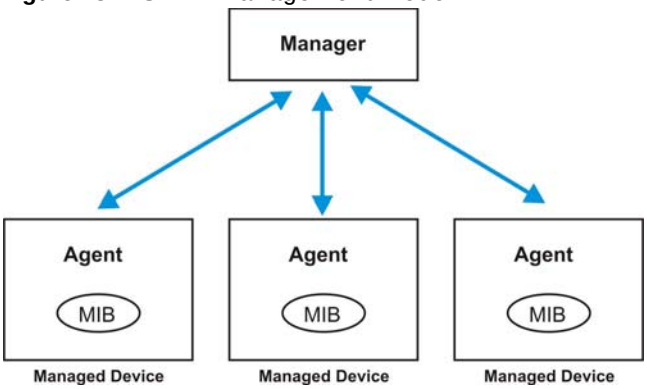
38.7 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

38.7.1 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the Switch through the network via SNMP version 1 (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c or SNMP version 3. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 232 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed Switch (the Switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed Switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a Switch. Examples of variables include number of packets received, node port status and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

Table 158 SNMP Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.

Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The Switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

SNMP Traps

The Switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. The following tables outline the SNMP traps by category.

An OID (Object ID) that begins with "**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15**" is defined in private MIBs. Otherwise, it is a standard MIB OID.

Table 159 SNMP System Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
coldstart	coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Switch is turned on.
warmstart	warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the Switch restarts.
fanspeed	zyHwMonitorFanSpeedOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.1	This trap is sent when the fan speed goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorFANSpeedOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.6	This trap is sent when the fan speed is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.

Table 159 SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
poe (For PoE models only)	zyPoePowerPortOverload	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.1	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power due to overloading.
	zyPoePowerPortShortCircuit	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.2	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power due to short circuit.
	zyPoePowerPortOverSystemBudget	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.3	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power because the requested power exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch.
	zyPoePowerPortOverloadRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.5	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from an overloaded state.
	zyPoePowerPortShortCircuitRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.6	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from a short circuit.
	zyPoePowerPortOverSystemBudgetRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.59.4.7	This trap is sent when the port is turned on to recover from an over system budget.
temperature	zyHwMonitorTemperatureOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.2	This trap is sent when the temperature goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorTemperatureOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.7	This trap is sent when the temperature is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.
voltage	zyHwMonitorPowerSupplyVoltageOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.3	This trap is sent when the voltage goes above or below the normal operating range.
	zyHwMonitorPowerSupplyVoltageOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.26.2.8	This trap is sent when the power supply voltage is recovered from the out of range to normal operating range.
reset	zySysMgmtUncontrolledSystemReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch automatically resets.
	zySysMgmtControlledSystemReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.2	This trap is sent when the Switch resets by an administrator through a management interface.
	zySysMgmtBootImageInconsistence	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.49.2.3	This trap is sent when the index number of image which is loaded when the Switch starts up is different from what is specified via the CLI.
	RebootEvent	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.1.1.2	This trap is sent when the Switch reboots by an administrator through a management interface.
timesync	zyDateTimeTrapTimeServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.82.3.1	This trap is sent when the Switch's date and time is not manually entered or the specified time server is not reachable.
	zyDateTimeTrapTimeServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.82.3.2	This trap is sent when the Switch's real time clock is up to date.
intrusionlock	zyPortIntrusionLock	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.2	This trap is sent when intrusion lock occurs on a port.
loopguard	zyLoopGuardLoopDetect	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.45.2.1	This trap is sent when loopguard shuts down a port.

Table 159 SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
errdisable	zyErrdisableDetect	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.24.4.1	This trap is sent when an error is detected on a port, such as a loop occurs or the rate limit for specific control packets is exceeded.
	zyErrdisableRecovery	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.24.4.2	This trap is sent when the Switch ceases the action taken on a port, such as shutting down the port or discarding packets on the port, after the specified recovery interval.

Table 160 SNMP InterfaceTraps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
linkup	linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
linkdown	linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
autonegotiation	zyPortAutonegotiationFailed	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.1	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface fails to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
	zyPortAutonegotiationFailedRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.61.3.3	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface recovers from failing to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
lldp	lldpRemTablesChange	1.0.8802.1.1.2.0.0.1	The trap is sent when entries in the remote database have any updates. Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), defined as IEEE 802.1ab, enables LAN devices that support LLDP to exchange their configured settings. This helps eliminate configuration mismatch issues.

Table 160 SNMP InterfaceTraps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
transceiver-ddm	zyTransceiverDdmiTemperatureOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.1	This trap is sent when the transceiver temperature is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxPowerOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.2	This trap is sent when the transmitted optical power is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiRxPowerOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.3	This trap is sent when the received optical power is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiVoltageOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.4	This trap is sent when the transceiver supply voltage is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxBiasOutOfRange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.5	This trap is sent when the transmitter laser bias current is above or below the normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTemperatureOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.6	This trap is sent when the transceiver temperature is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxPowerOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.7	This trap is sent when the transmitted optical power is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiRxPowerOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.8	This trap is sent when the received optical power is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiVoltageOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.9	This trap is sent when the transceiver supply voltage is recovered from the out of normal operating range.
	zyTransceiverDdmiTxBiasOutOfRangeRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.84.3.10	This trap is sent when the transmitter laser bias current is recovered from the out of normal operating range.

Table 161 AAA Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authentication	authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/ or password.
	zyAaaAuthenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.8.3.1	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/ or password.
	zyRadiusServerAuthenticationServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS authentication server.
	zyTacacsServerAuthenticationServerUnreachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the TACACS+ authentication server.
	zyRadiusServerAuthenticationServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.3	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable RADIUS authentication server.
	zyTacacsServerAuthenticationServerUnreachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.3	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable TACACS+ authentication server.
authorization	zyAaaAuthorizationFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.8.3.2	This trap is sent when management connection authorization failed.
accounting	zyRadiusServerAccountingServerNotReachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.2	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS accounting server.
	zyTacacsServerAccountingServerUnreachable	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.2	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the TACACS+ accounting server.
	zyRadiusServerAccountingServerNotReachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.71.2.4	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable RADIUS accounting server.
	zyTacacsServerAccountingServerUnreachableRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.83.2.4	This trap is sent when there is a response message from the previously unreachable TACACS+ accounting server.

Table 162 SNMP IP Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
ping	pingProbeFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.1	This trap is sent when a single ping probe fails.
	pingTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.2	This trap is sent when a ping test (consisting of a series of ping probes) fails.
	pingTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.3	This trap is sent when a ping test is completed.
traceroute	traceRouteTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.2	This trap is sent when a traceroute test fails.
	traceRouteTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.3	This trap is sent when a traceroute test is completed.

Table 163 SNMP Switch Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
stp	STPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
	zyMrstpNewRoot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.52.3.1	This trap is sent when the MRSTP root switch changes.
	zyMstpNewRoot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.53.3.1	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
	STPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
	zyMrstpTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.52.3.2	This trap is sent when the MRSTP topology changes.
	zyMstpTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.53.3.2	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
mactable	zyMacForwardingTableFull	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.48.2.1	This trap is sent when more than 99% of the MAC table is used.
	zyMacForwardingTableFullRecovered	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.15.3.48.2.2	This trap is sent when the MAC address switching table has become normal from full.
rmon	RmonRisingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1	This trap is sent when a variable goes over the RMON "rising" threshold.
	RmonFallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2	This trap is sent when the variable falls below the RMON "falling" threshold.
cfm	dot1agCfmFaultAlarm	1.3.111.2.802.1.1.8.0.1	The trap is sent when the Switch detects a connectivity fault.

38.7.2 SSH Overview

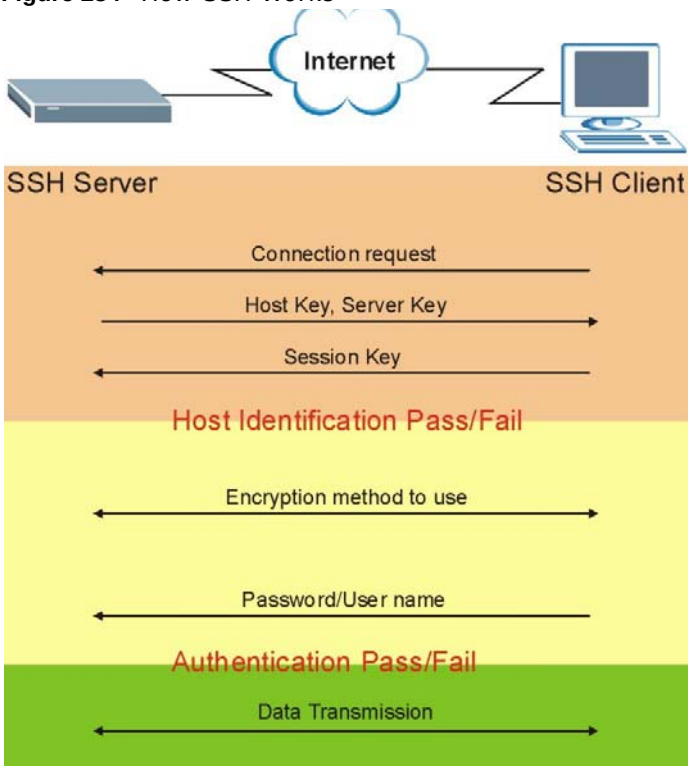
Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

Figure 233 SSH Communication Example

38.7.2.1 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

Figure 234 How SSH Works



1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

38.7.2.2 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your Switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

38.7.2.3 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Switch over SSH.

38.7.3 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

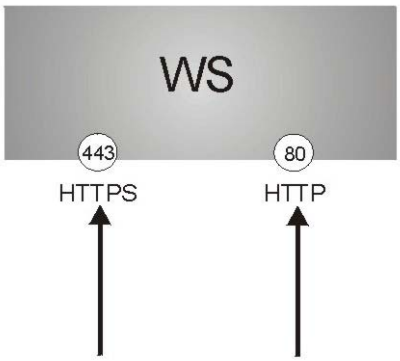
HTTPS on the Switch is used so that you may securely access the Switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the Switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the Switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a Certificate Authority (CA) that is a trusted CA on the Switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

Figure 235 HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable HTTP in the Service Access Control screen, then the Switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

38.7.3.1 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Switch, then in your browser enter "https:// Switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "Switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Switch you wish to access.

Internet Explorer Warning Messages

Internet Explorer 6

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate.

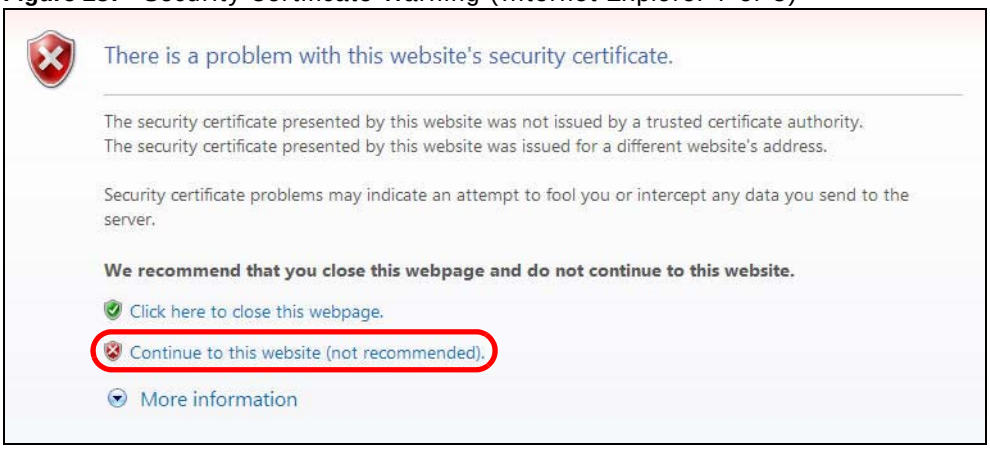
You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

Figure 236 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer 6)

Internet Explorer 7 or 8

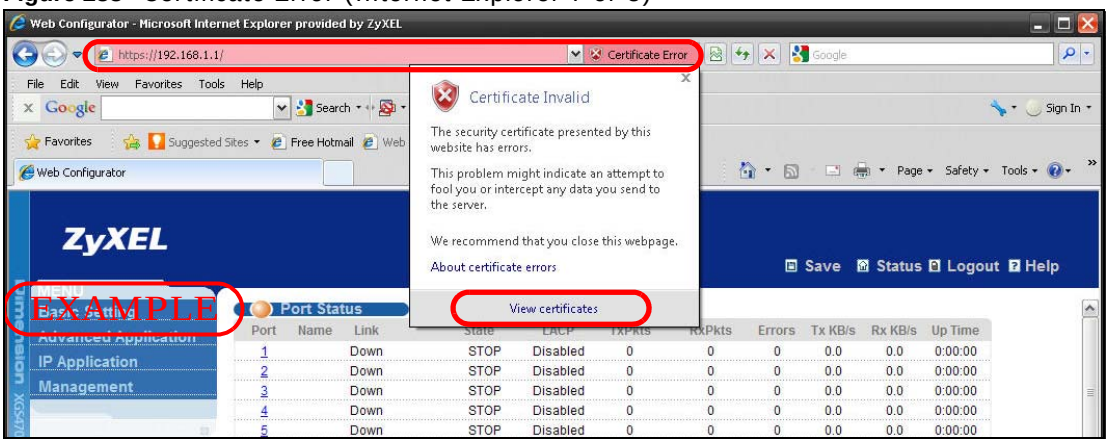
When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a screen with the message "There is a problem with this website's security certificate." may display. If that is the case, click **Continue to this website (not recommended)** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

Figure 237 Security Certificate Warning (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



After you log in, you will see the red address bar with the message **Certificate Error**. Click on **Certificate Error** next to the address bar and click **View certificates**.

Figure 238 Certificate Error (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



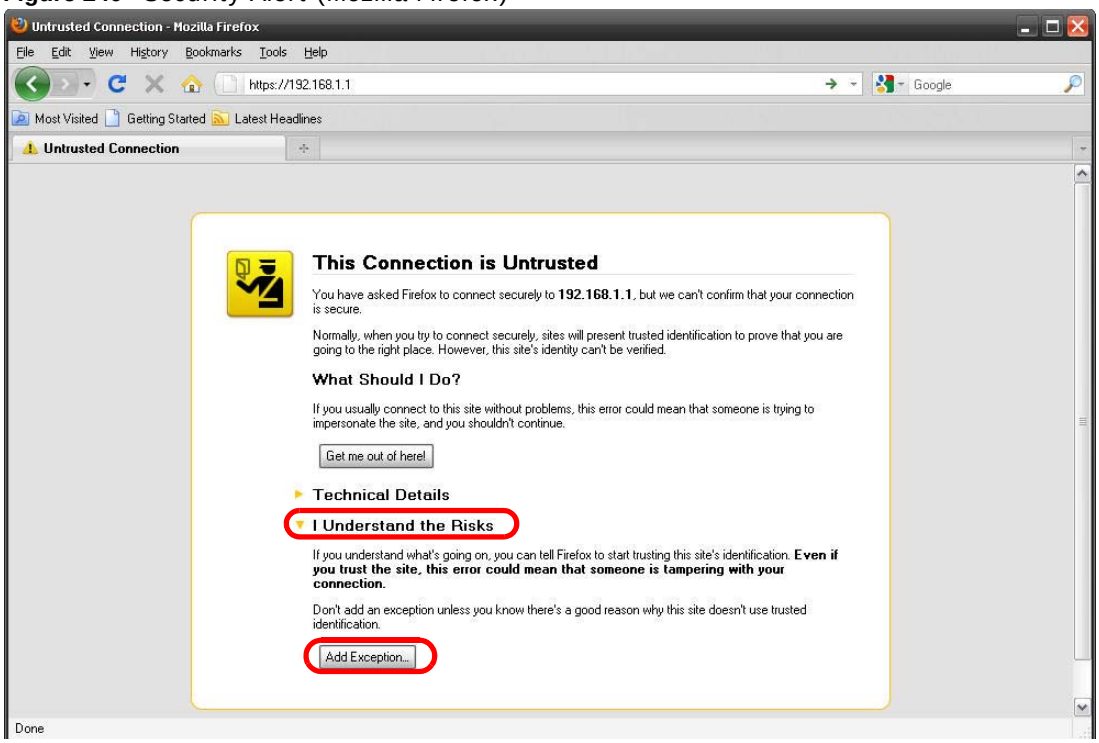
Click **Install Certificate...** and follow the on-screen instructions to install the certificate in your browser.

Figure 239 Certificate (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)

Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages

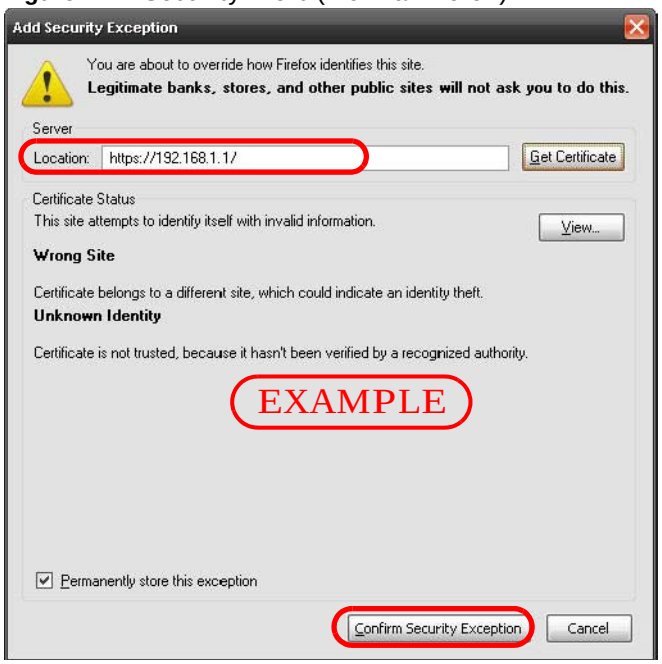
When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **This Connection is Unstructed** screen may display. If that is the case, click **I Understand the Risks** and then the **Add Exception...** button.

Figure 240 Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)



Confirm the HTTPS server URL matches. Click **Confirm Security Exception** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

Figure 241 Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)

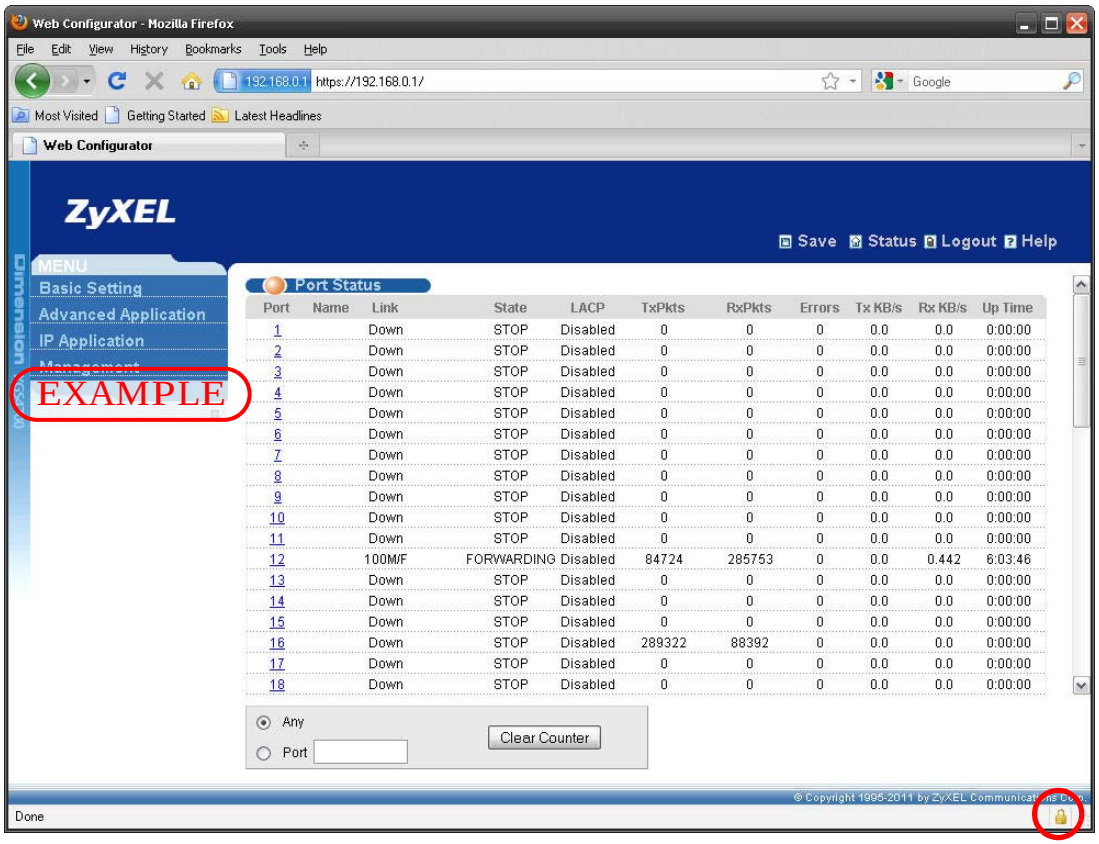


38.7.3.2 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the Switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar (in Internet Explorer 6 or

Mozilla Firefox) or next to the address bar (in Internet Explorer 7 or 8) denotes a secure connection.

Figure 242 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection



39

Diagnostic

39.1 Overview

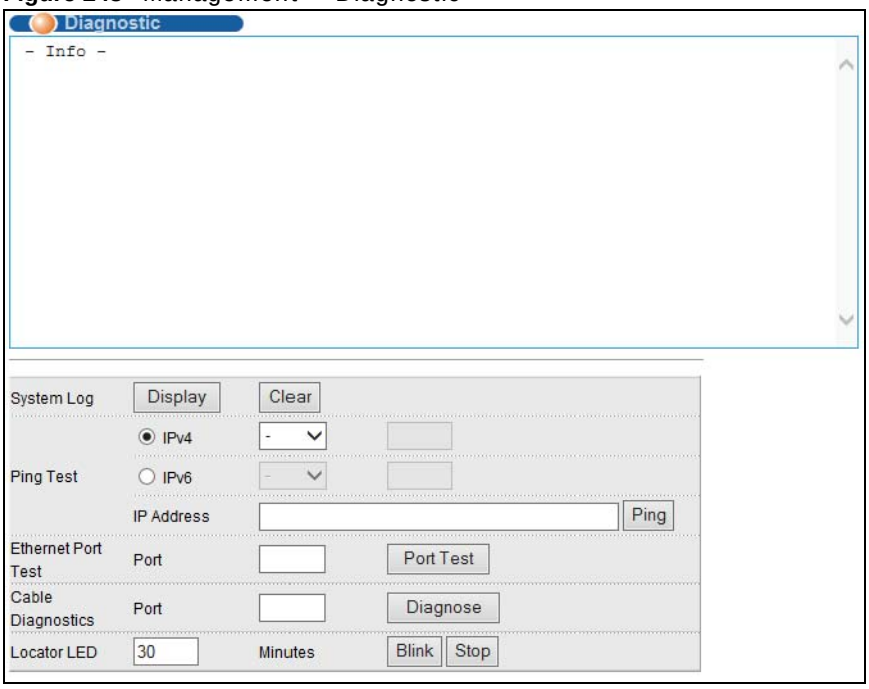
This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen.

Use the **Diagnostic** screen (Section 39.2 on page 333) to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

39.2 Diagnostic

Click **Management** > **Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

Figure 243 Management > Diagnostic



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 164 Management > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click **Display** to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click **Clear** to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
Ping Test	
IPv4	Select this option if you want to ping an IPv4 address, and select which traffic flow (**in-band** or **out-of-band**) the Switch is to send ping frames. If you select **in-band**, the Switch sends the frames to all ports except the management port (labelled **MGMT**). If you select **out-of-band**, the Switch sends the frames to the management port (labelled **MGMT**).
IPv6	Select this option if you want to ping an IPv6 address. You also need to select the IPv6 interface type and specify the ID number of interface through which the Switch is to send ping frames.
IP Address	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click **Ping** to have the Switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	Enter a port number and click **Port Test** to perform an internal loopback test.
Cable Diagnostics	Enter a port number and click **Diagnose** to perform a physical wire-pair test of the Ethernet connections on the specified port(s). The following fields display when you diagnose a port.
Port	This is the number of the physical Ethernet port on the Switch.
Channel	An Ethernet cable usually has four pairs of wires. A 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX port only use and test two pairs, while a 1000BASE-T port requires all four pairs. This displays the descriptive name of the wire-pair in the cable.
Pair status	**Ok**: The physical connection between the wire-pair is okay. **Open**: There is no physical connection (an open circuit detected) between the wire-pair. **Short**: There is an short circuit detected between the wire-pair. **Unknown**: The Switch failed to run cable diagnostics on the cable connected this port. **Unsupported**: The port is a fiber port or it is not active.
Cable length	This displays the total length of the Ethernet cable that is connected to the port when the **Pair status** is **Ok** and the Switch chipset supports this feature. This shows **N/A** if the **Pair status** is **Open** or **Short**. Check the **Distance to fault**. This shows **Unsupported** if the Switch chipset does not support to show the cable length.
Distance to fault	This displays the distance between the port and the location where the cable is open or shorted. This shows **N/A** if the **Pair status** is **Ok**. This shows **Unsupported** if the Switch chipset does not support to show the distance.
Locator LED	Enter a time interval (in minutes) and click **Blink** to show the actual location of the Switch between several devices in a rack. The default time interval is 30 minutes. Click **Stop** to have the Switch terminate the blinking locater LED.

40

Syslog

40.1 Syslog Overview

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 165 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

40.1.1 What You Can Do

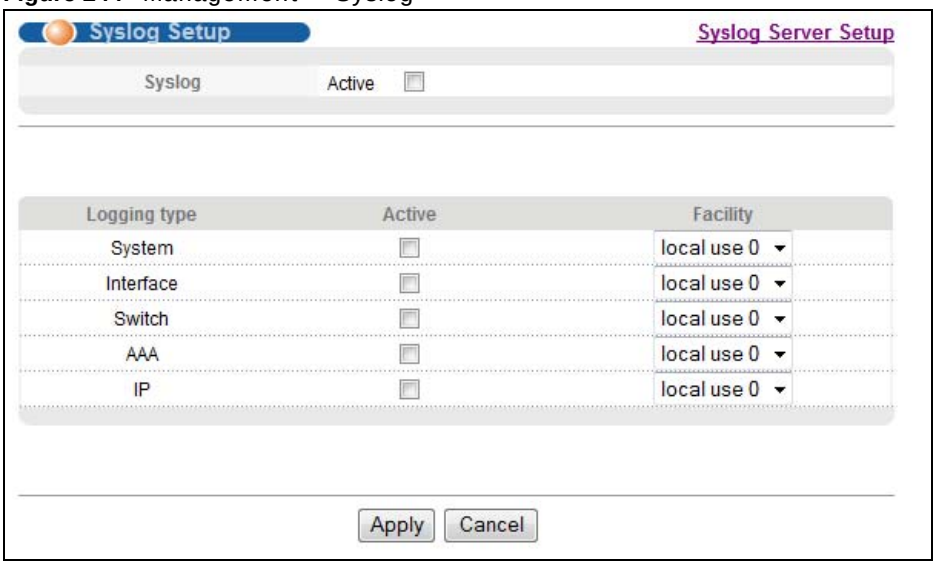
- Use the **Syslog Setup** screen (Section 40.2 on page 335) to configure the device's system logging settings.
- Use the **Syslog Server Setup** screen (Section 40.3 on page 336) to configure a list of external syslog servers.

40.2 Syslog Setup

Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

Click **Management** > **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server.

Figure 244 Management > Syslog



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

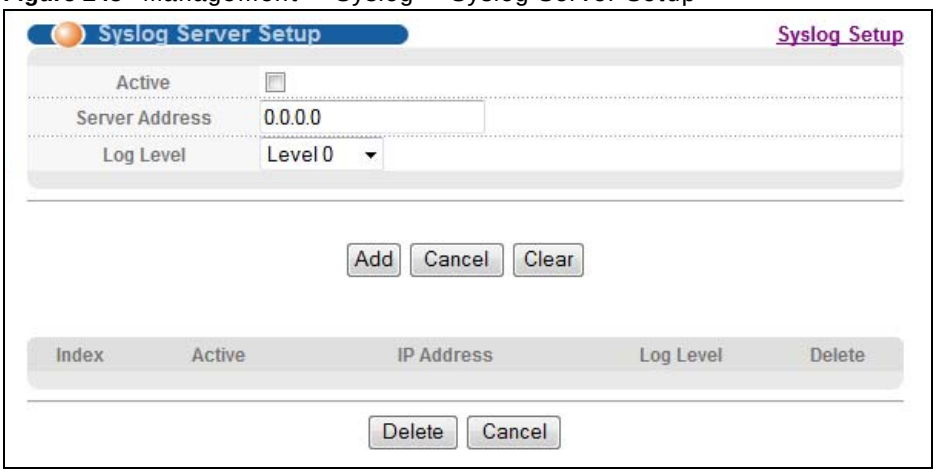
Table 166 Management > Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select **Active** to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

40.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** > **Syslog Server Setup** to view the screen as shown next. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

Figure 245 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 167 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. **No** displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's **Delete** check box and click **Delete** to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

41

Cluster Management

41.1 Cluster Management Overview

This chapter introduces cluster management.

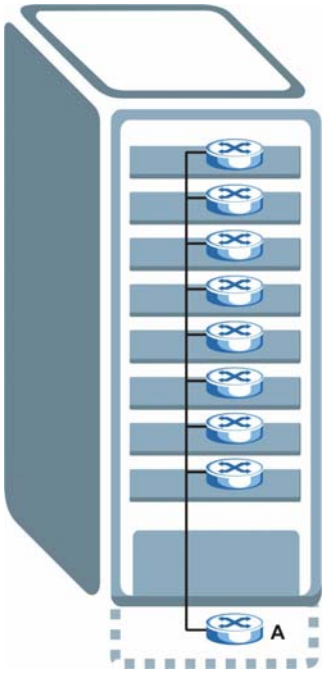
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one Switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 168 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

Figure 246 Clustering Application Example



41.1.1 What You Can Do

- Use the **Cluster Management** screen (Section 41.2 on page 339) to view the role of the Switch within the cluster and to access a cluster member switch's web configurator.
- Use the **Clustering Management Configuration** screen (Section 41.1 on page 338) to configure clustering management.

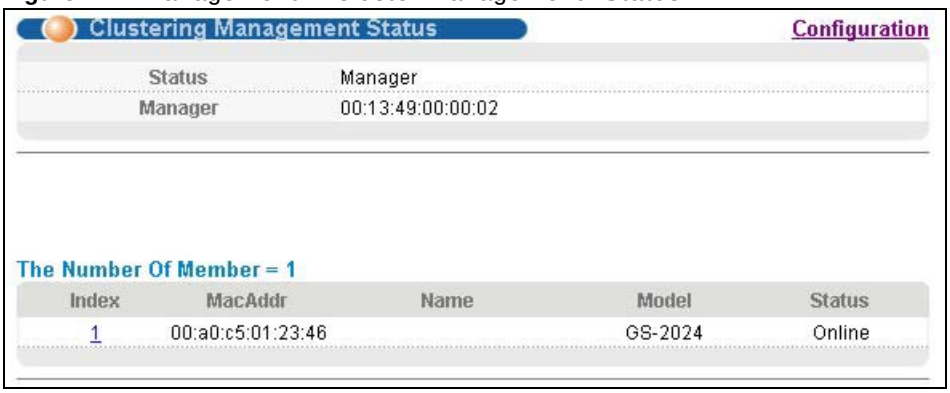
41.2 Cluster Management Status

Use this screen to view the role of the Switch within the cluster and to access a cluster member switch's web configurator.

Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

Figure 247 Management > Cluster Management: Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 169 Management > Cluster Management: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the role of this Switch within the cluster. **Manager** **Member** (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) **None** (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the **Index** column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see Figure 249 on page 342).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.

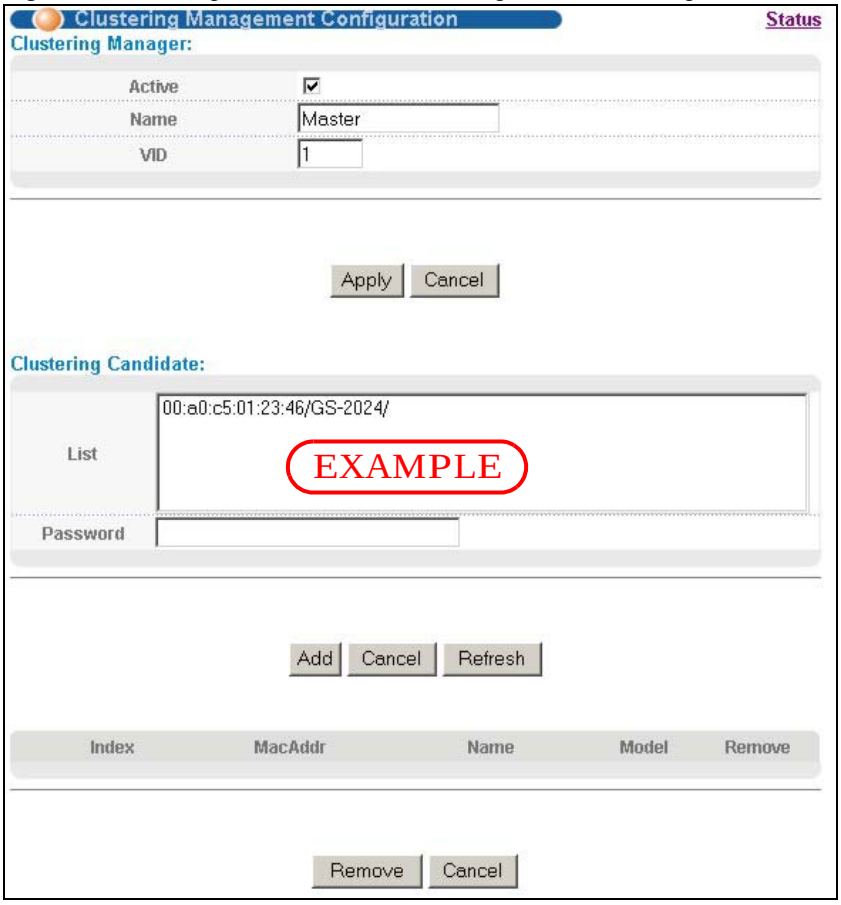
Table 169 Management > Cluster Management: Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: **Online** (the cluster member switch is accessible) **Error** (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) **Offline** (the switch is disconnected - **Offline** shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)

41.3 Clustering Management Configuration

Use this screen to configure clustering management. Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** > **Configuration** to display the next screen.

Figure 248 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 170 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select **Active** to have this Switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the **Clustering Manager.** You may use up to 32 printable characters (spaces are allowed).
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the Switch is set to **802.1Q** VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. This field is ignored if the **Clustering Manager** is using **Port-based** VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the **Clustering Candidate** list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the **Cluster Manager**. Its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below. If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Refresh	Click **Refresh** to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the **Remove** button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

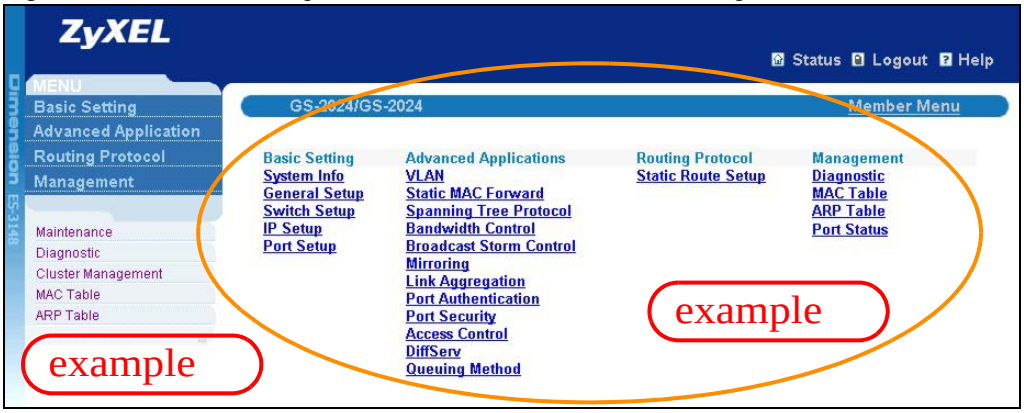
41.4 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

41.4.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

Figure 249 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



41.4.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

Figure 250 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 Switch FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:58:46 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group         3042210 Jul 01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group          393216 Jul 01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File sent OK
ftp: 297 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 297000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 410AAHW0.bin fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

Table 171 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User	Enter “admin”.
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch’s firmware and configuration file.
410AAHW0.bin	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch’s firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch’s configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.

42

MAC Table

42.1 MAC Table Overview

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

42.1.1 What You Can Do

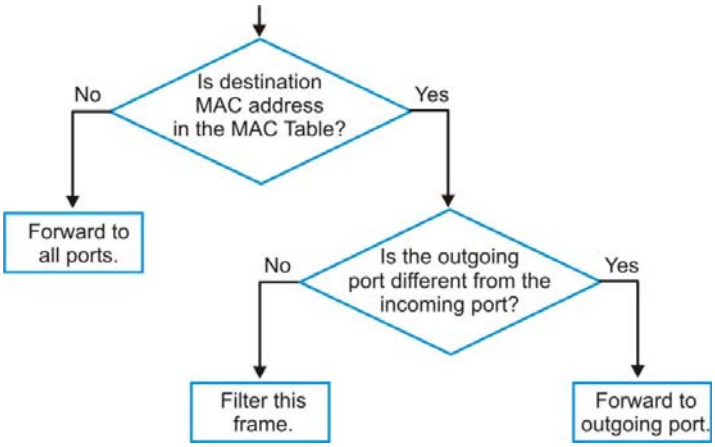
Use the **MAC Table** screen (Section 42.2 on page 345) to check whether the MAC address is dynamic or static.

42.1.2 What You Need to Know

The Switch uses the MAC table to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

1. The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
2. The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the MAC table.
   - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
   - If the Switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
   - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

Figure 251 MAC Table Flowchart

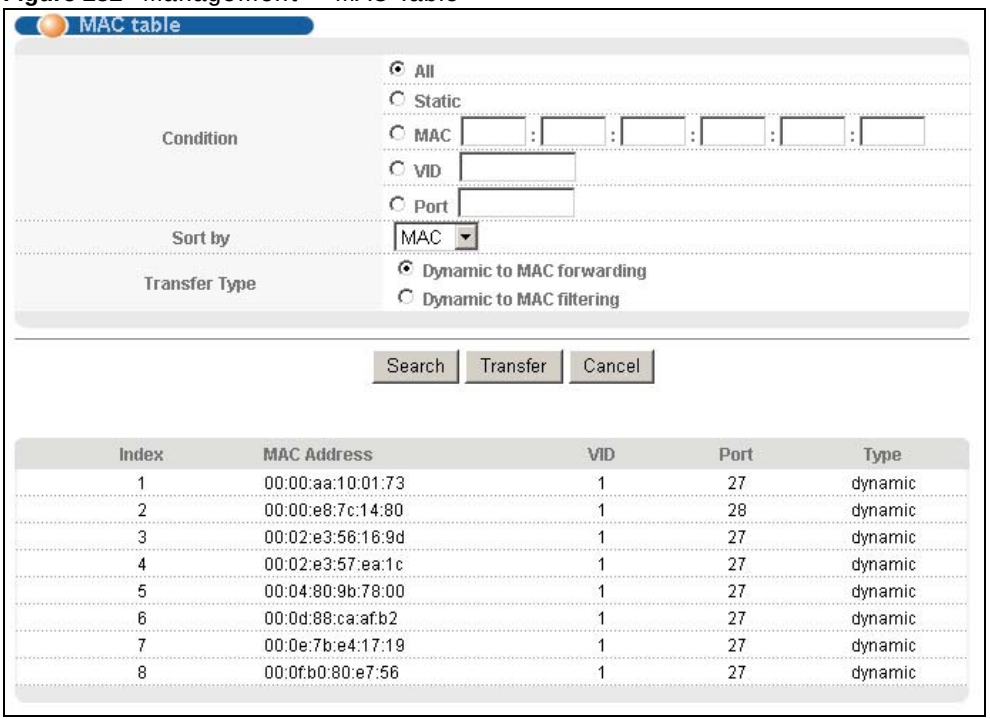


42.2 Viewing the MAC Table

Use this screen to check whether the MAC address is dynamic or static.

Click **Management** > **MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 252 Management > MAC Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 172 Management > MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	Select one of the buttons and click **Search** to only display the data which matches the criteria you specified. Select **All** to display any entry in the MAC table of the Switch. Select **Static** to display the MAC entries manually configured on the Switch. Select **MAC** and enter a MAC address in the field provided to display a specified MAC entry. Select **VID** and enter a VLAN ID in the field provided to display the MAC entries belonging to the specified VLAN. Select **Port** and enter a port number in the field provided to display the MAC addresses which are forwarded on the specified port.
Sort by	Define how the Switch displays and arranges the data in the summary table below. Select **MAC** to display and arrange the data according to MAC address. Select **VID** to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group. Select **PORT** to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Transfer Type	Select **Dynamic to MAC forwarding** and click the **Transfer** button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into static entries. They also display in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen. Select **Dynamic to MAC filtering** and click the **Transfer** button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into MAC filtering entries. These entries will then display only in the **Filtering** screen and the default filtering action is **Discard source**.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port where the above MAC address is forwarded.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is **dynamic** (learned by the Switch) or **static** (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

43

ARP Table

43.1 Overview

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

43.1.1 What You Can Do

Use the **ARP Table** screen (Section 43.2 on page 347) to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s).

43.1.2 What You Need to Know

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and if it finds the address, it sends it to the device.

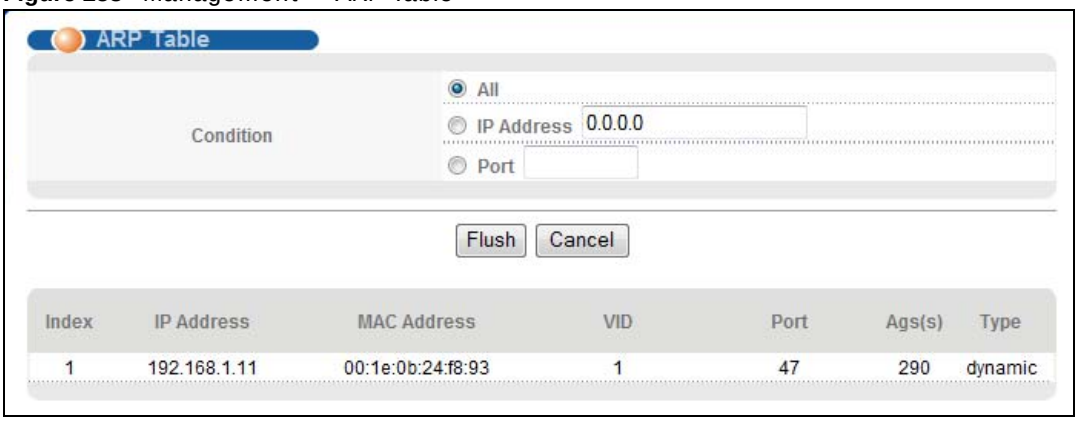
If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

43.2 Viewing the ARP Table

Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s) and remove specific dynamic ARP entries.

Click **Management > ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 253 Management > ARP Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 173 Management > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	Specify how you want the Switch to remove ARP entries when you click **Flush**. Select **All** to remove all of the dynamic entries from the ARP table. Select **IP Address** and enter an IP address to remove the dynamic entries learned with the specified IP address. Select **Port** and enter a port number to remove the dynamic entries learned on the specified port.
Flush	Click **Flush** to remove the ARP entries according to the condition you specified.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the ARP table entry number.
IP Address	This is the IP address of a device connected to a Switch port with the corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the corresponding IP address above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the device belongs.
Port	This field displays the port to which the device connects. **CPU** means this IP address is the Switch's management IP address.
Age(s)	This field displays how long (in seconds) an entry can still remain in the ARP table before it ages out and needs to be relearned. This shows **0** for a static entry.
Type	This shows whether the IP address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually configured in the **Basic Setting > IP Setup** or **IP Application > ARP Setup > Static ARP** screen).

44

Path MTU Table

44.1 Path MTU Overview

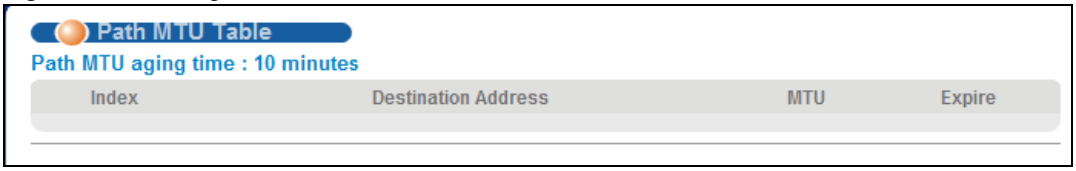
This chapter introduces the IPv6 Path MTU table.

The largest size (in bytes) of a packet that can be transferred over a data link is called the maximum transmission unit (MTU). The Switch uses Path MTU Discovery to discover Path MTU (PMTU), that is, the minimum link MTU of all the links in a path to the destination. If the Switch receives an ICMPv6 Packet Too Big error message after sending a packet, it fragments the next packet according to the suggested MTU in the error message.

44.2 Viewing the Path MTU Table

Use this screen to view IPv6 path MTU information on the Switch. Click **Management** > **Path MTU Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 254 Management > Path MTU Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 174 Management > Path MTU Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Path MTU aging time	This field displays how long an entry remains in the Path MTU table before it ages out and needs to be relearned.
Index	This field displays the index number of each entry in the table.
Destination Address	This field displays the destination IPv6 address of each path/entry.
MTU	This field displays the maximum transmission unit of the links in the path.
Expire	This field displays how long (in minutes) an entry can still remain in the Path MTU table before it ages out and needs to be relearned.

45

Configure Clone

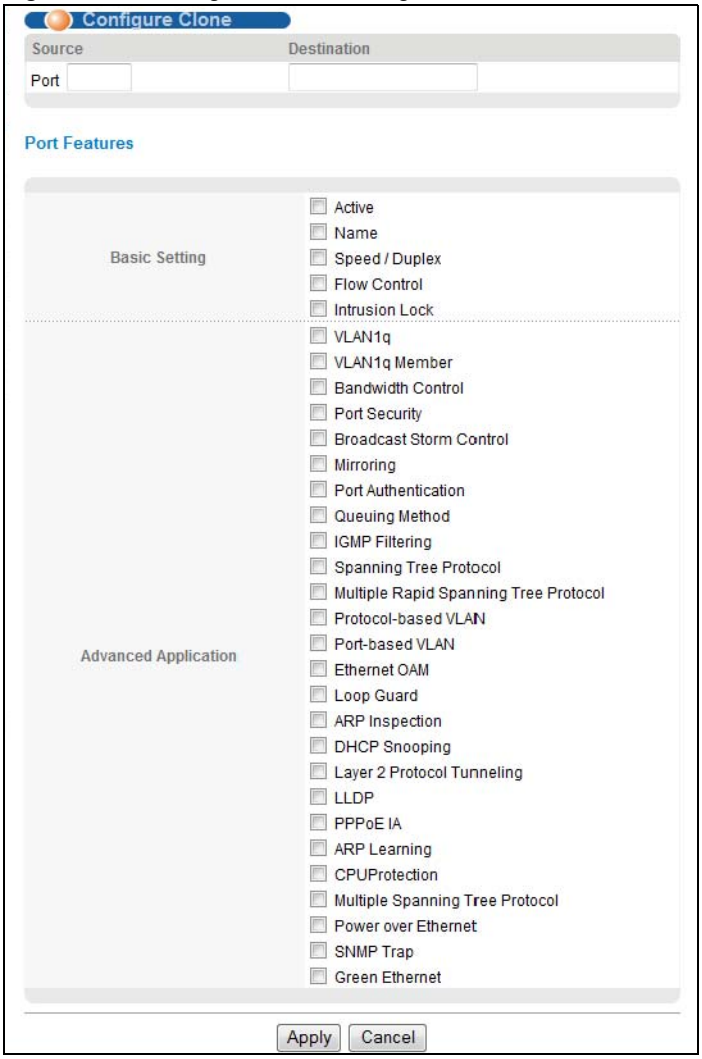
45.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how you can copy the settings of one port onto other ports.

45.2 Configure Clone

Cloning allows you to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports. Click **Management** > **Configure Clone** to open the following screen.

Figure 255 Management > Configure Clone



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 175 Management > Configure Clone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source/ Destination Port	Enter the source port under the **Source** label. This port's attributes are copied. Enter the destination port or ports under the **Destination** label. These are the ports which are going to have the same attributes as the source port. You can enter individual ports separated by a comma or a range of ports by using a dash. Example: **2, 4, 6** indicates that ports 2, 4 and 6 are the destination ports. **2-6** indicates that ports 2 through 6 are the destination ports.
Basic Setting	Select which port settings (you configured in the **Basic Setting** menus) should be copied to the destination port(s).
Advanced Application	Select which port settings (you configured in the **Advanced Application** menus) should be copied to the destination ports.

Table 175 Management > Configure Clone (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

46

Neighbor Table

46.1 IPv6 Neighbor Table Overview

This chapter introduces the IPv6 neighbor table.

An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor table. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the Switch sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the Switch receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor table. You can also manually create a static IPv6 neighbor entry using the **Basic Setting > IPv6 > IPv6 Configuration > IPv6 Neighbor Setup** screen.

When the Switch needs to send a packet, it first consults other table to determine the next hop. Once the next hop IPv6 address is known, the Switch looks into the neighbor table to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the Switch cannot find an entry in the neighbor table or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

46.2 Viewing the IPv6 Neighbor Table

Use this screen to view IPv6 neighbor information on the Switch. Click **Management** > **Neighbor Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 256 Management > Neighbor Table

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 176 Management > Neighbor Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each entry in the table.
Interface	This field displays the ID number of the IPv6 interface on which the IPv6 address is created or through which the neighboring device can be reached.
Neighbor Address	This field displays the IPv6 address of the Switch or a neighboring device.
MAC	This field displays the MAC address of the IPv6 interface on which the IPv6 address is configure or the MAC address of the neighboring device.

Table 176 Management > Neighbor Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays whether the neighbor IPv6 interface is reachable. In IPv6, “reachable” means an IPv6 packet can be correctly forwarded to a neighbor node (host or router) and the neighbor can successfully receive and handle the packet. The available options in this field are: • reachable (R): The interface of the neighboring device is reachable. (The Switch has received a response to the initial request.) • stale (S): The last reachable time has expired and the Switch is waiting for a response to another initial request. The field displays this also when the Switch receives an unrequested response from the neighbor’s interface. • delay (D): The neighboring interface is no longer known to be reachable, and traffic has been sent to the neighbor recently. The Switch delays sending request packets for a short to give upper-layer protocols a chance to determine reachability. • probe (P): The Switch is sending request packets and waiting for the neighbor’s response. • invalid (IV): The neighbor address is with an invalid IPv6 address. • unknown (?): The status of the neighboring interface can not be determined for some reason. • incomplete (I): Address resolution is in progress and the link-layer address of the neighbor has not yet been determined. The interface of the neighboring device did not give a complete response.
Type	This field displays the type of an address mapping to a neighbor interface. The available options in this field are: • other (O): none of the following type. • local (L): A Switch interface is using the address. • dynamic (D): The IP address to MAC address can be successfully resolved using IPv6 Neighbor Discovery protocol. Is it similar as IPv4 ARP (Address Resolution protocol). • static (S): The interface address is statically configured.

47

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs
- Switch Access and Login
- Switch Configuration

47.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The Switch does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

1. Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the Switch.
2. Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the Switch and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
3. Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
4. If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

The **ALM** LED is on.

1. Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
2. If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

1. Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See Section 3.3 on page 30.
2. Check the hardware connections. See Section 47.1 on page 355.
3. Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.

4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.

5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

47.2 Switch Access and Login

I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.1**.

2 Use the console port to log in to the Switch.

3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 38.

I forgot the username and/or password.

1 The default username is **admin** and the default password is **1234**.

2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 38.

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the web configurator.

1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
- The default IP address is 192.168.1.1.
- If you changed the IP address, use the new IP address.
- If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See Section 3.3 on page 30.

3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.

4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the Switch, skip this step.)

5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Switch with the default IP address. See Section 4.6 on page 38.

6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the Switch using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the Switch, check the remote management settings to find out why the Switch does not respond to HTTP.

I can see the **Login** screen, but I cannot log in to the Switch.

1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is **1234**. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.

2 You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later.

Check that you have enabled logins for HTTP or Telnet. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.

3 Disconnect and re-connect the cord to the Switch.

4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 38.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

I cannot see some of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels. Adjust the value in your computer and then you should see the rest of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

There is unauthorized access to my Switch via telnet, HTTP and SSH.

Click the **Display** button in the **System Log** field in the **Management** > **Diagnostic** screen to check for unauthorized access to your Switch. To avoid unauthorized access, configure the secured client setting in the **Management** > **Access Control** > **Remote Management** screen for telnet, HTTP and SSH (see Section 38.6 on page 318). Computers not belonging to the secured client set cannot get permission to access the Switch.

47.3 Switch Configuration

I lost my configuration settings after I restart the Switch.

Make sure you save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory each time you make changes. Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently. See also Section 37.5 on page 305 for more information about how to save your configuration.

A

Customer Support

In the event of problems that cannot be solved by using this manual, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a ZyXEL office for the region in which you bought the device. Regional websites are listed below (see also http://www.zyxel.com/about_zyxel/zyxel_worldwide.shtml). Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Note: You may be asked to download log reports related to CPU utilization, memory and crash in the Tech Support menu for issue analysis. Click **Menu** > **Management** > **Maintenance** > **Tech-Support**

Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

Taiwan

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com

Asia

China

- ZyXEL Communications (Shanghai) Corp.
  ZyXEL Communications (Beijing) Corp.
  ZyXEL Communications (Tianjin) Corp.
- http://www.zyxel.cn

India

- ZyXEL Technology India Pvt Ltd
- http://www.zyxel.in

Kazakhstan

- ZyXEL Kazakhstan

- http://www.zyxel.kz

Korea

- ZyXEL Korea Corp.
- http://www.zyxel.kr

Malaysia

- ZyXEL Malaysia Sdn Bhd.
- http://www.zyxel.com.my

Pakistan

- ZyXEL Pakistan (Pvt.) Ltd.
- http://www.zyxel.com.pk

Philipines

- ZyXEL Philippines
- http://www.zyxel.com.ph

Singapore

- ZyXEL Singapore Pte Ltd.
- http://www.zyxel.com.sg

Taiwan

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com

Thailand

- ZyXEL Thailand Co., Ltd
- http://www.zyxel.co.th

Vietnam

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation-Vietnam Office
- http://www.zyxel.com/vn/vi

Europe

Austria

- ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH
- http://www.zyxel.de

Belarus

- ZyXEL BY
- http://www.zyxel.by

Belgium

- ZyXEL Communications B.V.
- http://www.zyxel.com/be/nl/

Bulgaria

- ZyXEL България
- http://www.zyxel.com/bg/bg/

Czech

- ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o
- http://www.zyxel.cz

Denmark

- ZyXEL Communications A/S
- http://www.zyxel.dk

Estonia

- ZyXEL Estonia
- http://www.zyxel.com/ee/et/

Finland

- ZyXEL Communications
- http://www.zyxel.fi

France

- ZyXEL France
- http://www.zyxel.fr

Germany

- ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH
- http://www.zyxel.de

Hungary

- ZyXEL Hungary & SEE
- http://www.zyxel.hu

Latvia

- ZyXEL Latvia

- http://www.zyxel.com/lv/lv/homepage.shtml

Lithuania

- ZyXEL Lithuania
- http://www.zyxel.com/lt/lt/homepage.shtml

Netherlands

- ZyXEL Benelux
- http://www.zyxel.nl

Norway

- ZyXEL Communications
- http://www.zyxel.no

Poland

- ZyXEL Communications Poland
- http://www.zyxel.pl

Romania

- ZyXEL Romania
- http://www.zyxel.com/ro/ro

Russia

- ZyXEL Russia
- http://www.zyxel.ru

Slovakia

- ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. organizacna zlozka
- http://www.zyxel.sk

Spain

- ZyXEL Spain
- http://www.zyxel.es

Sweden

- ZyXEL Communications
- http://www.zyxel.se

Switzerland

- Studerus AG

- http://www.zyxel.ch/

Turkey

- ZyXEL Turkey A.S.
- http://www.zyxel.com.tr

UK

- ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd.
- http://www.zyxel.co.uk

Ukraine

- ZyXEL Ukraine
- http://www.ua.zyxel.com

Latin America

Argentina

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com/ec/es/

Ecuador

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com/ec/es/

Middle East

Egypt

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com/homepage.shtml

Middle East

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com/homepage.shtml

North America

USA

- ZyXEL Communications, Inc. - North America Headquarters
- http://www.us.zyxel.com/

Oceania

Australia

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- http://www.zyxel.com/au/en/

Africa

South Africa

- Nology (Pty) Ltd.
- http://www.zyxel.co.za

B

Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- **Name**: This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol**: This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **User-Defined**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s)**: This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
  - If the **Protocol** is **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
  - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description**: This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

Table 177 Commonly Used Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM/New-ICQ	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example www.zyxel.com) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.

Table 177 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).

Table 177 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	TCP	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.

C

IPv6

Overview

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to 3.4 x 10^{38} IP addresses.

IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000`.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000` can be written as `2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0`.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015` can be written as `2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015`, `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015`, `2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15` or `2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15`.

Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as “/x” where x is a number. For example,

```
2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32
```

means that the first 32 bits (`2001:db8`) is the subnet prefix.

Link-local Address

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a “private IP address” in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of fe80::/10. The link-local unicast address format is as follows.

Table 178 Link-local Unicast Address Format

1111 1110 10	0	Interface ID
10 bits	54 bits	64 bits

Global Address

A global address uniquely identifies a device on the Internet. It is similar to a “public IP address” in IPv4. A global unicast address starts with a 2 or 3.

Unspecified Address

An unspecified address (0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0 or ::) is used as the source address when a device does not have its own address. It is similar to “0.0.0.0” in IPv4.

Loopback Address

A loopback address (0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1 or ::1) allows a host to send packets to itself. It is similar to “127.0.0.1” in IPv4.

Multicast Address

In IPv6, multicast addresses provide the same functionality as IPv4 broadcast addresses. Broadcasting is not supported in IPv6. A multicast address allows a host to send packets to all hosts in a multicast group.

Multicast scope allows you to determine the size of the multicast group. A multicast address has a predefined prefix of ff00::/8. The following table describes some of the predefined multicast addresses.

Table 179 Predefined Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local node.
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local node.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local connected link.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local connected link.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local site.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:1:3	All DHCP severs on a local site.

The following table describes the multicast addresses which are reserved and can not be assigned to a multicast group.

Table 180 Reserved Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF00:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF03:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF04:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF06:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF07:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF08:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF09:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Table 180 Reserved Multicast Address (continued)

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF0A:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0B:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0C:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0D:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0E:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0F:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Subnet Masking

Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000.

Interface ID

In IPv6, an interface ID is a 64-bit identifier. It identifies a physical interface (for example, an Ethernet port) or a virtual interface (for example, the management IP address for a VLAN). One interface should have a unique interface ID.

EUI-64

The EUI-64 (Extended Unique Identifier) defined by the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) is an interface ID format designed to adapt with IPv6. It is derived from the 48-bit (6-byte) Ethernet MAC address as shown next. EUI-64 inserts the hex digits fffe between the third and fourth bytes of the MAC address and complements the seventh bit of the first byte of the MAC address. See the following example.

Table 181

MAC	00	:	13	:	49	:	12	:	34	:	56

Table 182

EUI-64	02	:	13	:	49	:	FF	:	FE	:	12	:	34	:	56

Stateless Autoconfiguration

With stateless autoconfiguration in IPv6, addresses can be uniquely and automatically generated. Unlike DHCPv6 (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol version six) which is used in IPv6 stateful autoconfiguration, the owner and status of addresses don't need to be maintained by a DHCP server. Every IPv6 device is able to generate its own and unique IP address automatically when IPv6 is initiated on its interface. It combines the prefix and the interface ID (generated from its own Ethernet MAC address, see Interface ID and EUI-64) to form a complete IPv6 address.

When IPv6 is enabled on a device, its interface automatically generates a link-local address (beginning with fe80).

When the interface is connected to a network with a router and the Switch is set to automatically obtain an IPv6 network prefix from the router for the interface, it generates [3]another address which

combines its interface ID and global and subnet information advertised from the router. This is a routable global IP address.

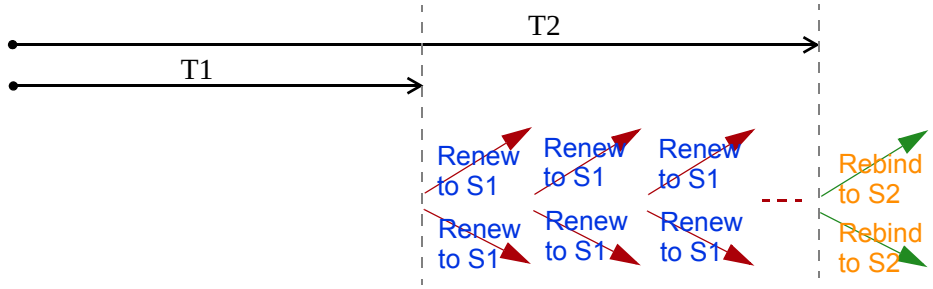
DHCPv6

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6, RFC 3315) is a server-client protocol that allows a DHCP server to assign and pass IPv6 network addresses, prefixes and other configuration information to DHCP clients. DHCPv6 servers and clients exchange DHCP messages using UDP.

Each DHCP client and server has a unique DHCP Unique IDentifier (DUID), which is used for identification when they are exchanging DHCPv6 messages. The DUID is generated from the MAC address, time, vendor assigned ID and/or the vendor's private enterprise number registered with the IANA. It should not change over time even after you reboot the device.

Identity Association

An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface. The DHCP client uses the IA assigned to an interface to obtain configuration from a DHCP server for that interface. Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.
The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. IA_NA means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and IA_TA is an identity association for temporary addresses. An IA_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA_NA before the lifetimes expire. After T1, the client sends the server (**S1**) (from which the addresses in the IA_NA were obtained) a Renew message. If the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the client sends a Rebind message to any available server (**S2**). For an IA_TA, the client may send a Renew or Rebind message at the client's discretion.



DHCP Relay Agent

A DHCP relay agent is on the same network as the DHCP clients and helps forward messages between the DHCP server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCP server on its network, it then needs a DHCP relay agent to send a message to a DHCP server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCP relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string,

3. In IPv6, all network interfaces can be associated with several addresses.

such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCP server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

Prefix Delegation

Prefix delegation enables an IPv6 router to use the IPv6 prefix (network address) received from the ISP (or a connected uplink router) for its LAN. The Switch uses the received IPv6 prefix (for example, 2001:db2::/48) to generate its LAN IP address. Through sending Router Advertisements (RAs) regularly by multicast, the Switch passes the IPv6 prefix information to its LAN hosts. The hosts then can use the prefix to generate their IPv6 addresses.

ICMPv6

Internet Control Message Protocol for IPv6 (ICMPv6 or ICMP for IPv6) is defined in RFC 4443. ICMPv6 has a preceding Next Header value of 58, which is different from the value used to identify ICMP for IPv4. ICMPv6 is an integral part of IPv6. IPv6 nodes use ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform other diagnostic functions, such as "ping".

Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP)

The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices and track neighbor's reachability in a network. An IPv6 device uses the following ICMPv6 messages types:

- Neighbor solicitation: A request from a host to determine a neighbor's link-layer address (MAC address) and detect if the neighbor is still reachable. A neighbor being "reachable" means it responds to a neighbor solicitation message (from the host) with a neighbor advertisement message.
- Neighbor advertisement: A response from a node to announce its link-layer address.
- Router solicitation: A request from a host to locate a router that can act as the default router and forward packets.
- Router advertisement: A response to a router solicitation or a periodical multicast advertisement from a router to advertise its presence and other parameters.

IPv6 Cache

An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor cache, destination cache, prefix list and default router list. The Switch maintains and updates its IPv6 caches constantly using the information from response messages. In IPv6, the Switch configures a link-local address automatically, and then sends a neighbor solicitation message to check if the address is unique. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the Switch also sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the Switch receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor cache. When the Switch uses a router solicitation message to query for a router and receives a router advertisement message, it adds the router's information to the neighbor cache, prefix list and destination cache. The Switch creates an entry in the default router list cache if the router can be used as a default router.

When the Switch needs to send a packet, it first consults the destination cache to determine the next hop. If there is no matching entry in the destination cache, the Switch uses the prefix list to

determine whether the destination address is on-link and can be reached directly without passing through a router. If the address is onlink, the address is considered as the next hop. Otherwise, the Switch determines the next-hop from the default router list or routing table. Once the next hop IP address is known, the Switch looks into the neighbor cache to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the Switch cannot find an entry in the neighbor cache or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows XP/2003/Vista

By default, Windows XP and Windows 2003 support IPv6. This example shows you how to use the `ipv6 install` command on Windows XP/2003 to enable IPv6. This also displays how to use the `ipconfig` command to see auto-generated IP addresses.

```
C:\>ipv6 install
Installing...
Succeeded.

C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration


Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

        Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
        IP Address. . . . . . . . . . . . : 10.1.1.46
        Subnet Mask . . . . . . . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
        IP Address. . . . . . . . . . . . : fe80::2d0:59ff:feb8:103c%4
        Default Gateway . . . . . . . . . : 10.1.1.254
```

IPv6 is installed and enabled by default in Windows Vista. Use the `ipconfig` command to check your automatic configured IPv6 address as well. You should see at least one IPv6 address available for the interface on your computer.

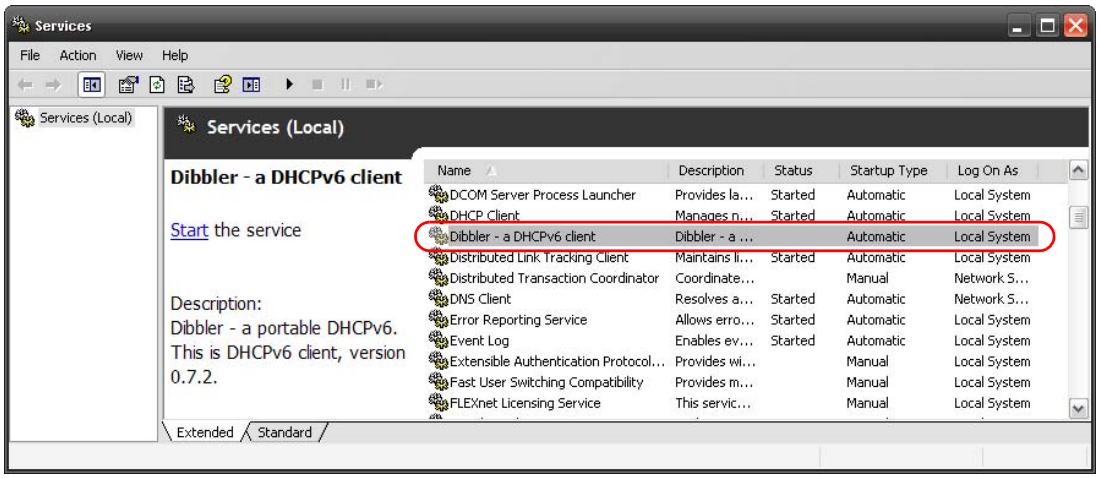
Example - Enabling DHCPv6 on Windows XP

Windows XP does not support DHCPv6. If your network uses DHCPv6 for IP address assignment, you have to additionally install a DHCPv6 client software on your Windows XP. (Note: If you use static IP addresses or Router Advertisement for IPv6 address assignment in your network, ignore this section.)

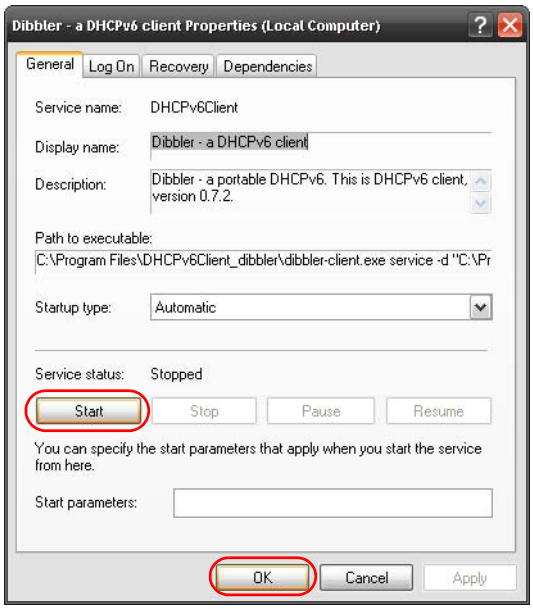
This example uses Dibbler as the DHCPv6 client. To enable DHCPv6 client on your computer:

1. Install Dibbler and select the DHCPv6 client option on your computer.
2. After the installation is complete, select **Start** > **All Programs** > **Dibbler-DHCPv6** > **Client Install as service**.
3. Select **Start** > **Control Panel** > **Administrative Tools** > **Services**.

4 Double click **Dibbler - a DHCPv6 client**.



5 Click **Start** and then **OK**.



6 Now your computer can obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows 7

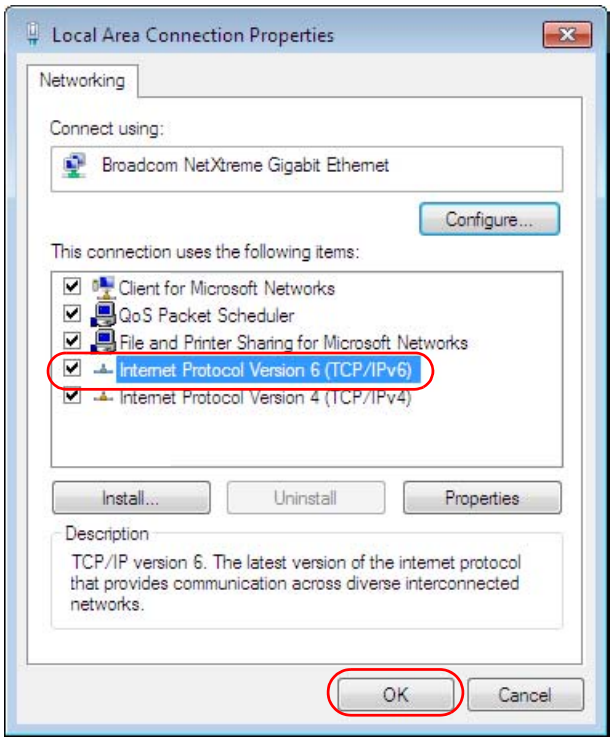
Windows 7 supports IPv6 by default. DHCPv6 is also enabled when you enable IPv6 on a Windows 7 computer.

To enable IPv6 in Windows 7:

1 Select **Control Panel** > **Network and Sharing Center** > **Local Area Connection**.

2 Select the **Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6)** checkbox to enable it.

3 Click **OK** to save the change.



4 Click **Close** to exit the **Local Area Connection Status** screen.

5 Select **Start** > **All Programs** > **Accessories** > **Command Prompt**.

6 Use the `ipconfig` command to check your dynamic IPv6 address. This example shows a global address (`2001:b021:2d::1000`) obtained from a DHCP server.

```
C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration


Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

   Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
   IPv6 Address. . . . . . . . . . . : 2001:b021:2d::1000
   Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::25d8:dcab:c80a:5189%11
   IPv4 Address. . . . . . . . . . . : 172.16.100.61
   Subnet Mask . . . . . . . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
   Default Gateway . . . . . . . . . : fe80::213:49ff:feaa:7125%11
                                       172.16.100.254
```

D

Legal Information

Copyright

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications (Class A)

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

This device may not cause harmful interference.

This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

FCC Warning

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Mark Warning:

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:

警告使用者

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境使用時，

可能造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，

使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策.

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT (for products with mini-GBIC slots or laser products, such as fiber-optic transceiver and GPON products)

APPAREIL À LASER DE CLASS 1 (for products with mini-GBIC slots or laser products, such as fiber-optic transceiver and GPON products)

PRODUCT COMPLIES WITH 21 CFR 1040.10 AND 1040.11. (for products with mini-GBIC slots or laser products, such as fiber-optic transceiver and GPON products)

PRODUIT CONFORME SELON 21 CFR 1040.10 ET 1040.11. (for products with mini-GBIC slots or laser products, such as fiber-optic transceiver and GPON products)

Viewing Certifications

Go to http://www.zyxel.com to view this product's documentation and certifications.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized ZyXEL local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at http://www.zyxel.com/web/support_warranty_info.php.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not obstruct the device ventillation slots as insufficient airflow may harm your device.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Use ONLY power wires of the appropriate wire gauge for your device. Connect it to a power supply of the correct voltage.
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the device and the power source.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Fuse Warning! Replace a fuse only with a fuse of the same type and rating.
- The POE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.
- Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.

"INFORMAZIONI AGLI UTENTI"

Ai sensi della Direttiva 2012/19/UE del Parlamento europeo e del consiglio, del 4 luglio 2012, sui rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche (RAEE).

Il simbolo del cassonetto barrato riportato sull'apparecchiatura o sulla sua confezione indica che il prodotto alla fine della propria vita utile deve essere raccolto separatamente dagli altri rifiuti.

La raccolta differenziata della presente apparecchiatura giunta a fine vita è organizzata e gestita dal produttore. L'utente che vorrà disfarsi della presente apparecchiatura dovrà quindi contattare il

produttore e seguire il sistema che questo ha adottato per consentire la raccolta separata dell'apparecchiatura giunta a fine vita.

L'adeguata raccolta differenziata per l'avvio successivo dell'apparecchiatura dismessa al riciclaggio, al trattamento e allo smaltimento ambientalmente compatibile contribuisce ad evitare possibili effetti negativi sull'ambiente e sulla salute e favorisce il reimpiego e/o riciclo dei materiali di cui è composta l'apparecchiatura.

Lo smaltimento abusivo del prodotto da parte del detentore comporta l'applicazione delle sanzioni amministrative previste dalla normativa vigente."

CE Marking

Environmental Product Declaration

English	Deutsch (German)	Español (Spanish)	Français (French)
Environmental product declaration	Produkt-Umweltdeklaration	Declaraciones Ambientales de Producto	Profil environnemental de produit
RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU **WEEE** Directive 2012/19/EU **PPW** Directive 94/62/EC **REACH** Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 **ErP** Directive 2009/125/EC	**RoHS** Richtlinie 2011/65/EU **WEEE** Richtlinie 2012/19/EU **PPW** Richtlinie 94/62/EG **REACH** VERORDNUNG (EG) Nr. 1907/2006 **ErP** Richtlinie 2009/125/EG	**RoHS** Directiva 2011/65/UE **WEEE** Directiva 2012/19/UE **PPW** Directiva 94/62/CE **REACH** REGLAMENTO (CE) nº 1907/2006 **ErP** Directiva 2009/125/CE	**RoHS** Directive 2011/65/UE **WEEE** Directive 2012/19/UE **PPW** Directive 94/62/CE **REACH** RÈGLEMENT (CE) N° 1907/2006 **ErP** Directive 2009/125/CE
Name/ title : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Signature : Date (dd/mm/yyyy) : 01/10/2013	Name/ titel : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Unterschrift : Datum (jjjj/mm/tt): 2013/10/01	Nombre/ título : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Firma : Fecha (aaaa/mm/dd): 2013/10/01	Nom/ titre : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Signature : Date (aaaa/mm/jj): 2013/10/01

Italiano (Italian)	Nederlands (Dutch)	Svenska (Swedish)	Suomi (Finnish)
Dichiarazione ambientale di prodotto	Milieuproductverklaring	Miljöproduktdeklaration	Standardiin perustuva ympäristötuoteseloste
RoHS Direttiva 2011/65/UE **WEEE** Direttiva 2012/19/UE **PPW** Direttiva 94/62/CE **REACH** REGOLAMENTO (CE) n. 1907/2006 **ErP** Direttiva 2009/125/CE	**RoHS** Richtlijn 2011/65/EU **WEEE** Richtlijn 2012/19/EU **PPW** Richtlijn 94/62/EG **REACH** Verordening (EG) nr. 1907/2006 **ErP** Richtlijn 2009/125/EG	**RoHS** Direktiv 2011/65/EU **WEEE** Direktiv 2012/19/EU **PPW** Direktiv 94/62/EG **REACH** Förordning (EG) nr 1907/2006 **ErP** Direktiv 2009/125/EG	**RoHS** Direktiivi 2011/65/EU **WEEE** Direktiivi 2012/19/EU **PPW** Direktiivi 94/62/EY **REACH** ASETUS (EY) N:o 1907/2006 **ErP** Direktiivi 2009/125/EY
Nome/ titolo : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Firma : Data (aaaa/mm/gg): 2013/10/01	Naam/ titel : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Handtekening : Datum (dd/mm/jaar): 01/10/2013	Namn/ titel : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Namnteckning : Datum (dd/mm/åååå): 01/10/2013	Nimi/ otsikko : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Allekirjoitus : Päivämäärä (pp/kk/vvvv): 01/10/2013

Index

Numerics

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Z